

Hercules Capital, Inc.  
Form N-2  
April 13, 2018  
**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**As filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 13, 2018**

**Securities Act File No.**

**U.S. SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

**WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

**FORM N-2**

**REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

**(Check appropriate box or boxes)**

**Pre-Effective Amendment No.**

**Post-Effective Amendment No.**

**Hercules Capital, Inc.**

**(formerly known as Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc.)**

**(Exact name of Registrant as specified in charter)**

**400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310**

**Palo Alto, CA 94301**

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

(Address of Principal Executive Offices)

Registrant's Telephone Number, including Area Code: (650) 289-3060

**Manuel A. Henriquez**

**Chief Executive Officer**

**Hercules Capital, Inc.**

**400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310**

**Palo Alto, CA 94301**

(Name and address of agent for service)

***COPIES TO:***

**William Bielefeld**

**Ian Hartman**

**Jay Alicandri**

**Dechert LLP**

**1095 Avenue of the Americas**

**New York, NY 10036**

**APPROXIMATE DATE OF PROPOSED PUBLIC OFFERING:**

As soon as practicable after the effective date of this Registration Statement.

If any securities being registered on this form will be offered on a delayed or continuous basis in reliance on Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered in connection with a dividend reinvestment plan, check the following box.

It is proposed that this filing will become effective (check appropriate box):      when declared effective pursuant to section 8(c).

**CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

<b>Title of Securities Being Registered</b>	<b>Amount Being Registered</b>	<b>Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price(1)</b>	<b>Amount of Registration Fee(1)</b>
Common Stock, \$0.001 par value per share(2)			
Preferred Stock, \$0.001 par value per share(2)			
Warrants(2)			
Subscription Rights(3)			
Debt Securities(4)			
<b>TOTAL(5)</b>		\$750,000,000	\$93,375(6)

- (1) Estimated pursuant to Rule 457(o) solely for the purposes of determining the registration fee. The proposed maximum offering price per security will be determined, from time to time, by the Registrant in connection with the sale by the Registrant of the securities registered under this registration statement.
- (2) Subject to Note 5 below, there is being registered hereunder an indeterminate number of shares of common stock, preferred stock, or warrants as may be sold, from time to time. Warrants represent rights to purchase common stock, preferred stock or debt securities.
- (3) Subject to Note 5 below, there is being registered hereunder an indeterminate number of subscription rights as may be sold, from time to time, representing rights to purchase common stock.
- (4) Subject to Note 5 below, there is being registered hereunder an indeterminate principal amount of debt securities as may be sold, from time to time. If any debt securities are issued at an original issue discount, then the offering price shall be in such greater principal amount as shall result in an aggregate price to investors not to exceed \$750,000,000.
- (5) In no event will the aggregate offering price of all securities issued from time to time pursuant to this registration statement exceed \$750,000,000.
- (6) Prior to filing this registration statement, \$419,199,223 of securities remained unsold pursuant to Registration Statement No. 333-214767, which was initially filed on November 22, 2016. Pursuant to Rule 457(p), \$48,585 of the total filing fee of \$93,375 required in connection with the registration of \$750,000,000 aggregate principal amount of securities under this registration statement is being offset against the \$48,585 filing fee associated with the unsold securities registered under the registration statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-214767) (the Prior Registration Statement), and an additional \$44,790 was paid in connection herewith. The shares from the Prior Registration Statement to which such fee relates are being carried forward pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act of 1933.

**THE REGISTRANT HEREBY AMENDS THIS REGISTRATION STATEMENT ON SUCH DATE OR DATES AS MAY BE NECESSARY TO DELAY ITS EFFECTIVE DATE UNTIL THE REGISTRANT SHALL FILE A FURTHER AMENDMENT WHICH SPECIFICALLY STATES THAT THIS REGISTRATION STATEMENT SHALL THEREAFTER BECOME EFFECTIVE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SECTION 8(A) OF THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, OR UNTIL THE REGISTRATION STATEMENT SHALL BECOME EFFECTIVE ON SUCH DATE AS THE SECURITIES**

**AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION, ACTING PURSUANT TO SAID SECTION 8(A), MAY DETERMINE.**

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.**

PROSPECTUS (Subject to Completion)

April 13, 2018

**\$750,000,000**

**Common Stock**

**Preferred Stock**

**Warrants**

**Subscription Rights**

**Debt Securities**

This prospectus relates to the offer, from time to time, in one or more offerings or series, up to \$750,000,000 of shares of our common stock, par value \$0.001 per share, preferred stock, par value \$0.001 per share, warrants representing rights to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities, subscription rights or debt securities, which we refer to, collectively, as the securities. The preferred stock, debt securities, subscription rights and warrants offered hereby may be convertible or exchangeable into shares of our common stock. We may sell our securities through underwriters or dealers, at-the-market to or through a market maker into an existing trading market or otherwise directly to one or more purchasers, including existing stockholders in a rights offering, or through agents or through a combination of methods of sale, including auctions. The identities of such underwriters, dealers, market makers or agents, as the case may be, will be described in one or more supplements to this prospectus. The securities may be offered at prices and on terms to be described in one or more supplements to this prospectus.

In the event we offer common stock, the offering price per share will not be less than the net asset value per share of our common stock at the time we make the offering except (1) in connection with a rights offering to our existing stockholders, (2) with the consent of the holders of the majority of our voting securities and approval of our Board of Directors, or (3) under such circumstances as the Securities and Exchange Commission may permit. See Risk Factors for more information.

We are a specialty finance company focused on providing senior secured loans to high-growth, innovative venture capital-backed companies in a variety of technology, life sciences and sustainable and renewable technology industries. We primarily finance privately-held companies backed by leading venture capital and private equity firms and publicly-traded companies that lack access to public capital or are sensitive to equity ownership dilution. We source our investments through our principal office located in Palo Alto, CA, as well as through additional offices in Boston, MA, New York, NY, Washington, DC, Hartford, CT and San Diego, CA. Our goal is to be the leading structured debt financing provider for venture capital-backed companies in technology-related industries requiring sophisticated and customized financing solutions. We invest primarily in structured debt with warrants and, to a lesser extent, in senior debt and equity investments. We use the term structured debt with warrants to refer to any debt investment, such as a senior or subordinated secured loan, that is coupled with an equity component, including warrants, options or other rights to purchase common or preferred stock. Our structured debt with warrants investments typically are secured by some or all of the assets of the portfolio company. We invest primarily in private companies but also have investments in public companies.

Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio total return by generating current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our warrant and equity-related investments. We are an internally-managed, non-diversified closed-end investment company that has elected to be regulated as a business development company under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended.

Our common stock is traded on the New York Stock Exchange, or NYSE, under the symbol HTGC. On April 6, 2018, the last reported sale price of a share of our common stock on the NYSE, was \$12.11. The net asset value per share of our common stock at December 31, 2017 (the last date prior to the date of this prospectus on which we determined net asset value) was \$9.96.

**An investment in our securities may be speculative and involves risks including a heightened risk of total loss of investment. In addition, the companies in which we invest are subject to special risks. See Risk Factors beginning on page 13 to read about risks that you should consider before investing in our securities, including the risk of leverage.**

Please read this prospectus before investing and keep it for future reference. It contains important information about us that a prospective investor ought to know before investing in our securities. We file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information about us with the Securities and Exchange Commission. The information is available free of charge by contacting us at 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301 or by telephone calling collect at (650) 289-3060 or on our website at [www.htgc.com](http://www.htgc.com). The SEC also maintains a website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov) that contains such information.

**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

**This prospectus may not be used to consummate sales of any securities unless accompanied by a prospectus supplement.**

**The date of this prospectus is \_\_\_\_\_, 2018**

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements

You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus. We have not authorized any dealer, salesperson or other person to provide you with different information or to make representations as to matters not stated in this prospectus. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. This prospectus is not an offer to sell, or a solicitation of an offer to buy, any securities by any person in any jurisdiction where it is unlawful for that person to make such an offer or solicitation or to any person in any jurisdiction to whom it is unlawful to make such an offer or solicitation. The information in this prospectus is accurate only as of its date, and under no circumstances should the delivery of this prospectus or the sale of any securities imply that the information in this prospectus is accurate as of any later date or that the affairs of Hercules Capital, Inc. have not changed since the date hereof. This prospectus will be updated to reflect material changes.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
<u>Summary</u>	1
<u>Fees and Expenses</u>	9
<u>Selected Consolidated Financial Data</u>	11
<u>Risk Factors</u>	13
<u>Forward-Looking Statements</u>	61
<u>Use of Proceeds</u>	63
<u>Price Range of Common Stock and Distributions</u>	64
<u>Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges</u>	67
<u>Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</u>	68
<u>Business</u>	121
<u>Portfolio Companies</u>	134
<u>Senior Securities</u>	156
<u>Management</u>	158
<u>Corporate Governance</u>	170
<u>Executive Compensation</u>	176
<u>Control Persons and Principal Stockholders</u>	197
<u>Certain Relationships and Related Transactions</u>	199
<u>Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations</u>	200
<u>Regulation</u>	210
<u>Determination of Net Asset Value</u>	216
<u>Sales of Common Stock Below Net Asset Value</u>	220
<u>Dividend Reinvestment Plan</u>	225
<u>Description of Capital Stock</u>	226
<u>Description of Our Preferred Stock</u>	233
<u>Description of Our Subscription Rights</u>	235
<u>Description of Warrants</u>	237



<u>Description of Our Debt Securities</u>	239
<u>Plan of Distribution</u>	252
<u>Brokerage Allocation and Other Practices</u>	254
<u>Custodian, Transfer and Dividend Paying Agent and Registrar</u>	254
<u>Legal Matters</u>	254
<u>Experts</u>	254
<u>Available Information</u>	255
<u>Index to Financial Statements</u>	F-1

Hercules Capital, Inc., our logo and other trademarks of Hercules Capital, Inc. mentioned in this prospectus are the property of Hercules Capital, Inc. All other trademarks or trade names referred to in this prospectus are the property of their respective owners.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS**

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we have filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission using the shelf registration process. Under the shelf registration process, which constitutes a delayed offering in reliance on Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the Securities Act), we may offer, from time to time, up to \$750,000,000 of our common stock, preferred stock, warrants representing rights to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities, subscription rights or debt securities on the terms to be determined at the time of the offering. We may sell our securities through underwriters or dealers, at-the-market to or through a market maker, into an existing trading market or otherwise directly to one or more purchasers, including existing stockholders in a rights offering, or through agents or through a combination of methods of sale. The identities of such underwriters, dealers, market makers or agents, as the case may be, will be described in one or more supplements to this prospectus. The securities may be offered at prices and on terms described in one or more supplements to this prospectus. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities that we may offer. Each time we use this prospectus to offer securities, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. Please carefully read this prospectus and any such supplements together with the additional information described under Where You Can Find Additional Information in the Summary and Risk Factors sections before you make an investment decision.

A prospectus supplement may also add to, update or change information contained in this prospectus.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**SUMMARY**

*This summary highlights some of the information in this prospectus and may not contain all of the information that is important to you. For a more complete understanding of this offering, we encourage you to read this entire prospectus and the documents that are referenced in this prospectus, together with any accompanying supplements. In this prospectus, unless the context otherwise requires, the Company, Hercules, HTGC, we, us and our refer to Hercules Capital, Inc. and its wholly owned subsidiaries and its affiliated securitization trusts on or after February 25, 2016 and Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc. and its wholly owned subsidiaries and its affiliated securitization trusts prior to February 25, 2016 unless the context otherwise requires.*

**Our Company**

We are a specialty finance company focused on providing senior secured loans to high-growth, innovative venture capital-backed companies in a variety of technology, life sciences and sustainable and renewable technology industries. Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio's total return by generating current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our warrant and equity-related investments. We are an internally-managed, non-diversified, closed-end investment company that has elected to be regulated as a business development company under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, or the 1940 Act. Effective January 1, 2006, we elected to be treated for tax purposes as a regulated investment company, or RIC, under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code.

As of December 31, 2017, our total assets were approximately \$1.7 billion, of which our investments comprised \$1.5 billion at fair value and \$1.6 billion at cost. Since inception through December 31, 2017, we have made debt and equity commitments of almost \$7.3 billion to our portfolio companies.

We also make investments in qualifying small businesses through our two wholly-owned small business investment companies, or SBICs. Our SBIC subsidiaries, Hercules Technology II, L.P., or HT II, and Hercules Technology III, L.P., or HT III, hold approximately \$111.8 million and \$284.0 million in assets, respectively, and accounted for approximately 5.4% and 13.8% of our total assets, respectively, prior to consolidation at December 31, 2017. At December 31, 2017, we have issued \$190.2 million in Small Business Administration, or SBA, guaranteed debentures in our SBIC subsidiaries. See Regulation Small Business Administration Regulations for additional information regarding our SBIC subsidiaries.

As of December 31, 2017, our investment professionals, including Manuel A. Henriquez, our co-founder, Chairman, President and Chief Executive Officer, are currently comprised of 35 professionals who have, on average, more than 15 years of experience in venture capital, structured finance, commercial lending or acquisition finance with the types of technology-related companies that we are targeting. We believe that we can leverage the experience and relationships of our management team to successfully identify attractive investment opportunities, underwrite prospective portfolio companies and structure customized financing solutions.

Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

The following chart shows the ownership structure and relationship of certain entities with us.

**Our Market Opportunity**

We believe that technology-related companies compete in one of the largest and most rapidly growing sectors of the U.S. economy and that continued growth is supported by ongoing innovation and performance improvements in technology products as well as the adoption of technology across virtually all industries in response to competitive pressures. We believe that an attractive market opportunity exists for a specialty finance company focused primarily on investments in structured debt with warrants in technology-related companies for the following reasons:

technology-related companies have generally been underserved by traditional lending sources;

unfulfilled demand exists for structured debt financing to technology-related companies due to the complexity of evaluating risk in these investments; and

structured debt with warrants products are less dilutive and complement equity financing from venture capital and private equity funds.

***Technology-Related Companies are Underserved by Traditional Lenders.*** We believe many viable technology-related companies backed by financial sponsors have been unable to obtain sufficient growth financing from traditional lenders, including financial services companies such as commercial banks and finance companies because traditional lenders have continued to consolidate and have adopted a more risk-averse approach to lending. More importantly, we believe traditional lenders are typically unable to underwrite the risk associated with these companies effectively.

The unique cash flow characteristics of many technology-related companies typically include significant research and development expenditures and high projected revenue growth thus often making such companies

## **Table of Contents**

### **Index to Financial Statements**

difficult to evaluate from a credit perspective. In addition, the balance sheets of these companies often include a disproportionately large amount of intellectual property assets, which can be difficult to value. Finally, the speed of innovation in technology and rapid shifts in consumer demand and market share add to the difficulty in evaluating technology-related companies.

Due to the difficulties described above, we believe traditional lenders generally refrain from entering the structured debt financing marketplace, instead preferring the risk-reward profile of asset-based lending. Traditional lenders generally do not have flexible product offerings that meet the needs of technology-related companies. The financing products offered by traditional lenders typically impose on borrowers many restrictive covenants and conditions, including limiting cash outflows and requiring a significant depository relationship to facilitate rapid liquidation.

***Unfulfilled Demand for Structured Debt Financing to Technology-Related Companies.*** Private debt capital in the form of structured debt financing from specialty finance companies continues to be an important source of funding for technology-related companies. We believe that the level of demand for structured debt financing is a function of the level of annual venture equity investment activity.

We believe that demand for structured debt financing is currently underserved. The venture capital market for the technology-related companies in which we invest has been active. Therefore, to the extent we have capital available, we believe this is an opportune time to be active in the structured lending market for technology-related companies.

***Structured Debt with Warrants Products Complement Equity Financing From Venture Capital and Private Equity Funds.*** We believe that technology-related companies and their financial sponsors will continue to view structured debt securities as an attractive source of capital because it augments the capital provided by venture capital and private equity funds. We believe that our structured debt with warrants products provide access to growth capital that otherwise may only be available through incremental investments by existing equity investors. As such, we provide portfolio companies and their financial sponsors with an opportunity to diversify their capital sources. Generally, we believe many technology-related companies at all stages of development target a portion of their capital to be debt in an attempt to achieve a higher valuation through internal growth. In addition, because financial sponsor-backed companies have reached a more mature stage prior to reaching a liquidity event, we believe our investments could provide the debt capital needed to grow or recapitalize during the extended period sometimes required prior to liquidity events.

## **Our Business Strategy**

Our strategy to achieve our investment objective includes the following key elements:

***Leverage the Experience and Industry Relationships of Our Management Team and Investment Professionals.*** We have assembled a team of experienced investment professionals with extensive experience as venture capitalists, commercial lenders, and originators of structured debt and equity investments in technology-related companies. Our investment professionals have, on average, more than 15 years of experience as equity investors in, and/or lenders to, technology-related companies. In addition, our team members have originated structured debt, debt with warrants and equity investments in over 410 technology-related companies, representing almost \$7.3 billion in commitments from inception to December 31, 2017, and have developed a network of industry contacts with investors and other participants within the venture capital and private equity communities. In addition, members of our management team also have operational, research and development and finance experience with technology-related companies. We have established contacts with leading venture capital and private equity fund sponsors, public and private companies,

research institutions and other industry participants, which we believe will enable us to identify and attract well-positioned prospective portfolio companies.

## Table of Contents

### Index to Financial Statements

We focus our investing activities generally in industries in which our investment professionals have investment experience. We believe that our focus on financing technology-related companies will enable us to leverage our expertise in structuring prospective investments, to assess the value of both tangible and intangible assets, to evaluate the business prospects and operating characteristics of technology-related companies and to identify and originate potentially attractive investments with these types of companies.

***Mitigate Risk of Principal Loss and Build a Portfolio of Equity-Related Securities.*** We expect that our investments have the potential to produce attractive risk-adjusted returns through current income, in the form of interest and fee income, as well as capital appreciation from warrant and equity-related securities. We believe that we can mitigate the risk of loss on our debt investments through the combination of loan principal amortization, cash interest payments, relatively short maturities (typically between 24-48 months), security interests in the assets of our portfolio companies, and on select investment covenants requiring prospective portfolio companies to have certain amounts of available cash at the time of our investment and the continued support from a venture capital or private equity firm at the time we make our investment. Although we do not currently engage in hedging transactions, we may engage in hedging transactions in the future utilizing instruments such as forward contracts, currency options and interest rate swaps, caps, collars, and floors.

Historically our structured debt investments to technology-related companies typically include warrants or other equity interests, giving us the potential to realize equity-like returns on a portion of our investment. In addition, in some cases, we receive the right to make additional equity investments in our portfolio companies, including the right to convert some portion of our debt into equity, in connection with future equity financing rounds. We believe these equity interests will create the potential for meaningful long-term capital gains in connection with the future liquidity events of these technology-related companies.

***Provide Customized Financing Complementary to Financial Sponsors' Capital.*** We offer a broad range of investment structures and possess expertise and experience to effectively structure and price investments in technology-related companies. Unlike many of our competitors that only invest in companies that fit a specific set of investment parameters, we have the flexibility to structure our investments to suit the particular needs of our portfolio companies. We offer customized financing solutions ranging from senior debt, including below-investment grade debt instruments (also known as junk bonds), to equity capital, with a focus on structured debt with warrants.

We use our relationships in the financial sponsor community to originate investment opportunities. Because venture capital and private equity funds typically invest solely in the equity securities of their portfolio companies, we believe that our debt investments will be viewed as an attractive and complimentary source of capital, both by the portfolio company and by the portfolio company's financial sponsor. In addition, we believe that many venture capital and private equity fund sponsors encourage their portfolio companies to use debt financing for a portion of their capital needs as a means of potentially enhancing equity returns, minimizing equity dilution and increasing valuations prior to a subsequent equity financing round or a liquidity event.

***Invest at Various Stages of Development.*** We provide growth capital to technology-related companies at all stages of development, including select publicly listed companies and select special opportunity lower middle market companies that require additional capital to fund acquisitions, recapitalizations and refinancings and established-stage companies. We believe that this provides us with a broader range of potential investment opportunities than those available to many of our competitors, who generally focus their investments on a particular stage in a company's development. Because of the flexible structure of our investments and the extensive experience of our investment professionals, we believe we are well positioned to take advantage of these investment opportunities at all stages of

prospective portfolio companies' development.

***Benefit from Our Efficient Organizational Structure.*** We believe that the perpetual nature of our corporate structure enables us to be a long-term partner for our portfolio companies in contrast to traditional investment



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

funds, which typically have a limited life. In addition, because of our access to the equity markets, we believe that we may benefit from a lower cost of capital than that available to private investment funds. We are not subject to requirements to return invested capital to investors nor do we have a finite investment horizon. Capital providers that are subject to such limitations are often required to seek a liquidity event more quickly than they otherwise might, which can result in a lower overall return on an investment.

***Deal Sourcing Through Our Proprietary Database.*** We have developed a proprietary and comprehensive structured query language-based ( SQL ) database system to track various aspects of our investment process including sourcing, originations, transaction monitoring and post-investment performance. As of December 31, 2017, our proprietary SQL-based database system included approximately 48,350 technology-related companies and approximately 9,650 venture capital firms, private equity sponsors/investors, as well as various other industry contacts. This proprietary SQL system allows us to maintain, cultivate and grow our industry relationships while providing us with comprehensive details on companies in the technology-related industries and their financial sponsors.

**Dividend Reinvestment Plan**

We maintain an opt-out dividend reinvestment plan that provides for reinvestment of our distribution on behalf of our stockholders, unless a stockholder elects to receive cash. See Dividend Reinvestment Plan. Those stockholders whose shares are held by a broker or other financial intermediary may receive distributions in cash by notifying their broker or other financial intermediary of their election.

**Taxation**

Effective January 1, 2006, we elected to be treated for tax purposes as a RIC under the Code. As a RIC, we generally will not be subject to corporate-level federal income taxes on any ordinary income or capital gains that we distribute as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to our stockholders, which allows us to reduce or eliminate our corporate level tax. See Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations. To maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC, we must meet specified source-of-income and asset diversification requirements and distribute each taxable year dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes of an amount generally at least equal to 90% of the sum of our net ordinary income and realized net short-term capital gains in excess of realized net long-term capital losses, if any, out of assets legally available for distribution. There is no assurance that we will meet these tests and be able to maintain our RIC status. If we do not qualify as a RIC, we would be subject to tax as a C corporation.

Assuming we continue to be treated as a RIC under the Code, distributions from our taxable earnings (including net realized securities gains) paid to our U.S. resident shareholders generally will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at rates applicable to ordinary income or capital gains, as appropriate, and all or a portion of such distributions paid to qualifying shareholders not resident in the U.S. (i.e., foreign shareholders) generally would not be subject U.S. nonresident withholding tax. See Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations.

**Use of Proceeds**

We intend to use the net proceeds from selling our securities for funding investments in debt and equity securities in accordance with our investment objectives, to make acquisitions, retiring certain debt obligations and other general corporate purposes. The supplement to this prospectus relating to an offering will more fully identify the use of proceeds from such offering.



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Leverage**

We borrow funds to make additional investments, and we have granted, and may in the future grant, a security interest in our assets to a lender in connection with any such borrowings, including any borrowings by any of our subsidiaries. We use this practice, which is known as leverage, to attempt to increase returns to our common stockholders. However, leverage involves significant risks. See Risk Factors. With certain limited exceptions, we are only allowed to borrow amounts such that our asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, equals at least 200% (or 150%, subject to certain approval and disclosure requirements) after such borrowing. We received an exemptive order from the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, that allows us to exclude all SBA leverage from our asset coverage ratio. The amount of leverage that we employ will depend on our assessment of market and other factors at the time of any proposed borrowing. See Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations Financial Condition, Liquidity, and Capital Resources for additional information related to our outstanding debt.

**Distributions**

As a RIC, we are required to distribute dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes each taxable year to our stockholders of an amount at least equal to 90% of the sum of our net ordinary income and realized net short-term capital gains in excess of realized net long-term capital losses, if any. We are not subject to corporate level income taxation on income we timely distribute as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to our stockholders. See Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations. We pay regular quarterly distributions based upon an estimate of annual taxable income available for distribution to stockholders as well as the amount of any taxable income carried over from the prior taxable year for distribution in the current taxable year.

**Principal Risk Factors**

Investing in our common stock may be speculative and involves certain risks relating to our structure and our investment objective that you should consider before deciding whether to invest. In addition, we expect that our portfolio will continue to consist primarily of securities issued by privately-held technology-related companies, which generally require additional capital to become profitable. These investments may involve a high degree of business and financial risk, and they are generally illiquid. Our portfolio companies typically will require additional outside capital beyond our investment in order to succeed or to fully repay the amounts owed to us. A large number of entities compete for the same kind of investment opportunities as we seek.

We borrow funds to make our investments in portfolio companies. As a result, we are exposed to the risks of leverage, which may be considered a speculative investment technique. Borrowings magnify the potential for gain and loss on amounts invested and, therefore increase the risks associated with investing in our common stock. Also, we are subject to certain risks associated with valuing our portfolio, changing interest rates, accessing additional capital, fluctuating quarterly results, and operating in a regulated environment. See Risk Factors for a discussion of factors you should carefully consider before deciding whether to invest in our securities.

**Certain Anti-Takeover Provisions**

Our charter and bylaws, as well as certain statutes and regulations, contain provisions that may have the effect of discouraging a third party from making an acquisition proposal for our company. This could delay or prevent a transaction that could give our stockholders the opportunity to realize a premium over the price for their securities.



**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****Recent Developments****Distribution Declaration**

On February 14, 2018, our board of directors (the Board of Directors ) declared a cash distribution of \$0.31 per share to be paid on March 12, 2018 to stockholders of record as of March 5, 2018. This distribution represented our fiftieth consecutive distribution since our initial public offering, bringing the total cumulative distribution to date to \$14.02 per share.

**Closed and Pending Commitments**

As of April 6, 2018, we have:

Closed debt and equity commitments of approximately \$266.0 million to new and existing portfolio companies and funded approximately \$236.0 million subsequent to December 31, 2017.

Pending commitments (signed non-binding term sheets) of approximately \$179.0 million.

The table below summarizes our year-to-date closed and pending commitments as follows:

<b>Closed Commitments and Pending Commitments (in millions)</b>	
January 1 December 31, 2017 Closed Commitments	\$ 882.0
January 1 April 6, 2018 Closed Commitment <sup>(a)</sup>	\$ 266.0
Pending Commitments (as of April 6, 2018) <sup>(b)</sup>	\$ 179.0
<b>Closed and Pending Commitments as of April 6, 2018</b>	<b>\$ 1,327.0</b>

- a. Closed Commitments may include renewals of existing credit facilities. Not all Closed Commitments result in future cash requirements. Commitments generally fund over the two succeeding quarters from close.
- b. Not all pending commitments (signed non-binding term sheets) are expected to close and they do not necessarily represent any future cash requirements.

**Redemption of 2024 Notes**

On February 9, 2018, our Board of Directors approved a redemption of \$100.0 million of our outstanding aggregate principal amount of the 2024 Notes, which were redeemed on April 2, 2018.

**Restricted Stock Unit Grants**

In January 2018, we granted 746,684 restricted stock units pursuant to the amended 2004 Plan.

**ATM Equity Program Issuances**

Between December 31, 2017 and April 6, 2018, we sold 687,000 shares of common stock for total accumulated net proceeds of approximately \$8.7 million, including \$79,000 of offering expenses, under the at-the-market, or ATM, equity distribution agreement, dated September 8, 2017, or the Equity Distribution Agreement, with JMP Securities LLC, or JMP. As of April 6, 2018, approximately 9.7 million shares remain available for issuance and sale under the Equity Distribution Agreement.

**Portfolio Company Developments**

As of April 6, 2018, we held warrants or equity positions in four companies that have filed registration statements on Form S-1 with the SEC in contemplation of potential initial public offerings. Three companies

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

filed confidentially under the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the JOBS Act ) and one company filed a Form S-1 Registration with the SEC. There can be no assurance that these companies will complete their initial public offerings in a timely manner or at all. In addition, subsequent to December 31, 2017, our portfolio companies announced or completed the following liquidity events:

1. In September 2017, our portfolio company Inotek Pharmaceuticals Corporation announced they had entered into a definitive merger agreement with Rocket Pharmaceuticals Ltd. The deal was completed on January 4, 2018. The combined company will be named Rocket Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and is now listed on the NASDAQ Global Market under the symbol RCKT and began trading on January 5, 2018.
2. In October 2017, our portfolio company Neothetics, Inc. announced they have entered into a definitive agreement under which privately-held Evofem Biosciences will merge with a wholly-owned subsidiary of Neothetics in an all-stock transaction. In January 2018, Evofem Biosciences completed the reverse merger acquisition of Neothetics and its stock began trading on the NASDAQ Capital Market under the ticker symbol EVFM.
3. In March 2018, our portfolio company IntegenX Inc., the market leader of rapid human DNA identification technology for use in forensics and law enforcement applications, announced that they have been acquired by Thermo Fisher Scientific Inc., the world leader in serving science. Terms of the transaction were not disclosed.

**General Information**

Our principal executive offices are located at 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301, and our telephone number is (650) 289-3060. We also have offices in Boston, MA, New York, NY, Washington, DC, Hartford, CT and San Diego, CA. We maintain a website on the Internet at [www.htgc.com](http://www.htgc.com). We make available, free of charge, on our website our proxy statement, annual report on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, current reports on Form 8-K and amendments to those reports as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file such material with, or furnish it to, the SEC. Information contained on our website is not incorporated by reference into this prospectus, and you should not consider that information to be part of this prospectus.

We file annual, quarterly and current periodic reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC, under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act. This information is available at the SEC's public reference room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. You may obtain information about the operation of the SEC's public reference room by calling the SEC at (202) 551-8090. In addition, the SEC maintains an Internet website, at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov), that contains reports, proxy and information statements, and other information regarding issuers, including us, who file documents electronically with the SEC.





**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****FEES AND EXPENSES**

The following table is intended to assist you in understanding the various costs and expenses that an investor in our common stock will bear directly or indirectly. However, we caution you that some of the percentages indicated in the table below are estimates and may vary. The footnotes to the fee table state which items are estimates. Except where the context suggests otherwise, whenever this prospectus contains a reference to fees or expenses paid by you or us or that we will pay fees or expenses, stockholders will indirectly bear such fees or expenses as investors in Hercules Capital, Inc.

<b>Stockholder Transaction Expenses (as a percentage of the public offering price):</b>	
Sales load (as a percentage of offering price) <sup>(1)</sup>	%
Offering expenses	<del>0%</del>
Dividend reinvestment plan fees	<del>0%</del>
Total stockholder transaction expenses (as a percentage of the public offering price)	<del>0%</del>
<b>Annual Expenses (as a percentage of net assets attributable to common stock):<sup>(5)</sup></b>	
Operating expenses	5.76% <sup>(6)(7)</sup>
Interest and fees paid in connection with borrowed funds	5.61% <sup>(8)</sup>
Total annual expenses	11.37% <sup>(9)</sup>

- (1) In the event that our securities are sold to or through underwriters, a corresponding prospectus supplement to this prospectus will disclose the applicable sales load.
- (2) In the event that we conduct an offering of our securities, a corresponding prospectus supplement to this prospectus will disclose the estimated offering expenses.
- (3) The expenses associated with the administration of our dividend reinvestment plan are included in Operating expenses. We pay all brokerage commissions incurred with respect to open market purchases, if any, made by the administrator under the plan. For more details about the plan, see Dividend Reinvestment Plan.
- (4) Total stockholder transaction expenses may include sales load and will be disclosed in a future prospectus supplement, if any.
- (5) Net assets attributable to common stock equals the weighted average net assets for the year ended December 31, 2017, which is approximately \$830.7 million.
- (6) Operating expenses represent our actual operating expenses incurred for the year ended December 31, 2017, including all fees and expenses of our consolidated subsidiaries and excluding interests and fees on indebtedness. This percentage for the year ended December 31, 2016 was 6.21%. See Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations and Management.
- (7) We do not have an investment adviser and are internally managed by our executive officers under the supervision of our Board of Directors. As a result, we do not pay investment advisory fees, but instead we pay the operating

costs associated with employing investment management professionals.

- (8) Interest and fees paid in connection with borrowed funds represents our actual interest, fees and credit facility expenses incurred for the year ended December 31, 2017, including our Wells Facility, Union Bank Facility, the 2022 Notes, the 2024 Notes, the 2022 Convertible Notes, the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes and the SBA debentures, each of which is defined herein. This percentage for the year ended December 31, 2016 was 5.04%.
- (9) Total annual expenses is the sum of operating expenses, and interest and fees paid in connection with borrowed funds. This percentage for the year ended December 31, 2016 was 11.25%. Total annual expenses is presented as a percentage of weighted average net assets attributable to common stockholders because the holders of shares of our common stock (and not the holders of our debt securities or preferred stock, if any) bear all of our fees and expenses, including the fees and expenses of our wholly-owned consolidated subsidiaries, all of which are included in this fee table presentation.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****Example**

The following example demonstrates the projected dollar amount of total cumulative expenses that would be incurred over various periods with respect to a hypothetical investment in our common stock. These amounts are based upon our payment of annual operating expenses at the levels set forth in the table above and assume no additional leverage.

	<b>1 Year</b>	<b>3 Years</b>	<b>5 Years</b>	<b>10 Years</b>
You would pay the following expenses on a \$1,000 common stock investment, assuming a 5% annual return	\$ 110	\$ 310	\$ 487	\$ 841

The example and the expenses in the tables above should not be considered a representation of our future expenses, and actual expenses may be greater or lesser than those shown. Moreover, while the example assumes, as required by the applicable rules of the SEC, a 5% annual return, our performance will vary and may result in a return greater or lesser than 5%. In addition, while the example assumes reinvestment of all distributions at net asset value ( NAV ), participants in our dividend reinvestment plan may receive shares valued at the market price in effect at that time. This price may be at, above or below NAV. See Dividend Reinvestment Plan for additional information regarding our dividend reinvestment plan.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**SELECTED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL DATA**

The selected consolidated financial data should be read in conjunction with Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations, Senior Securities and the consolidated financial statements and related notes included elsewhere herein. The selected balance sheet data as of the end of fiscal year 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014, and 2013 and the financial statement of operations data for fiscal years 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014, and 2013 has been derived from our audited financial statements, which have been audited by PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, our independent registered public accounting firm, but not all of which are presented in this Form N-2. The historical data are not necessarily indicative of results to be expected for any future period.

(in thousands, except per share amounts)	For the Year Ended December 31,				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
<b>Investment income:</b>					
Interest	\$ 172,196	\$ 158,727	\$ 140,266	\$ 126,618	\$ 123,671
Fees	18,684	16,324	16,866	17,047	16,042
<b>Total investment income</b>	<b>190,880</b>	<b>175,051</b>	<b>157,132</b>	<b>143,665</b>	<b>139,713</b>
<b>Operating expenses:</b>					
Interest	37,857	32,016	30,834	28,041	30,334
Loan fees	8,728	5,042	6,055	5,919	4,807
General and administrative:					
Legal expenses	4,572	4,823	3,079	1,366	1,440
Other expenses	11,533	11,283	13,579	8,843	7,914
<b>Total general and administrative</b>	<b>16,105</b>	<b>16,106</b>	<b>16,658</b>	<b>10,209</b>	<b>9,354</b>
Employee Compensation:					
Compensation and benefits	24,555	22,500	20,713	16,604	16,179
Stock-based compensation	7,191	7,043	9,370	9,561	5,974
<b>Total employee compensation</b>	<b>31,746</b>	<b>29,543</b>	<b>30,083</b>	<b>26,165</b>	<b>22,153</b>
<b>Total operating expenses</b>	<b>94,436</b>	<b>82,707</b>	<b>83,630</b>	<b>70,334</b>	<b>66,648</b>
Other income (loss)		8,000	(1)	(1,581)	
<b>Net investment income</b>	<b>96,444</b>	<b>100,344</b>	<b>73,501</b>	<b>71,750</b>	<b>73,065</b>
Net realized gain (loss) on investments	(26,711)	4,576	5,147	20,112	14,836
Net change in unrealized appreciation (depreciation) on investments	9,265	(36,217)	(35,732)	(20,674)	11,545
<b>Total net realized and unrealized gain (loss)</b>	<b>(17,446)</b>	<b>(31,641)</b>	<b>(30,585)</b>	<b>(562)</b>	<b>26,381</b>
<b>Net increase in net assets resulting from operations</b>	<b>\$ 78,998</b>	<b>\$ 68,703</b>	<b>\$ 42,916</b>	<b>\$ 71,188</b>	<b>\$ 99,446</b>
Change in net assets per common share (basic)	\$ 0.95	\$ 0.91	\$ 0.60	\$ 1.12	\$ 1.67

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Distributions declared per common share:                   \$   1.24   \$   1.24   \$   1.24   \$   1.24   \$   1.11

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

(in thousands, except per share amounts)	For the Year Ended December 31,				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
<b>Balance sheet data:</b>					
Investments, at value	\$ 1,542,214	\$ 1,423,942	\$ 1,200,638	\$ 1,020,737	\$ 910,295
Cash and cash equivalents	91,309	13,044	95,196	227,116	268,368
Total assets	1,654,715	1,464,204	1,334,761	1,299,223	1,221,715
Total liabilities	813,748	676,260	617,627	640,359	571,708
Total net assets	840,967	787,944	717,134	658,864	650,007
<b>Other Data:</b>					
Total return <sup>(3)</sup>	1.47%	26.87%	(9.70%)	(1.75%)	58.49%
Total debt investments, at value	1,415,984	1,328,803	1,110,209	923,906	821,988
Total warrant investments, at value	36,869	27,485	22,987	25,098	35,637
Total equity investments, at value	89,361	67,654	67,442	71,733	52,670
Unfunded Commitments <sup>(2)</sup>	73,604	59,683	75,402	147,689	69,091
Net asset value per share <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 9.96	\$ 9.90	\$ 9.94	\$ 10.18	\$ 10.51

(1) Based on common shares outstanding at period end.

(2) Amount represents unfunded commitments, including undrawn revolving facilities, which are available at the request of the portfolio company. Amount excludes unfunded commitments which are unavailable due to the borrower having not met certain milestones.

(3) The total return equals the change in the ending market value over the beginning of the period price per share plus distributions paid per share during the period, divided by the beginning price assuming the distribution is reinvested on the date of the issuance. The total return does not reflect any sales load that must be paid by investors.

The following tables set forth certain quarterly financial information for each of the eight quarters up to and ending December 31, 2017. This information was derived from the Company's unaudited consolidated financial statements. Results for any quarter are not necessarily indicative of results for the full year or for any future quarter.

(in thousands, except per share data)	Quarter Ended			
	March 31, 2017	June 30, 2017	September 30, 2017	December 31, 2017
Total investment income	\$ 46,365	\$ 48,452	\$ 45,865	\$ 50,198
Net investment income	22,678	25,275	23,973	24,518
Net increase (decrease) in net assets resulting from operations	(5,588)	33,149	33,072	18,365
Change in net assets resulting from operations per common share (basic)	\$ (0.07)	\$ 0.40	\$ 0.40	\$ 0.22

(in thousands, except per share data)	Quarter Ended			
	March 31, 2016	June 30, 2016	September 30, 2016	December 31, 2016
Total investment income	\$ 38,939	\$ 43,538	\$ 45,102	\$ 47,472
Net investment income	20,097	23,354	23,776	33,117

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	14,295	9,475	30,812	14,121
Change in net assets resulting from operations per common share (basic)	\$ 0.20	\$ 0.13	\$ 0.41	\$ 0.18

---

Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**RISK FACTORS**

*Investing in our securities may be speculative and involves a high degree of risk. You should consider carefully the risks described below and all other information contained in this prospectus, including our financial statements and the related notes and the schedules and exhibits to this prospectus. The risks set forth below are not the only risks we face. Additional risks and uncertainties not presently known to us or not presently deemed material by us may also impair our operations and performance. If any of the following risks occur, our business, financial condition and results of operations could be materially adversely affected. In such case, our NAV and the trading price of our securities could decline, and you may lose all or part of your investment.*

**Risks Related to our Business Structure**

*As an internally managed business development company, we are subject to certain restrictions that may adversely affect our business.*

As an internally managed business development company, the size and categories of our assets under management is limited, and we are unable to offer as wide a variety of financial products to prospective portfolio companies and sponsors (potentially limiting the size and diversification of our asset base). We therefore may not achieve efficiencies of scale and greater management resources available to externally managed business development companies.

Additionally, as an internally managed business development company, our ability to offer more competitive and flexible compensation structures, such as offering both a profit sharing plan and an equity incentive plan, is subject to the limitations imposed by the 1940 Act, which limits our ability to attract and retain talented investment management professionals. As such, these limitations could inhibit our ability to grow, pursue our business plan and attract and retain professional talent, any or all of which may have a negative impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

*As an internally managed business development company, we are dependent upon key management personnel for their time availability and for our future success, particularly Manuel A. Henriquez, and if we are not able to hire and retain qualified personnel, or if we lose any member of our senior management team, our ability to implement our business strategy could be significantly harmed.*

As an internally managed business development company, our ability to achieve our investment objectives and to make distributions to our stockholders depends upon the performance of our senior management. We depend upon the members of our senior management, particularly Mr. Henriquez, as well as other key personnel for the identification, final selection, structuring, closing and monitoring of our investments. These employees have critical industry experience and relationships on which we rely to implement our business plan. If we lose the services of Mr. Henriquez or any senior management members, we may not be able to operate the business as we expect, and our ability to compete could be harmed, which could cause our operating results to suffer. Furthermore, we do not have an employment agreement with Mr. Henriquez or our senior management that restricts them from creating new investment vehicles subject to compliance with applicable law. We believe our future success will depend, in part, on our ability to identify, attract and retain sufficient numbers of highly skilled employees. If we do not succeed in identifying, attracting and retaining such personnel, we may not be able to operate our business as we expect. In connection with our recruiting, branding and marketing efforts, we may, among other things, make charitable contributions in amounts we believe to be immaterial. We believe that many of these contributions help us raise our profile in the communities and benefit us in attracting and retaining talent and investment opportunities.



As an internally managed business development company, our compensation structure is determined and set by our Board of Directors. This structure currently includes salary and bonus and incentive compensation, which is issued through grants and subsequent vesting of restricted stock. We are not generally permitted by the 1940 Act to employ an incentive compensation structure that directly ties performance of our investment portfolio and results of operations to compensation owing to our granting of restricted stock as incentive compensation.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Members of our senior management may receive offers of more flexible and attractive compensation arrangements from other companies, particularly from investment advisers to externally managed business development companies that are not subject to the same limitations on incentive-based compensation that we, as an internally managed business development company are subject to. We do not currently have agreements with certain members of our senior management that prohibit them from leaving and competing with our business and certain States limit our ability to have such agreements. In addition, the evaluation of alternative management structures discussed above may lead to changes in our management structure. A departure by one or more members of our senior management could have a negative impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Our business model depends to a significant extent upon strong referral relationships with venture capital and private equity fund sponsors, and our inability to develop or maintain these relationships, or the failure of these relationships to generate investment opportunities, could adversely affect our business.***

We expect that members of our management team will maintain their relationships with venture capital and private equity firms, and we will rely to a significant extent upon these relationships to provide us with our deal flow. If we fail to maintain our existing relationships, our relationships become strained as a result of enforcing our rights with respect to non-performing portfolio companies in protecting our investments or we fail to develop new relationships with other firms or sources of investment opportunities, then we will not be able to grow our investment portfolio. In addition, persons with whom members of our management team have relationships are not obligated to provide us with investment opportunities and, therefore, there is no assurance that such relationships will lead to the origination of debt or other investments.

***We may be the target of litigation.***

We may be the target of securities litigation in the future, particularly if the trading price of our common stock and our debt securities fluctuates significantly. We could also generally be subject to litigation, including derivative actions by our stockholders. Any litigation could result in substantial costs and divert management's attention and resources from our business and cause a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***We operate in a highly competitive market for investment opportunities, and we may not be able to compete effectively.***

A number of entities compete with us to make the types of investments that we plan to make in prospective portfolio companies. We compete with a large number of venture capital and private equity firms, as well as with other investment funds, business development companies, investment banks and other sources of financing, including traditional financial services companies such as commercial banks and finance companies. Many of our competitors are substantially larger and have considerably greater financial, technical, marketing and other resources than we do. For example, some competitors may have a lower cost of funds and/or access to funding sources that are not available to us. This may enable some competitors to make loans with interest rates that are comparable to or lower than the rates that we typically offer.

A significant increase in the number and/or the size of our competitors, including traditional commercial lenders and other financing sources, in technology-related industries could force us to accept less attractive investment terms. We may be unable to capitalize on certain opportunities if we do not match competitors' pricing, terms and structure. If we do match competitors' pricing, terms or structure, we may experience decreased net interest income and increased risk of credit losses. In addition, some of our competitors may have higher risk tolerances or different risk assessments,

which could allow them to consider a wider variety of investments, establish more relationships and build their market shares. An increasing number of competitors may also have the effect of compressing our margins, which could harm our ability to retain employees, increase our operating costs, and decrease the amount and frequency of future distributions. Furthermore, many potential

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

competitors are not subject to the regulatory restrictions that the 1940 Act imposes on us as a business development company or that the Code imposes on us as a RIC. If we are not able to compete effectively, our business, financial condition, and results of operations will be adversely affected. As a result of this competition, there can be no assurance that we will be able to identify and take advantage of attractive investment opportunities, or that we will be able to fully invest our available capital.

***If we are unable to manage our future growth effectively, we may be unable to achieve our investment objective, which could adversely affect our financial condition and results of operations and cause the value of your investment to decline.***

Our ability to achieve our investment objective will depend on our ability to sustain growth. Sustaining growth will depend, in turn, on our senior management team's ability to identify, evaluate, finance and invest in suitable companies that meet our investment criteria. Accomplishing this result on a cost-effective basis is largely a function of our marketing capabilities, our management of the investment process, our ability to provide efficient services and our access to financing sources on acceptable terms. Organizational growth and scale-up of our investments could strain our existing managerial, investment, financial and other resources. Management of our growth could divert financial resources from other projects. Failure to manage our future growth effectively could lead to a decrease in our future distributions and have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Because we intend to distribute substantially all of our income to our stockholders in order to qualify as a RIC, we will continue to need additional capital to finance our growth. If additional funds are unavailable or not available on favorable terms, our ability to grow will be impaired.***

In order to satisfy the tax requirements applicable to a RIC and to minimize or avoid being subject to income and excise taxes, we intend to make distributions to our stockholders treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes generally of an amount at least equal to substantially all of our net ordinary income and realized net capital gains except for certain realized net capital gains, which we may retain, pay applicable income taxes with respect thereto and elect to treat as deemed distributions to our stockholders. As a business development company, we generally are required to meet a coverage ratio of total assets to total borrowings and other senior securities, which includes all of our borrowings and any preferred stock that we may issue in the future, of at least 200% (or 150%, subject to certain approval and disclosure requirements). This requirement limits the amount that we may borrow. This limitation may prevent us from incurring debt and require us to raise additional equity at a time when it may be disadvantageous to do so. We cannot assure you that debt and equity financing will be available to us on favorable terms, or at all, and debt financings may be restricted by the terms of any of our outstanding borrowings. If we are unable to incur additional debt, we may be required to raise additional equity at a time when it may be disadvantageous to do so. In addition, shares of closed-end investment companies have recently traded at discounts to their NAV.

This characteristic of closed-end investment companies is separate and distinct from the risk that our NAV per share may decline. We cannot predict whether shares of our common stock will trade above, at or below our NAV. If our common stock trades below its NAV, we generally will not be able to issue additional shares of our common stock at its market price without first obtaining the approval for such issuance from our stockholders and our independent directors. If additional funds are not available to us, we could be forced to curtail or cease new lending and investment activities, and our NAV could decline. In addition, our results of operations and financial condition could be adversely affected.

***Because most of our investments typically are not in publicly-traded securities, there is uncertainty regarding the value of our investments, which could adversely affect the determination of our NAV.***

At December 31, 2017, portfolio investments, whose fair value is determined in good faith by the Board of Directors, were approximately 93.2% of our total assets. We expect our investments to continue to consist

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

primarily of securities issued by privately-held companies, the fair value of which is not readily determinable. In addition, we are not permitted to maintain a general reserve for anticipated loan losses. Instead, we are required by the 1940 Act to specifically value each investment and record an unrealized gain or loss for any asset that we believe has increased or decreased in value.

There is no single standard for determining fair value in good faith. We value these securities at fair value as determined in good faith by our Board of Directors, based on the recommendations of our Audit Committee. In making a good faith determination of the value of these securities, we generally start with the cost basis of each security, which includes the amortized original issue discount, or OID, and payment-in-kind, or PIK, interest, if any. The Audit Committee uses its best judgment in arriving at the fair value of these securities. As a result, determining fair value requires that judgment be applied to the specific facts and circumstances of each portfolio investment while applying a valuation process for the types of investments we make, which includes but is not limited to deriving a hypothetical exit price.

However, the Board of Directors retains ultimate authority as to the appropriate valuation of each investment. Because such valuations are inherently uncertain and may be based on estimates, our determinations of fair value may differ materially from the values that would be assessed if a ready market for these securities existed. We adjust quarterly the valuation of our portfolio to reflect the Board of Directors' determination of the fair value of each investment in our portfolio. Any changes in fair value are recorded in our statement of operations as net change in unrealized appreciation or depreciation. Our NAV could be adversely affected if our determinations regarding the fair value of our investments were materially higher than the values that we ultimately realize upon the disposal of such securities.

***Because we have substantial indebtedness, there could be increased risk in investing in our company.***

Lenders have fixed dollar claims on our assets that are superior to the claims of stockholders, and we have granted, and may in the future grant, lenders a security interest in our assets in connection with borrowings. In the case of a liquidation event, those lenders would receive proceeds before our stockholders. In addition, borrowings, also known as leverage, magnify the potential for gain or loss on amounts invested and, therefore, increase the risks associated with investing in our securities. Leverage is generally considered a speculative investment technique. If the value of our assets increases, then leverage would cause the NAV attributable to our common stock to increase more than it otherwise would have had we not leveraged. Conversely, if the value of our assets decreases, leverage would cause the NAV attributable to our common stock to decline more than it otherwise would have had we not used leverage. Similarly, any increase in our revenue in excess of interest expense on our borrowed funds would cause our net income to increase more than it would without the leverage. Any decrease in our revenue would cause our net income to decline more than it would have had we not borrowed funds and could negatively affect our ability to make distributions on common stock. Our ability to service any debt that we incur will depend largely on our financial performance and will be subject to prevailing economic conditions and competitive pressures. We and, indirectly, our stockholders will bear the cost associated with our leverage activity. If we are not able to service our substantial indebtedness, our business could be harmed materially.

Our secured credit facilities with Wells Fargo Capital Finance LLC (the Wells Facility) and MUFG Union Bank, N.A. (the Union Bank Facility, and together with the Wells Facility, our Credit Facilities), our 2022 Notes, our 2024 Notes, our 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, and our 2022 Convertible Notes (as each term is defined below) contain financial and operating covenants that could restrict our business activities, including our ability to declare dividend distributions if we default under certain provisions.

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

As of December 31, 2017, we had no borrowings outstanding under the Wells Facility and the Union Bank Facility. In addition, as of December 31, 2017, we had approximately \$190.2 million of indebtedness outstanding incurred by our SBIC subsidiaries, approximately \$150.0 million in aggregate principal amount of 4.625% notes due 2022 (the 2022 Notes ), approximately \$183.5 million in aggregate principal amount of 6.25% notes due

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

2024 (the 2024 Notes ), approximately \$49.2 million in aggregate principal amount of fixed rate asset-backed notes issued in November 2014 (the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes ) in connection with our \$237.4 million debt securitization (the 2014 Debt Securitization ) and approximately \$230.0 million in aggregate principal amount of 4.375% convertible notes due 2022 (the 2022 Convertible Notes ).

There can be no assurance that we will be successful in obtaining any additional debt capital on terms acceptable to us or at all. If we are unable to obtain debt capital, then our equity investors will not benefit from the potential for increased returns on equity resulting from leverage to the extent that our investment strategy is successful and we may be limited in our ability to make new commitments or fundings to our portfolio companies.

As a business development company, under the 1940 Act, generally, we are not permitted to incur indebtedness unless immediately after such borrowing we have an asset coverage for total borrowings of at least 200% (i.e., the amount of debt may not exceed 50% of the value of our assets). In addition, we may not be permitted to declare any cash distribution on our outstanding common shares, or purchase any such shares, unless, at the time of such declaration or purchase, we have asset coverage of at least 200% after deducting the amount of such distribution or purchase price. If this ratio declines below 200%, we may not be able to incur additional debt and may need to sell a portion of our investments to repay some debt when it is disadvantageous to do so, and we may not be able to make distributions. The Small Business Credit Availability Act, which was signed into law in March 2018, modifies this section of the 1940 Act and decreases this percentage from 200% to 150% (subject to either stockholder approval or approval of both a majority of the board of directors and a majority of directors who are not interested persons). As a result of this new law, we may be able to incur additional indebtedness subject to relevant approval and disclosure requirements and, therefore, your risk of an investment in us may increase.

As of December 31, 2017 our asset coverage ratio under our regulatory requirements as a business development company was 236.7% excluding our SBIC debentures as a result of our exemptive order from the SEC that allows us to exclude all SBA leverage from our asset coverage ratio and was 204.3% when including all SBA leverage.

Based on assumed leverage equal to 95.5% of our net assets as of December 31, 2017, our investment portfolio would have been required to experience an annual return of at least 2.9% to cover annual interest payments on our additional indebtedness.

*Illustration.* The following table illustrates the effect of leverage on returns from an investment in our common stock assuming various annual returns, net of expenses. The calculations in the table below are hypothetical and actual returns may be higher or lower than those appearing below.

	<b>Annual Return on Our Portfolio (Net of Expenses)</b>				
	<b>-10%</b>	<b>-5%</b>	<b>0%</b>	<b>5%</b>	<b>10%</b>
Corresponding return to stockholder <sup>(1)</sup>	(25.31%)	(15.48%)	(5.64%)	4.20%	14.04%

(1) Assumes \$1.7 billion in total assets, \$802.9 million in debt outstanding, \$841.0 million in stockholders' equity, and an average cost of funds of 5.9%, which is the approximate average cost of borrowed funds, including our SBA debentures, 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes, 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, 2022 Convertible Notes, and Credit Facilities for



the period ended December 31, 2017. Actual interest payments may be different.

***It is likely that the terms of any current or future long-term or revolving credit or warehouse facility we may enter into in the future could constrain our ability to grow our business.***

Under our borrowings and our Credit Facilities, current lenders have, and any future lender or lenders may have, fixed dollar claims on our assets that are senior to the claims of our stockholders and, thus, will have a preference over our stockholders with respect to our assets pledged as collateral under the Credit Facilities. Our

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Credit Facilities and borrowings also subject us to various financial and operating covenants, including, but not limited to, maintaining certain financial ratios and minimum tangible net worth amounts. Future credit facilities and borrowings will likely subject us to similar or additional covenants. In addition, we may grant a security interest in our assets in connection with any such credit facilities and borrowings.

Our Credit Facilities generally contain customary default provisions such as a minimum net worth amount, a profitability test, and a restriction on changing our business and loan quality standards. In addition, our Credit Facilities require or are expected to require the repayment of all outstanding debt on the maturity which may disrupt our business and potentially the business of our portfolio companies that are financed through the facilities. An event of default under these facilities would likely result, among other things, in termination of the availability of further funds under the facilities and accelerated maturity dates for all amounts outstanding under the facilities, which would likely disrupt our business and, potentially, the business of the portfolio companies whose loans we finance through the facilities. This could reduce our revenues and, by delaying any cash payment allowed to us under our facilities until the lender has been paid in full, reduce our liquidity and cash flow and impair our ability to grow our business and our ability to make distributions sufficient to maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC.

The terms of future available financing may place limits on our financial and operation flexibility. If we are unable to obtain sufficient capital in the future, we may be forced to reduce or discontinue our operations, not be able to make new investments, or otherwise respond to changing business conditions or competitive pressures.

***In addition to regulatory requirements that restrict our ability to raise capital, our 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes, 2022 Convertible Notes, and Credit Facilities contain various covenants which, if not complied with, could require accelerated repayment under the facility or require us to repurchase the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes, 2022 Convertible Notes thereby materially and adversely affecting our liquidity, financial condition, results of operations and ability to pay distributions.***

The credit agreements governing our 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes, 2022 Convertible Notes, and Credit Facilities require us to comply with certain financial and operational covenants. These covenants require us to, among other things, maintain certain financial ratios, including asset coverage, debt to equity and interest coverage. Our ability to continue to comply with these covenants in the future depends on many factors, some of which are beyond our control. There are no assurances that we will be able to comply with these covenants. Failure to comply with these covenants would result in a default which, if we were unable to obtain a waiver from the lenders under our Credit Facilities and could accelerate repayment under the facilities or the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes or 2022 Convertible Notes and thereby have a material adverse impact on our liquidity, financial condition, results of operations and ability to pay a sufficient amount of distributions and maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC. We may not have enough available cash or be able to obtain financing at the time we are required to make repurchases. See Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition of Results of Operations Borrowings .

***Acquisitions or investments that we may pursue could be unsuccessful, consume significant resources and require the incurrence of additional indebtedness.***

We regularly consider acquisitions and investments that complement our existing business. These possible acquisitions and investments involve or may involve significant cash expenditures, debt incurrence, operating losses and expenses that could have a material effect on our financial condition and operating results.

In particular, if we incur additional debt, our liquidity and financial stability could be impaired as a result of using a significant portion of available cash or borrowing capacity to finance an acquisition. Moreover, we may face an increase in interest expense or financial leverage if additional debt is incurred to finance an acquisition, which may, among other things, adversely affect our various financial ratios and our compliance with the conditions of our existing indebtedness. In addition, such additional indebtedness may be secured by liens on our assets.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Acquisitions involve numerous other risks, including:

diversion of management time and attention;

failures to identify material problems and liabilities of acquisition targets or to obtain sufficient indemnification rights to fully offset possible liabilities related to the acquired businesses;

difficulties integrating the operations, technologies and personnel of the acquired businesses;

inefficiencies and complexities that may arise due to unfamiliarity with new assets, businesses or markets;

disruptions to our ongoing business;

inaccurate estimates of fair value made in the accounting for acquisitions and amortization of acquired intangible assets which would reduce future reported earnings;

the inability to obtain required financing for the new acquisition or investment opportunities and our existing business;

the need or obligation to divest portions of an acquired business;

challenges associated with operating in new geographic regions;

difficulties in achieving anticipated cost savings, synergies, business opportunities and growth prospects;

potential loss of our or the acquired business key employees, contractual relationships, suppliers or customers; and

inability to obtain required regulatory approvals.

To the extent we pursue an acquisition that causes us to incur unexpected costs or that fails to generate expected returns, our financial position, results of operations and cash flows may be adversely affected, and our ability to service indebtedness, including our outstanding notes, may be negatively impacted.

In addition, we may fail in our pursuit of an acquisition and, instead, one of our competitors may successfully obtain the target and deprive us of an important opportunity and allow them to grow larger giving them the ability to have a lower cost of capital and competitive advantage in the market (including by being able to offer better pricing and larger loans) and, as a larger company, potentially giving them more valuable equity currency to do other transactions.

***We may be unable to obtain debt capital on favorable terms or at all, in which case we would not be able to use leverage to increase the return on our investments.***

If we are unable to obtain debt capital, then our equity investors will not benefit from the potential for increased returns on equity resulting from leverage to the extent that our investment strategy is successful and we may be limited in our ability to make new commitments or fundings to our portfolio companies. An inability to obtain debt capital may also limit our ability to refinance existing indebtedness, particularly during periods of adverse credit market conditions when refinancing indebtedness may not be available under interest rates and other terms acceptable to us or at all.

***The Wells Facility and the Union Bank Facility mature in August 2019 and May 2020, respectively, and any inability to renew, extend or replace our Credit Facilities could adversely impact our liquidity and ability to find new investments or maintain distributions to our stockholders.***

As of December 31, 2017, we had two available secured credit facilities, the Wells Facility and the Union Bank Facility, which mature in August 2019 and May 2020, respectively. There can be no assurance that we will be able to renew, extend or replace our Credit Facilities upon maturity on terms that are favorable to us, if at all.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Our ability to renew, extend or replace the Credit Facility will be constrained by then-current economic conditions affecting the credit markets. In the event that we are not able to renew, extend or replace either Credit Facility at the time of its maturity, this could have a material adverse effect on our liquidity and ability to fund new investments, our ability to make distributions to our stockholders and our ability to qualify as a RIC.

***We are subject to certain risks as a result of our interests in connection with the 2014 Debt Securitization and our equity interest in the 2014 Securitization Issuer.***

On November 13, 2014, in connection with the 2014 Debt Securitization and the offering of the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes by Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2014-1 (the 2014 Securitization Issuer ), we sold and/or contributed to Hercules Capital Funding 2014-1 LLC, as trust depositor (the 2014 Trust Depositor ), certain senior loans made to certain of our portfolio companies (the 2014 Loans ), which the 2014 Trust Depositor in turn sold and/or contributed to the 2014 Securitization Issuer in exchange for 100% of the equity interest in the 2014 Securitization Issuer, cash proceeds and other consideration. Following these transfers, the 2014 Securitization Issuer, and not the 2014 Trust Depositor or us, held all of the ownership interest in the 2014 Loans.

As a result of the 2014 Debt Securitization, we hold, indirectly through the 2014 Trust Depositor, 100% of the equity interests in the 2014 Securitization Issuer. As a result, we consolidate the financial statements of the 2014 Trust Depositor and the 2014 Securitization Issuer, as well as our other subsidiaries, in our consolidated financial statements. Because the 2014 Trust Depositor and the 2014 Securitization Issuer is disregarded as an entity separate from its owners for U.S. federal income tax purposes, the sale or contribution by us to the 2014 Trust Depositor, and by the 2014 Trust Depositor to the 2014 Securitization Issuer, as applicable, did not constitute a taxable event for U.S. federal income tax purposes. If the U.S. Internal Revenue Service ( IRS ) were to take a contrary position, there could be a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations or cash flows.

Further, a failure of the 2014 Securitization Issuer to be treated as a disregarded entity for U.S. federal income tax purposes would constitute an event of default pursuant to the indenture under the 2014 Debt Securitization, upon which the trustee under the 2014 Debt Securitization (the 2014 Trustee ), may and will at the direction of a supermajority of the holders of the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes (the 2021 Noteholders ), declare the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, to be immediately due and payable and exercise remedies under the applicable indenture, including (i) to institute proceedings for the collection of all amounts then payable on the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, or under the applicable indenture, enforce any judgment obtained, and collect from the 2014 Securitization Issuer and any other obligor upon the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes monies adjudged due; (ii) institute proceedings from time to time for the complete or partial foreclosure of the applicable indenture with respect to the property of the 2014 Securitization Issuer; (iii) exercise any remedies as a secured party under the relevant Uniform Commercial Code and take other appropriate action under applicable law to protect and enforce the rights and remedies of the 2014 Trustee and the 2021 Noteholders; or (iv) sell the property of the 2014 Securitization Issuer or any portion thereof or rights or interest therein at one or more public or private sales called and conducted in any matter permitted by law. Any such exercise of remedies could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations or cash flows.

***An event of default in connection with the 2014 Debt Securitization could give rise to a cross-default under our other material indebtedness.***

The documents governing our other material indebtedness contain customary cross-default provisions that could be triggered if an event of default occurs in connection with the 2014 Debt Securitization. An event of default with

respect to our other indebtedness could lead to the acceleration of such indebtedness and the exercise of other remedies as provided in the documents governing such other indebtedness. This could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows and may result in our inability to make distributions sufficient to maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***We may not receive cash distributions in respect of our indirect ownership interests in the 2014 Securitization Issuer.***

Apart from fees payable to us in connection with our role as servicer of the 2014 Loans and the reimbursement of related amounts under the documents governing the 2014 Debt Securitization, we receive cash in connection with the 2014 Debt Securitization only to the extent that the 2014 Trust Depositor receives payments in respect of its equity interests in the 2014 Securitization Issuer. The respective holders of the equity interests in the 2014 Securitization Issuer are the residual claimants on distributions, if any, made by the 2014 Securitization Issuer after the respective 2021 Noteholders and other claimants have been paid in full on each payment date or upon maturity of the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, subject to the priority of payments under the 2014 Debt Securitization documents governing the 2014 Debt Securitization. To the extent that the value of a 2014 Securitization Issuer's portfolio of loans is reduced as a result of conditions in the credit markets (relevant in the event of a liquidation event), other macroeconomic factors, distressed or defaulted loans or the failure of individual portfolio companies to otherwise meet their obligations in respect of the loans, or for any other reason, the ability of the 2014 Securitization Issuer to make cash distributions in respect of the 2014 Trust Depositor's equity interests would be negatively affected and consequently, the value of the equity interests in the 2014 Securitization Issuer would also be reduced. In the event that we fail to receive cash indirectly from the 2014 Securitization Issuer, we could be unable to make distributions, if at all, in amounts sufficient to maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC.

***The interests of the 2021 Noteholders may not be aligned with our interests.***

The 2021 Asset-Backed Notes are debt obligations ranking senior in right of payment to the rights of the holder of the equity interests in the 2014 Securitization Issuer, as residual claimants in respect of distributions, if any, made by the 2014 Securitization Issuer. As such, there are circumstances in which the interests of the 2021 Noteholders may not be aligned with the interests of holders of the equity interests in the 2014 Securitization Issuer. For example, under the terms of the documents governing the 2014 Debt Securitization, the 2021 Noteholders have the right to receive payments of principal and interest prior to holders of the equity interests.

For as long as the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes remain outstanding, the respective 2021 Noteholders have the right to act in certain circumstances with respect to the 2014 Loans in ways that may benefit their interests but not the interests of the respective holders of the equity interests in the 2014 Securitization Issuer, including by exercising remedies under the documents governing the 2014 Debt Securitization.

If an event of default occurs, the 2021 Noteholders will be entitled to determine the remedies to be exercised, subject to the terms of the documents governing the 2014 Debt Securitization. For example, upon the occurrence of an event of default with respect to the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, the 2014 Trustee may and will at the direction of the holders of a supermajority of the applicable 2021 Asset-Backed Notes declare the principal, together with any accrued interest, of the notes to be immediately due and payable. This would have the effect of accelerating the principal on such notes, triggering a repayment obligation on the part of the 2014 Securitization Issuer. The 2021 Asset-Backed Notes then outstanding will be paid in full before any further payment or distribution on the equity interest is made. There can be no assurance that there will be sufficient funds through collections on the 2014 Loans or through the proceeds of the sale of the 2014 Loans in the event of a bankruptcy or insolvency to repay in full the obligations under the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, or to make any distribution to holders of the equity interests in the 2014 Securitization Issuer.



Remedies pursued by the 2021 Noteholders could be adverse to our interests as the indirect holder of the equity interests in the 2014 Securitization Issuer. The 2021 Noteholders have no obligation to consider any possible adverse effect on such other interests. Thus, there can be no assurance that any remedies pursued by the 2021 Noteholders will be consistent with the best interests of the 2014 Trust Depositor or that we will receive, indirectly through the 2014 Trust Depositor, any payments or distributions upon an acceleration of the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes. Any failure of the 2014 Securitization Issuer to make distributions in respect of the equity

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

interests that we indirectly hold, whether as a result of an event of default and the acceleration of payments on the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes or otherwise, could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows and may result in our inability to make distributions sufficient to maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC.

***Certain events related to the performance of 2014 Loans could lead to the acceleration of principal payments on the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes.***

The following constitute rapid amortization events ( Rapid Amortization Events ) under the documents governing the 2014 Debt Securitization: (i) the aggregate outstanding principal balance of delinquent 2014 Loans, and restructured 2014 Loans that would have been delinquent 2014 Loans had such loans not become restructured loans exceeds 10% of the current aggregate outstanding principal balance of the 2014 Loans for a period of three consecutive months; (ii) the aggregate outstanding principal balance of defaulted 2014 Loans exceeds 5% of the initial outstanding principal balance of the 2014 Loans determined as November 13, 2014 for a period of three consecutive months; (iii) the aggregate outstanding principal balance of the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes exceeds the borrowing base for a period of three consecutive months; (iv) the 2014 Securitization Issuer's pool of 2014 Loans contains 2014 Loans to ten or fewer obligors; and (v) the occurrence of an event of default under the documents governing the 2014 Debt Securitization. After a Rapid Amortization Event has occurred, subject to the priority of payments under the documents governing the 2014 Debt Securitization, principal collections on the 2014 Loans will be used to make accelerated payments of principal on the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes until the principal balance of the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes is reduced to zero. Such an event could delay, reduce or eliminate the ability of the 2014 Securitization Issuer to make distributions in respect of the equity interests that we indirectly hold, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows and may result in our inability to make distributions sufficient to maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC.

***We have certain repurchase obligations with respect to the 2014 Loans transferred in connection with the 2014 Debt Securitization.***

As part of the 2014 Debt Securitization, we entered into a sale and contribution agreement and a sale and servicing agreement under which we would be required to repurchase any 2014 Loan (or participation interest therein) which was sold to the 2014 Securitization Issuer in breach of certain customary representations and warranty made by us or by the 2014 Trust Depositors with respect to such 2014 Loan or the legal structure of the 2014 Debt Securitization. To the extent that there is a breach of such representations and warranties and we fail to satisfy any such repurchase obligation, a 2014 Trustee may, on behalf of the 2014 Securitization Issuer, bring an action against us to enforce these repurchase obligations.

***Our investments in a portfolio company, whether debt, equity, or a combination thereof, may lead to our receiving material non-public information ( MNPI ) or obtaining control of the target company. Our ability to exit an investment where we have MNPI or control could be limited and could result in a realized loss on the investment.***

If we receive MNPI, or a controlling interest in a portfolio company, our ability to divest ourselves from a debt or equity investment could be restricted. Causes of such restriction could include market factors, such as liquidity in a private stock, or limited trading volume in a public company's securities, or regulatory factors, such as the receipt of MNPI or insider blackout periods, where we are under legal obligation not to sell. Additionally, we may choose not to take certain actions to protect a debt investment in a control investment portfolio company. As a result, we could experience a decrease in the value of our portfolio company holdings and potentially incur a realized loss on the

investment.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Regulations governing our operations as a business development company may affect our ability to, and the manner in which, we raise additional capital, which may expose us to risks.***

Our business will require a substantial amount of capital. We may acquire additional capital from the issuance of senior securities, including borrowings, securitization transactions or other indebtedness, or the issuance of additional shares of our common stock. However, we may not be able to raise additional capital in the future on favorable terms or at all. We may issue debt securities, other evidences of indebtedness or preferred stock, and we may borrow money from banks or other financial institutions, which we refer to collectively as senior securities, up to the maximum amount permitted by the 1940 Act. Under the 1940 Act, we are not permitted to incur indebtedness unless immediately after such borrowing we have an asset coverage for total borrowings of at least 200% (i.e., the amount of debt may not exceed 50% of the value of our assets). In addition, we may not be permitted to declare any cash distribution on our outstanding common shares, or purchase any such shares, unless, at the time of such declaration or purchase, we have asset coverage of at least 200% after deducting the amount of such distribution or purchase price. Our ability to pay distributions or issue additional senior securities would be restricted if our asset coverage ratio were not at least 200%. The Small Business Credit Availability Act, which was signed into law in March 2018, modifies this section of the 1940 Act and decreases this percentage from 200% to 150% (subject to either stockholder approval or approval of both a majority of the board of directors and a majority of directors who are not interested persons). As a result of this new law, we may be able to incur additional indebtedness subject to relevant approval and disclosure requirements and, therefore, your risk of an investment in us may increase.

If the value of our assets declines, we may be unable to satisfy this test. If that happens, we may be required to liquidate a portion of our investments and repay a portion of our indebtedness at a time when such transaction may be disadvantageous. As a result of issuing senior securities, we would also be exposed to risks associated with leverage, including an increased risk of loss. If we issue preferred stock, the preferred stock would rank senior to common stock in our capital structure, preferred stockholders would have separate voting rights and might have rights, preferences, or privileges more favorable than those of our common stockholders and the issuance of preferred stock could have the effect of delaying, deferring, or preventing a transaction or a change of control that might involve a premium price for holders of our common stock or otherwise be in your best interest. It is likely that any senior securities or other indebtedness we issue will be governed by an indenture or other instrument containing covenants restricting our operating flexibility. Additionally, some of these securities or other indebtedness may be rated by rating agencies, and in obtaining a rating for such securities and other indebtedness, we may be required to abide by operating and investment guidelines that further restrict operating and financial flexibility.

To the extent that we are constrained in our ability to issue debt or other senior securities, we will depend on issuances of common stock to finance operations. Other than in certain limited situations such as rights offerings, as a business development company, we are generally not able to issue our common stock at a price below NAV without first obtaining required approvals from our stockholders and our independent directors. If we raise additional funds by issuing more common stock or senior securities convertible into, or exchangeable for, our common stock, then the percentage ownership of our stockholders at that time will decrease, and you might experience dilution. Moreover, we can offer no assurance that we will be able to issue and sell additional equity securities in the future, on favorable terms or at all.

***When we are a debt or minority equity investor in a portfolio company, we may not be in a position to control the entity, and management of the company may make decisions that could decrease the value of our portfolio holdings.***

We make both debt and minority equity investments; therefore, we are subject to the risk that a portfolio company may make business decisions with which we disagree, and the stockholders and management of such company may take risks or otherwise act in ways that do not serve our interests. As a result, a portfolio company may make decisions that could decrease the value of our portfolio holdings.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***If we do not invest a sufficient portion of our assets in qualifying assets, we could fail to qualify as a business development company or be precluded from investing according to our current business strategy.***

As a business development company, we may not acquire any assets other than qualifying assets as defined under the 1940 Act, unless, at the time of and after giving effect to such acquisition, at least 70% of our total assets are qualifying assets. See Regulation.

We believe that most of the senior loans we make will constitute qualifying assets. However, we may be precluded from investing in what we believe are attractive investments if such investments are not qualifying assets for purposes of the 1940 Act. If we do not invest a sufficient portion of our assets in qualifying assets, we could lose our status as a business development company, which would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. In addition, a rise in the equity markets may result in increased market valuations of certain of our existing and prospective portfolio companies, which may lead to new investments with such companies being qualified as non-eligible portfolio company assets and would require we invest in qualified assets or risk losing our status as a business development company. Similarly, these rules could prevent us from making follow-on investments in existing portfolio companies (which could result in the dilution of our position) or could require us to dispose of investments at inopportune times in order to comply with the 1940 Act. If we need to dispose of such investments quickly, it would be difficult to dispose of such investments on favorable terms. For example, we may have difficulty in finding a buyer and, even if we do find a buyer, we may have to sell the investments at a substantial loss.

***A failure on our part to maintain our qualification as a business development company would significantly reduce our operating flexibility.***

If we fail to continuously qualify as a business development company, we might be subject to regulation as a registered closed-end investment company under the 1940 Act, which would significantly decrease our operating flexibility, and lead to situations where we might have to restrict our borrowings, reduce our leverage, sell securities and pursue other activities that we are allowed to engage in as a business development company. In addition, failure to comply with the requirements imposed on business development companies by the 1940 Act could cause the SEC to bring an enforcement action against us. For additional information on the qualification requirements of a business development company, see Regulation.

***To the extent OID and PIK interest constitute a portion of our income, we will be exposed to risks associated with such income being required to be included in taxable and accounting income prior to receipt of cash representing such income.***

Our investments may include OID instruments and contractual PIK interest arrangements, which represents contractual interest added to a loan balance and due at the end of such loan's term. To the extent OID or PIK interest constitute a portion of our income, we are exposed to risks associated with such income being required to be included in taxable and accounting income prior to receipt of cash, including the following:

The higher interest rates of OID and PIK instruments reflect the payment deferral and increased credit risk associated with these instruments, and OID and PIK instruments generally represent a significantly higher credit risk than coupon loans.

Even if the accounting conditions for income accrual are met, the borrower could still default when our actual collection is supposed to occur at the maturity of the obligation, which could lead to future losses.

OID and PIK instruments may have unreliable valuations because their continuing accruals require continuing judgments about the collectability of the deferred payments and the value of any associated collateral. OID and PIK income may also create uncertainty about the source of our cash distributions.

For accounting purposes, any cash distributions to stockholders representing OID and PIK income are not treated as coming from paid-in capital, even though the cash to pay them comes from the offering

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

proceeds. As a result, despite the fact that a distribution representing OID and PIK income could be paid out of amounts invested by our stockholders, the 1940 Act does not require that stockholders be given notice of this fact by reporting it as a return of capital.

The deferral of PIK interest may have a negative impact on our liquidity as it represents non-cash income that may require cash distributions to our stockholders in order to maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC.

Recent tax legislation requires that income be recognized for tax purposes no later than when recognized for financial reporting purposes.

***If we are unable to satisfy Code requirements for qualification as a RIC, then we will be subject to corporate-level income tax, which would adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.***

We elected to be treated as a RIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes with the filing of our federal corporate income tax return for 2006. We will not qualify for the tax treatment allowable to RICs if we are unable to comply with the source of income, asset diversification and distribution requirements contained in Subchapter M of the Code, or if we fail to maintain our election to be regulated as a business development company under the 1940 Act. If we fail to qualify as a RIC for any reason and become subject to a corporate-level income tax, the resulting taxes could substantially reduce our net assets, the amount of income available for distribution to our stockholders and the actual amount of our distributions. Such a failure would have a material adverse effect on us, the NAV of our common stock and the total return, if any, earned from your investment in our common stock.

***We may have difficulty paying our required distributions under applicable tax rules if we recognize income before or without receiving cash representing such income.***

In accordance with U.S. federal tax requirements, we are required to include in income for tax purposes certain amounts that we have not yet received in cash, such as OID and contractual PIK interest arrangements, which represent contractual interest added to a loan balance and due at the end of such loan's term. In addition to the cash yields received on our loans, in some instances, our loans generally include one or more of the following: exit fees, balloon payment fees, commitment fees, success fees or prepayment fees. In some cases our loans also include contractual PIK interest arrangements. The increases in loan balances as a result of contractual PIK arrangements are included in income for the period in which such PIK interest was accrued, which is often in advance of receiving cash payment, and are separately identified on our statements of cash flows. We also may be required to include in income for tax purposes certain other amounts prior to receiving the related cash. Also, recent tax legislation requires that income be recognized for tax purposes no later than when recognized for financial reporting purposes.

Any warrants that we receive in connection with our debt investments will generally be valued as part of the negotiation process with the particular portfolio company. As a result, a portion of the aggregate purchase price for the debt investments and warrants will be allocated to the warrants that we receive. This will generally result in OID for tax purposes, which we must recognize as ordinary income, increasing the amount that we are required to distribute in order to be subject to tax as a RIC. Because these warrants generally will not produce distributable cash for us at the same time as we are required to make distributions in respect of the related OID, if ever, we would need to obtain cash from other sources or to pay a portion of our distributions using shares of newly issued common stock, consistent with IRS guidelines and the Code, to satisfy such distribution requirements.



Other features of the debt instruments that we hold may also cause such instruments to generate OID in excess of current cash interest received. Since in certain cases we may recognize income before or without receiving cash representing such income, we may have difficulty meeting the RIC tax requirement to make distributions each taxable year to our stockholders treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes

---

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

generally of an amount equal to at least 90% of our investment company taxable income, determined without regard to any deduction for dividends paid. Under such circumstances, we may have to sell some of our assets, raise additional debt or equity capital or reduce new investment originations to meet these distribution requirements. If we are unable to obtain cash from other sources and are otherwise unable to satisfy such distribution requirements, we may fail to qualify to be subject to tax as a RIC and, thus, become subject to a corporate-level income tax on all our taxable income (including any net realized securities gains).

Furthermore, we may invest in the equity securities of non-U.S. corporations (or other non-U.S. entities classified as corporations for U.S. federal income tax purposes) that could be treated under the Code and U.S. Treasury regulations as passive foreign investment companies ( PFICs ) and/or controlled foreign corporations ( CFCs ). The rules relating investment in these types of non-U.S. entities are designed to ensure that U.S. taxpayers are either, in effect, taxed currently (or on an accelerated basis with respect to corporate level events) or taxed at increased tax rates at distribution or disposition. In certain circumstances, these rules also could require us to recognize taxable income or gains where we do not receive a corresponding payment in cash. Furthermore, under recently proposed Treasury Regulations, certain income derived by us either from a PFIC with respect to which we have made a certain U.S. tax election or from a CFC would generally constitute qualifying income for purposes of determining our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC only to the extent the PFIC or CFC respectively makes distributions of that income to us. As such, we may be restricted in our ability to make QEF elections with respect to our holdings in issuers that could either be treated as PFICs or CFCs in order to limit our tax liability or maximize our after-tax return from these investments.

***Our portfolio investments may present special tax issues.***

Investments in below-investment grade debt instruments and certain equity securities may present special tax issues for us. U.S. federal income tax rules are not entirely clear about issues such as when we may cease to accrue interest, OID or market discount, when and to what extent deductions may be taken for bad debts or worthless debt in equity securities, how payments received on obligations in default should be allocated between principal and interest income, as well as whether exchanges of debt instruments in a bankruptcy or workout context are taxable. Such matters could cause us to recognize taxable income for U.S. federal income tax purposes, even in the absence of cash or economic gain, and require us to make taxable distributions to our stockholders to maintain our RIC status or preclude the imposition of either U.S. federal corporate income or excise taxation. Additionally, because such taxable income may not be matched by corresponding cash received by us, we may be required to borrow money or dispose of other investments to be able to make distributions to our stockholders. These and other issues will be considered by us, to the extent determined necessary, in order that we minimize the level of any U.S. federal income or excise tax that we would otherwise incur. See Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations Taxation as a Regulated Investment Company.

***FATCA withholding may apply to payments made to certain foreign entities.***

The Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act provisions of the Code and the related Treasury Regulations and other administrative guidance promulgated thereunder (collectively, FATCA ) generally requires us to withhold U.S. tax (at a 30% rate) on payments of interest and taxable dividends as well as, effective January 1, 2019, redemption proceeds and certain capital gain dividends made to a foreign financial institution or non-financial foreign entity (including such an institution or entity acting as an intermediary) unless the foreign financial institution or non-financial foreign entity complies with certain information reporting, withholding, identification, certification and related requirements imposed by FATCA. Persons located in jurisdictions that have entered into an intergovernmental agreement with the

United States to implement FATCA may be subject to different rules. Stockholders may be requested to provide additional information to enable us to determine whether such withholding is required.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Legislative or regulatory tax changes could adversely affect you.***

At any time, the U.S. federal income tax laws governing RICs or the administrative interpretations of those laws or regulations may be amended. Any of those new laws, regulations or interpretations may take effect retroactively and could adversely affect the taxation of us or of you as a stockholder. Therefore, changes in tax laws, regulations or administrative interpretations or any amendments thereto could diminish the value of an investment in our shares or the value or the resale potential of our investments.

***There is a risk that you may not receive distributions or that our distributions may not grow over time.***

We intend to make distributions on a quarterly basis to our stockholders. We cannot assure you that we will achieve investment results, or our business may not perform in a manner that will allow us to make a specified level of distributions or year-to-year increases in cash distributions. In addition, due to the asset coverage test applicable to us as a business development company, we may be limited in our ability to make distributions. Also, our Credit Facilities limit our ability to declare distributions to our stockholders if we default under certain provisions of our Credit Facilities. Furthermore, while we may have undistributed earnings, those earnings may not yield distributions because we may incur unrealized losses or otherwise be unable to distribute such earnings.

***We have and may in the future choose to pay distributions in our own stock, in which case you may be required to pay tax in excess of the cash you receive.***

Under applicable Treasury regulations and other general guidelines issued by the IRS, RICs are permitted to treat certain distributions payable in their stock, as taxable dividends that will satisfy their annual distribution obligations for U.S. federal income tax and excise tax purposes provided that stockholders have the opportunity to elect to receive all or a portion of such distribution in cash. Taxable stockholders receiving distributions will be required to include the full amount of such distributions as ordinary income (or as long-term capital gain to the extent such distribution is properly reported as a capital gain dividend) to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits for U.S. federal income tax purposes. As a result, a U.S. stockholder may be required to pay tax with respect to such distributions in excess of any cash received. If a U.S. stockholder sells the stock it receives as a distribution in order to pay this tax, the sales proceeds may be less than the amount included in income with respect to the distribution, depending on the market price of our stock at the time of the sale. Furthermore, with respect to non-U.S. stockholders, we may be required to withhold U.S. federal income tax with respect to such distributions, including in respect of all or a portion of such distribution that is payable in stock. In addition, if a significant number of our stockholders determine to sell shares of our stock in order to pay taxes owed on such distributions, then such sales may put downward pressure on the trading price of our stock. We may in the future determine to distribute taxable distributions that are partially payable in our common stock.

***We are exposed to risks associated with changes in interest rates, including fluctuations in interest rates which could adversely affect our profitability or the value of our portfolio***

General interest rate fluctuations may have a substantial negative impact on our investments and investment opportunities, and, accordingly, may have a material adverse effect on our investment objective and rate of return on investment capital. A portion of our income will depend upon the difference between the rate at which we borrow funds and the interest rate on the debt securities in which we invest. Because we will borrow money to make investments and may issue debt securities, preferred stock or other securities, our net investment income is dependent upon the difference between the rate at which we borrow funds or pay interest or dividends on such debt securities,

preferred stock or other securities and the rate at which we invest these funds. Typically, we anticipate that our interest-earning investments will accrue and pay interest at both variable and fixed rates, and that our interest-bearing liabilities will generally accrue interest at fixed rates.

A significant increase in market interest rates could harm our ability to attract new portfolio companies and originate new loans and investments. In addition to potentially increasing the cost of our debt, increasing interest

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

rates may also have a negative impact on our portfolio companies' ability to repay or service their loans, which could enhance the risk of loan defaults. We expect that most of our current initial investments in debt securities will be at floating rate with a floor. However, in the event that we make investments in debt securities at variable rates, a significant increase in market interest rates could also result in an increase in our non-performing assets and a decrease in the value of our portfolio because our floating-rate loan portfolio companies may be unable to meet higher payment obligations. As of December 31, 2017, approximately 96.4% of our loans were at floating rates or floating rates with a floor and 3.6% of the loans were at fixed rates.

In periods of rising interest rates, our cost of funds would increase, resulting in a decrease in our net investment income. In addition, a decrease in interest rates may reduce net income, because new investments may be made at lower rates despite the increased demand for our capital that the decrease in interest rates may produce. We may, but will not be required to, hedge against the risk of adverse movement in interest rates in our short-term and long-term borrowings relative to our portfolio of assets. If we engage in hedging activities, it may limit our ability to participate in the benefits of lower interest rates with respect to the hedged portfolio. Adverse developments resulting from changes in interest rates or hedging transactions could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, and results of operations.

Additionally, in July 2017, the head of the United Kingdom Financial Conduct Authority announced that it will no longer persuade or compel banks to submit rates for the calculation of LIBOR after 2021. At this time, it is not possible to predict the effect of this announcement as there is no definitive information regarding the future utilization of LIBOR or of any particular replacement rate.

***We may expose ourselves to risks if we engage in hedging transactions.***

If we engage in hedging transactions, we may expose ourselves to risks associated with such transactions. We may utilize instruments such as forward contracts, currency options and interest rate swaps, caps, collars and floors to seek to hedge against fluctuations in the relative values of our portfolio positions from changes in currency exchange rates and market interest rates. Hedging against a decline in the values of our portfolio positions does not eliminate the possibility of fluctuations in the values of such positions or prevent losses if the values of such positions decline. However, such hedging can establish other positions designed to gain from those same developments, thereby offsetting the decline in the value of such portfolio positions. Such hedging transactions may also limit the opportunity for gain if the values of the underlying portfolio positions should increase. It may not be possible to hedge against an exchange rate or interest rate fluctuation that is so generally anticipated that we are not able to enter into a hedging transaction at an acceptable price. Moreover, for a variety of reasons, we may not seek to establish a perfect correlation between such hedging instruments and there can be no assurance that any such hedging arrangements will achieve the desired effect. During the year ended December 31, 2017, we did not engage in any hedging activities.

***Recently passed legislation may allow us to incur additional leverage.***

Historically, as a business development company, under the 1940 Act generally we are not permitted to incur indebtedness unless immediately after such borrowing we have an asset coverage for total borrowings of at least 200% (i.e., the amount of debt may not exceed 50% of the value of our assets). The Small Business Credit Availability Act, which was signed into law in March 2018, modifies this section of the 1940 Act and decreases this percentage from 200% to 150% (subject to either stockholder approval or approval of both a majority of the board of directors and a majority of directors who are not interested persons). As a result of this new law, we may be able to incur additional indebtedness subject to relevant approval and disclosure requirements and, therefore, your risk of an investment in us

may increase.

***Two of our wholly-owned subsidiaries are licensed by the U.S. SBA, and as a result, we will be subject to SBA regulations, which could limit our capital or investment decisions.***

Our wholly-owned subsidiaries HT II and HT III are licensed to act as SBICs and are regulated by the SBA. HT II and HT III hold approximately \$111.8 million and \$284.0 million in assets, respectively, and they

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

accounted for approximately 5.4% and 13.8% of our total assets, respectively, prior to consolidation at December 31, 2017. The SBIC licenses allow our SBIC subsidiaries to obtain leverage by issuing SBA-guaranteed debentures, subject to the issuance of a capital commitment by the SBA and other customary procedures.

The SBA regulations require that a licensed SBIC be periodically examined and audited by the SBA to determine its compliance with the relevant SBA regulations. The SBA prohibits, without prior SBA approval, a change of control of an SBIC or transfers that would result in any person (or a group of persons acting in concert) owning 10.0% or more of a class of capital stock of a licensed SBIC. If either HT II or HT III fail to comply with applicable SBA regulations, the SBA could, depending on the severity of the violation, limit or prohibit HT II's or HT III's use of debentures, declare outstanding debentures immediately due and payable, and/ or limit HT II or HT III from making new investments. Such actions by the SBA would, in turn, negatively affect us because HT II and HT III are our wholly owned subsidiaries.

HT II and HT III were in compliance with the terms of the SBIC's leverage as of December 31, 2017 as a result of having sufficient capital as defined under the SBA regulations. Compliance with SBA requirements may cause HT II and HT III to forego attractive investment opportunities that are not permitted under SBA regulations. See Regulation Small Business Administration Regulations.

***SBA regulations limit the outstanding dollar amount of SBA guaranteed debentures that may be issued by an SBIC or group of SBICs under common control.***

The SBA regulations currently limit the dollar amount of SBA-guaranteed debentures that can be issued by any one SBIC to \$150.0 million or to a group of SBICs under common control to \$350.0 million.

An SBIC may not borrow an amount in excess of two times (and in certain cases, up to three times) its regulatory capital. As of December 31, 2017, we have issued \$190.2 million in SBA-guaranteed debentures in our SBIC subsidiaries, which is the maximum combined capacity for our SBIC subsidiaries under our existing licenses. During times that we reach the maximum dollar amount of SBA-guaranteed debentures permitted, and if we require additional capital, our cost of capital is likely to increase, and there is no assurance that we will be able to obtain additional financing on acceptable terms.

Moreover, the current status of our SBIC subsidiaries as SBICs does not automatically assure that our SBIC subsidiaries will continue to receive SBA-guaranteed debenture funding. Receipt of SBA leverage funding is dependent upon our SBIC subsidiaries continuing to be in compliance with SBA regulations and policies and available SBA funding. The amount of SBA leverage funding available to SBICs is dependent upon annual Congressional authorizations and in the future may be subject to annual Congressional appropriations. There can be no assurance that there will be sufficient debenture funding available at the times desired by our SBIC subsidiaries.

The debentures guaranteed by the SBA have a maturity of ten years and require semi-annual payments of interest. HT II and HT III have debentures outstanding that become due starting in March 2019 and September 2020, respectively. Our SBIC subsidiaries will need to generate sufficient cash flow to make required interest payments on the debentures. If our SBIC subsidiaries are unable to meet their financial obligations under the debentures, the SBA, as a creditor, will have a superior claim to our SBIC subsidiaries' assets over our stockholders in the event we liquidate our SBIC subsidiaries or the SBA exercises its remedies under such debentures as the result of a default by us.



***Our wholly-owned SBIC subsidiaries may be unable to make distributions to us that will enable us to maintain RIC status, which could result in the imposition of an entity-level tax.***

In order for us to continue to qualify for RIC tax treatment and to minimize corporate-level taxes, we will be required to distribute substantially all of our investment company taxable income, determined without regard to

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

any deduction for dividends paid, and net capital gains, including income from certain of our subsidiaries, which includes the income from our SBIC subsidiaries. We will be partially dependent on our SBIC subsidiaries for cash distributions to enable us to meet the RIC distribution requirements. Our SBIC subsidiaries may be limited by the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, as amended, and SBA regulations governing SBICs, from making certain distributions to us that may be necessary to maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC. We may have to request a waiver of the SBA's restrictions for our SBIC subsidiaries to make certain distributions to maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC. We cannot assure you that the SBA will grant such waiver. If our SBIC subsidiaries are unable to obtain a waiver, compliance with the SBA regulations may result in loss of RIC tax treatment and a consequent imposition of an entity-level tax on us.

***If we fail to maintain an effective system of internal control over financial reporting, we may not be able to accurately report our financial results or prevent fraud. As a result, stockholders could lose confidence in our financial and other public reporting, which would harm our business and the trading price of our common stock.***

Effective internal controls over financial reporting are necessary for us to provide reliable financial reports and, together with adequate disclosure controls and procedures, are designed to prevent fraud. Any failure to implement required new or improved controls, or difficulties encountered in their implementation could cause us to fail to meet our reporting obligations. In addition, any testing by us conducted in connection with Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as amended, or the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, or the subsequent testing by our independent registered public accounting firm (when undertaken, as noted below), may reveal deficiencies in our internal controls over financial reporting that are deemed to be material weaknesses or that may require prospective or retroactive changes to our consolidated financial statements or identify other areas for further attention or improvement. Inferior internal controls could also cause investors and lenders to lose confidence in our reported financial information, which could have a negative effect on the trading price of our common stock.

***Our Board of Directors may change our investment objective, operating policies and strategies without prior notice or stockholder approval, the effects of which may be adverse.***

Our Board of Directors has the authority, except as otherwise provided in the 1940 Act, to modify or waive certain of our operating policies and strategies without prior notice and without stockholder approval. However, absent stockholder approval, we may not change the nature of our business so as to cease to be, or withdraw our election as, a business development company. We cannot predict the effect any changes to our current operating policies and strategies would have on our business, operating results and the market price of our common stock. Nevertheless, any such changes could materially and adversely affect our business and impair our ability to make distributions to our stockholders.

***Significant U.S. federal tax legislation was recently enacted and the impact of this new legislation on us and on entities in which we may invest is uncertain.***

Significant U.S. federal tax reform legislation was recently enacted that, among many other changes, permanently reduces the maximum federal corporate income tax rate, reduces the maximum individual income tax rate (effective for taxable years 2018 through 2025), restricts the deductibility of business interest expense, changes the rules regarding the calculation of net operating loss deductions that may be used to offset taxable income, and, under certain circumstances, requires accrual method taxpayers to recognize income for U.S. federal income tax purposes no later than the income is taken into account as revenue in an applicable financial statement. The new legislation also makes extensive changes to the U.S. international tax system. The impact of this new legislation on us and on entities in

which we may invest is uncertain. Prospective investors are urged to consult their tax advisors regarding the effects of the new legislation on an investment in us.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Changes in laws or regulations governing our business could negatively affect the profitability of our operations.***

Changes in the laws or regulations, or the interpretations of the laws and regulations, which govern business development companies, SBICs, RICs or non-depository commercial lenders could significantly affect our operations and our cost of doing business. We are subject to federal, state and local laws and regulations, in addition to applicable foreign and international laws and regulations, and are subject to judicial and administrative decisions that affect our operations, including our loan originations maximum interest rates, fees and other charges, disclosures to portfolio companies, the terms of secured transactions, collection and foreclosure procedures, and other trade practices. If these laws, regulations or decisions change, or if we expand our business into jurisdictions that have adopted more stringent requirements than those in which we currently conduct business, then we may have to incur significant expenses in order to comply or we may have to restrict our operations. In addition, if we do not comply with applicable laws, regulations and decisions, then we may lose licenses needed for the conduct of our business and be subject to civil fines and criminal penalties, any of which could have a material adverse effect upon our business results of operations or financial condition.

***Our business is subject to increasingly complex corporate governance, public disclosure and accounting requirements that could adversely affect our business and financial results.***

We are subject to changing rules and regulations of federal and state government as well as the stock exchange on which our common stock is listed. These entities, including the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, the SEC and NYSE have issued a significant number of new and increasingly complex requirements and regulations over the course of the last several years and continue to develop additional regulations and requirements in response to laws enacted by Congress. The Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Protection Act, as amended, or the Dodd-Frank Act, contains significant corporate governance and executive compensation-related provisions, and the SEC has adopted, and will continue to adopt, additional rules and regulations that may impact us. Our efforts to comply with these requirements have resulted in, and are likely to continue to result in, an increase in expenses and a diversion of management's time from other business activities.

In addition, our failure to maintain compliance with such rules, or for our management to appropriately address issues relating to our compliance with such rules fully and in a timely manner, exposes us to an increasing risk of inadvertent non-compliance. While our management team takes reasonable efforts to ensure that we are in full compliance with all laws applicable to its operations, the increasing rate and extent of regulatory change increases the risk of a failure to comply, which may result in our ability to operate our business in the ordinary course or may subject us to potential fines, regulatory findings or other matters that may materially impact our business.

Many of the requirements called for in the Dodd-Frank Act are expected to be implemented over time, most of which will likely be subject to implementing regulations over the course of several years. However, the new presidential administration has announced its intention to repeal, amend, or replace certain portions of the Dodd-Frank Act and the regulations implemented thereunder. Given the uncertainty associated with the manner in which and whether the provisions of the Dodd-Frank Act will be implemented, repealed, amended or replaced, the full impact such requirements will have on our business, results of operations or financial condition is unclear. The changes resulting from the Dodd-Frank Act or any changes to the regulations already implemented thereunder may require us to invest significant management attention and resources to evaluate and make necessary changes in order to comply with new statutory and regulatory requirements. Failure to comply with any such laws, regulations or principles, or changes thereto, may negatively impact our business, results of operations and financial condition. While we cannot predict what effect any changes in the laws or regulations or their interpretations would have on our business as a result of

recent financial reform legislation, these changes could be materially adverse to us and our stockholders.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***We incur significant costs as a result of being a publicly traded company.***

As a publicly traded company, we incur legal, accounting and other expenses, including costs associated with the periodic reporting requirements applicable to a company whose securities are registered under the Exchange Act as well as additional corporate governance requirements, including requirements under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and other rules implemented by the SEC.

***Results may fluctuate and may not be indicative of future performance.***

Our operating results may fluctuate and, therefore, you should not rely on current or historical period results to be indicative of our performance in future reporting periods. Factors that could cause operating results to fluctuate include, but are not limited to, variations in the investment origination volume and fee income earned, changes in the accrual status of our debt investments, variations in timing of prepayments, variations in and the timing of the recognition of net realized gains or losses and changes in unrealized appreciation or depreciation, the level of our expenses, the degree to which we encounter competition in our markets, and general economic conditions.

***We face cyber-security risks and the failure in cyber security systems, as well as the occurrence of events unanticipated in our disaster recovery systems and management continuity planning could impair our ability to conduct business effectively.***

Our business operations rely upon secure information technology systems for data processing, storage and reporting. Despite careful security and controls design, implementation and updating, our information technology systems could become subject to cyber-attacks. Network, system, application and data breaches could result in operational disruptions or information misappropriation, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

The occurrence of a disaster such as a cyber-attack, a natural catastrophe, an industrial accident, a terrorist attack or war, events unanticipated in our disaster recovery systems, or a support failure from external providers, could have an adverse effect on our ability to conduct business and on our results of operations and financial condition, particularly if those events affect our computer-based data processing, transmission, storage, and retrieval systems or destroy data. If a significant number of our managers were unavailable in the event of a disaster, our ability to effectively conduct our business could be severely compromised.

We depend heavily upon computer systems to perform necessary business functions. Despite our implementation of a variety of security measures, our computer systems could be subject to cyber-attacks and unauthorized access, such as physical and electronic break-ins or unauthorized tampering. Like other companies, we may experience threats to our data and systems, including malware and computer virus attacks, unauthorized access, system failures and disruptions. If one or more of these events occurs, it could potentially jeopardize the confidential, proprietary and other information processed and stored in, and transmitted through, our computer systems and networks, or otherwise cause interruptions or malfunctions in our operations, which could result in damage to our reputation, financial losses, litigation, increased costs, regulatory penalties and/or customer dissatisfaction or loss.

***Terrorist attacks, acts of war or natural disasters may affect any market for our securities, impact the businesses in which we invest and harm our business, operating results and financial condition.***

Terrorist acts, acts of war or natural disasters may disrupt our operations, as well as the operations of the businesses in which we invest. Such acts have created, and continue to create, economic and political uncertainties and have contributed to global economic instability. Future terrorist activities, military or security operations, or natural disasters could further weaken the domestic/global economies and create additional uncertainties, which may negatively impact the businesses in which we invest directly or indirectly and, in turn, could have a material adverse impact on our business, operating results and financial condition. Losses from terrorist attacks and natural disasters are generally uninsurable.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***We are dependent on information systems and systems failures could significantly disrupt our business, which may, in turn, negatively affect the market price of our common stock and our ability to pay distributions.***

Our business is dependent on our and third parties' communications and information systems. Any failure or interruption of those systems, including as a result of the termination of an agreement with any third-party service providers, could cause delays or other problems in our activities. Our financial, accounting, data processing, backup or other operating systems and facilities may fail to operate properly or become disabled or damaged as a result of a number of factors including events that are wholly or partially beyond our control and adversely affect our business. There could be:

sudden electrical or telecommunication outages;

natural disasters such as earthquakes, tornadoes and hurricanes;

disease pandemics;

events arising from local or larger scale political or social matters, including terrorist acts; and

cyber-attacks.

These events, in turn, could have a material adverse effect on our operating results and negatively affect the market price of our common stock and our ability to pay distributions to our stockholders.

***We may be subject to restrictions on our ability to make distributions to our stockholders.***

Restrictions imposed on the declaration of dividends or other distributions to holders of our common stock, by both the 1940 Act and by requirements imposed by rating agencies, might impair our ability to make the required distributions to our stockholders in order to be subject to tax as a RIC. While we intend to prepay our Notes and other debt to the extent necessary to enable us to distribute our income as required to maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC, there can be no assurance that such actions can be effected in time or in a manner to satisfy the requirements set forth in the Code.

***Further downgrades of the U.S. credit rating, automatic spending cuts or another government shutdown could negatively impact our liquidity, financial condition and earnings.***

Recent U.S. debt ceiling and budget deficit concerns have increased the possibility of additional credit-rating downgrades and economic slowdowns, or a recession in the U.S. Although U.S. lawmakers passed legislation to raise the federal debt ceiling on multiple occasions, ratings agencies have lowered or threatened to lower the long-term sovereign credit rating on the United States. The impact of this or any further downgrades to the U.S. government's sovereign credit rating or its perceived creditworthiness could adversely affect the U.S. and global financial markets and economic conditions. These developments could cause interest rates and borrowing costs to rise, which may



negatively impact our ability to access the debt markets on favorable terms. In addition, disagreement over the federal budget has caused the U.S. federal government to shut down for periods of time. Continued adverse political and economic conditions could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

**Risks Related to Current Economic and Market Conditions**

*Capital markets may experience periods of disruption and instability and we cannot predict when these conditions will occur. Such market conditions could materially and adversely affect debt and equity capital markets in the United States and abroad, which could have a negative impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations.*

The global capital markets have experienced a period of disruption as evidenced by a lack of liquidity in the debt capital markets, write-offs in the financial services sector, the re-pricing of credit risk and the failure of

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

certain major financial institutions. While the capital markets have improved, these conditions could deteriorate again in the future. During such market disruptions, we may have difficulty raising debt or equity capital, especially as a result of regulatory constraints.

Market conditions may in the future make it difficult to extend the maturity of or refinance our existing indebtedness and any failure to do so could have a material adverse effect on our business. The illiquidity of our investments may make it difficult for us to sell such investments if required. As a result, we may realize significantly less than the value at which we have recorded our investments. In addition, significant changes in the capital markets, including the disruption and volatility, have had, and may in the future have, a negative effect on the valuations of our investments and on the potential for liquidity events involving our investments. An inability to raise capital, and any required sale of our investments for liquidity purposes, could have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Various social and political tensions in the United States and around the world, including in the Middle East, Eastern Europe North Korea, and Russia, may continue to contribute to increased market volatility, may have long-term effects on the United States and worldwide financial markets, and may cause further economic uncertainties or deterioration in the United States and worldwide. In addition, uncertainty regarding the United Kingdom referendum decision to leave the European Union ( Brexit ), continuing signs of deteriorating sovereign debt conditions in Europe and an economic slowdown in China create uncertainty that could lead to further disruptions, instability and weakening consumer, corporate and financial confidence. We may in the future have difficulty accessing debt and equity capital markets, and a severe disruption in the global financial markets, deterioration in credit and financing conditions or uncertainty regarding U.S. government spending and deficit levels, Brexit, European sovereign debt, Chinese economic slowdown or other global economic conditions could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

The broader fundamentals of the United States economy remain mixed. In the event that the United States economy contracts, it is likely that the financial results of small to mid-sized companies, like many of our portfolio companies, could experience deterioration or limited growth from current levels, which could ultimately lead to difficulty in meeting their debt service requirements and an increase in defaults. In addition, declines in oil and natural gas prices could adversely affect the credit quality of our debt investments and the underlying operating performance of our equity investments in energy-related businesses. In addition, volatility in the equity markets could impact our portfolio companies' access to the debt and equity capital markets, which could ultimately limit their ability to grow, satisfy existing financing and other arrangements and impact their ability to perform. Volatility in the equity markets could also impact our ability to liquidate or achieve value from warrants and other equity investments we have in our portfolio companies. Consequently, we can provide no assurance that the performance of certain portfolio companies will not be negatively impacted by economic cycles, industry cycles or other conditions, which could also have a negative impact on our future results.

These market and economic disruptions affect, and these and other similar market and economic disruptions may in the future affect, the U.S. capital markets, which could adversely affect our business and that of our portfolio companies. We cannot predict the duration of the effects related to these or similar events in the future on the United States economy and securities markets or on our investments. We monitor developments and seek to manage our investments in a manner consistent with achieving our investment objective, but there can be no assurance that we will be successful in doing so.

***Depending on funding requirements, we may need to raise additional capital to meet our unfunded commitments either through equity offerings or through additional borrowings.***

As of December 31, 2017, we had approximately \$73.6 million of unfunded commitments, including undrawn revolving facilities, which were available at the request of the portfolio company and unencumbered by milestones.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Our unfunded contractual commitments may be significant from time to time. A portion of these unfunded contractual commitments are dependent upon the portfolio company reaching certain milestones before the debt commitment becomes available. Furthermore, our credit agreements contain customary lending provisions which allow us relief from funding obligations for previously made commitments in instances where the underlying company experiences materially adverse events that affect the financial condition or business outlook for the company. These commitments will be subject to the same underwriting and ongoing portfolio maintenance as are the on-balance sheet financial instruments that we hold. Since these commitments may expire without being drawn upon, the total commitment amount does not necessarily represent future cash requirements. Closed commitments generally fund 70-80% of the committed amount in aggregate over the life of the commitment. We believe that our assets provide adequate cover to satisfy all of our unfunded comments and we intend to use cash flow from normal and early principal repayments and proceeds from borrowings and notes to fund these commitments. However, there can be no assurance that we will have sufficient capital available to fund these commitments as they come due.

Our ability to secure additional financing and satisfy our financial obligations under indebtedness outstanding from time to time will depend upon our future operating performance, which is subject to the prevailing general economic and credit market conditions, including interest rate levels and the availability of credit generally, and financial, business and other factors, many of which are beyond our control. The prolonged continuation or worsening of current economic and capital market conditions could have a material adverse effect on our ability to secure financing on favorable terms, if at all.

***Changes relating to the LIBOR calculation process may adversely affect the value of our portfolio of the LIBOR-indexed, floating-rate debt securities.***

In the recent past, concerns have been publicized that some of the member banks surveyed by the British Bankers Association ( BBA ) in connection with the calculation of the London Interbank Offered Rate, or LIBOR, across a range of maturities and currencies may have been under-reporting or otherwise manipulating the inter-bank lending rate applicable to them in order to profit on their derivatives positions or to avoid an appearance of capital insufficiency or adverse reputational or other consequences that may have resulted from reporting inter-bank lending rates higher than those they actually submitted. A number of BBA member banks entered into settlements with their regulators and law enforcement agencies with respect to alleged manipulation of LIBOR, and investigations by regulators and governmental authorities in various jurisdictions are ongoing.

Actions by the BBA, regulators or law enforcement agencies as a result of these or future events, may result in changes to the manner in which LIBOR is determined. Potential changes, or uncertainty related to such potential changes may adversely affect the market for LIBOR-based securities, including our portfolio of LIBOR-indexed, floating-rate debt securities. In addition, any further changes or reforms to the determination or supervision of LIBOR may result in a sudden or prolonged increase or decrease in reported LIBOR, which could have an adverse impact on the market for LIBOR-based securities or the value of our portfolio of LIBOR-indexed, floating-rate debt securities.

**Risks Related to Our Investments**

***Our investments are concentrated in certain industries and in a number of technology-related companies, which subjects us to the risk of significant loss if any of these companies default on their obligations under any of their debt securities that we hold, or if any of the technology-related industry sectors experience a downturn.***

We have invested and intend to continue investing in a limited number of technology-related companies and, we have recently seen an increase in the number of investments representing approximately 5% or more of our NAV. A consequence of this limited number of investments is that the aggregate returns we realize may be significantly adversely affected if a small number of investments perform poorly or if we need to write down the

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

value of any one investment. Beyond the asset diversification requirements to which we are subject as a business development company and a RIC, we do not have fixed guidelines for diversification or limitations on the size of our investments in any one portfolio company and our investments could be concentrated in relatively few issuers. In addition, we have invested in and intend to continue investing, under normal circumstances, at least 80% of the value of our total assets (including the amount of any borrowings for investment purposes) in technology-related companies.

As of December 31, 2017, approximately 74.9% of the fair value of our portfolio was composed of investments in five industries: 23.9% was composed of investments in the drug discovery and development industry, 23.4% was composed of investments in the software industry, 10.0% was composed of investments in the internet consumer and business services industry, 9.9% was composed of investments in the media/content/info industry and 7.7% was composed of investments in the sustainable and renewable technology industry.

As a result, a downturn in technology-related industry sectors and particularly those in which we are heavily concentrated could materially adversely affect our financial condition.

***We are a non-diversified investment company within the meaning of the 1940 Act, and therefore we generally are not limited with respect to the proportion of our assets that may be invested in securities of a single issuer.***

We are classified as a non-diversified investment company within the meaning of the 1940 Act, which means that we are not limited by the 1940 Act with respect to the proportion of our assets that we may invest in securities of a single issuer, excluding limitations on investments in other investment companies. To the extent that we assume large positions in the securities of a small number of issuers, our NAV may fluctuate to a greater extent than that of a diversified investment company as a result of changes in the financial condition or the market's assessment of the issuer. We may also be more susceptible to any single economic or regulatory occurrence than a diversified investment company. Beyond the asset diversification requirements to which we are subject as a business development company and a RIC, we do not have fixed guidelines for portfolio diversification, and our investments could be concentrated in relatively few portfolio companies or industries.

***Our financial results could be negatively affected if a significant portfolio investment fails to perform as expected.***

Our total investment in companies may be significant individually or in the aggregate. As a result, if a significant investment in one or more companies fails to perform as expected, our financial results could be more negatively affected and the magnitude of the loss could be more significant than if we had made smaller investments in more companies. The following table shows the fair value of the totals of investments held in portfolio companies at December 31, 2017 that represent greater than 5% of our net assets:

(in thousands)	December 31, 2017	
	Fair Value	Percentage of Net Assets
Machine Zone, Inc.	\$ 110,384	13.1%
Paratek Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (p.k.a. Transcept Pharmaceuticals, Inc.)	61,261	7.3%
Insmed, Incorporated	57,117	6.8%
Axovant Sciences Ltd.	54,155	6.4%

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Fuze, Inc.	50,473	6.0%
Emma, Inc.	48,565	5.8%
Snagajob.com, Inc.	42,293	5.0%

Machine Zone, Inc. is a technology company that is best known for building mobile Massively Multiplayer Online games with a focus on community-based gameplay.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Paratek Pharmaceuticals, Inc. is a biopharmaceutical company focused on the development and commercialization of innovative therapies based upon its expertise in novel tetracycline chemistry

Insmed, Incorporated is a biopharmaceutical company that focuses on the development of inhaled pharmaceuticals for the site-specific treatment of serious lung diseases.

Axovant Sciences Ltd. is a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on acquiring, developing and commercializing novel therapeutics for the treatment of dementia.

Fuze, Inc. is a technology company that provides a cloud-based unified communications-as-a-service platform to server message block, mid-market, and small enterprise customers worldwide.

Emma, Inc. is a technology company that offers software to enable organizations to create, send and track email marketing campaigns and online surveys.

Snagajob.com, Inc. is a technology company that offers an array of services designed to simplify the hourly job recruiting process for both job seekers and employers.

Our financial results could be materially adversely affected if these portfolio companies or any of our other significant portfolio companies encounter financial difficulty and fail to repay their obligations or to perform as expected.

***Our investments may be in portfolio companies that have limited operating histories and resources.***

We expect that our portfolio will continue to consist of investments that may have relatively limited operating histories. These companies may be particularly vulnerable to U.S. and foreign economic downturns may have more limited access to capital and higher funding costs, may have a weaker financial position and may need more capital to expand or compete. These businesses also may experience substantial variations in operating results. They may face intense competition, including from larger, more established companies with greater financial, technical and marketing resources. Furthermore, some of these companies do business in regulated industries and could be affected by changes in government regulation applicable to their given industry. Accordingly, these factors could impair their cash flow or result in other events, such as bankruptcy, which could limit their ability to repay their obligations to us, and may adversely affect the return on, or the recovery of, our investment in these companies. We cannot assure you that any of our investments in our portfolio companies will be successful. We may lose our entire investment in any or all of our portfolio companies.

***Investing in publicly traded companies can involve a high degree of risk and can be speculative.***

We have invested, and expect to continue to invest, a portion of our portfolio in publicly traded companies or companies that are in the process of completing their initial public offering ( IPO ). As publicly traded companies, the securities of these companies may not trade at high volumes, and prices can be volatile, particularly during times of general market volatility, which may restrict our ability to sell our positions and may have a material adverse impact on us.



***Our ability to invest in public companies may be limited in certain circumstances.***

To maintain our status as a business development company, we are not permitted to acquire any assets other than qualifying assets specified in the 1940 Act unless, at the time the acquisition is made, at least 70% of our total assets are qualifying assets (with certain limited exceptions). Subject to certain exceptions for follow-on investments and distressed companies, an investment in an issuer that has outstanding securities listed on a national securities exchange may be treated as a qualifying asset only if such issuer has a market capitalization that is less than \$250 million at the time of such investment and meets the other specified requirements.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Our investment strategy focuses on technology-related companies, which are subject to many risks, including volatility, intense competition, shortened product life cycles, changes in regulatory and governmental programs and periodic downturns, and you could lose all or part of your investment.***

We have invested and will continue investing primarily in technology-related companies, many of which may have narrow product lines and small market shares, which tend to render them more vulnerable to competitors' actions and market conditions, as well as to general economic downturns. The revenues, income (or losses), and valuations of technology-related companies can and often do fluctuate suddenly and dramatically. In addition, technology-related industries are generally characterized by abrupt business cycles and intense competition. Overcapacity in technology-related industries, together with cyclical economic downturns, may result in substantial decreases in the market capitalization of many technology-related companies. Such decreases in market capitalization may occur again, and any future decreases in technology-related company valuations may be substantial and may not be temporary in nature. Therefore, our portfolio companies may face considerably more risk of loss than do companies in other industry sectors.

Because of rapid technological change, the average selling prices of products and some services provided by technology-related companies have historically decreased over their productive lives. As a result, the average selling prices of products and services offered by technology-related companies may decrease over time, which could adversely affect their operating results, their ability to meet obligations under their debt securities and the value of their equity securities. This could, in turn, materially adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our investments in sustainable and renewable technology companies are subject to substantial operational risks, such as underestimated cost projections, unanticipated operation and maintenance expenses, loss of government subsidies, and inability to deliver cost-effective alternative energy solutions compared to traditional energy products. In addition, sustainable and renewable technology companies employ a variety of means of increasing cash flow, including increasing utilization of existing facilities, expanding operations through new construction or acquisitions, or securing additional long-term contracts. Thus, some energy companies may be subject to construction risk, acquisition risk or other risks arising from their specific business strategies. Furthermore, production levels for solar, wind and other renewable energies may be dependent upon adequate sunlight, wind, or biogas production, which can vary from market to market and period to period, resulting in volatility in production levels and profitability. Demand for sustainable and renewable technology is also influenced by the available supply and prices for other energy products, such as coal, oil and natural gases. A change in prices in these energy products could reduce demand for alternative energy.

A natural disaster may also impact the operations of our portfolio companies, including our technology-related portfolio companies. The nature and level of natural disasters cannot be predicted and may be exacerbated by global climate change. A portion of our technology-related portfolio companies rely on items assembled or produced in areas susceptible to natural disasters, and may sell finished goods into markets susceptible to natural disasters. A major disaster, such as an earthquake, tsunami, flood or other catastrophic event could result in disruption to the business and operations of our technology-related portfolio companies.

We will invest in technology-related companies that are reliant on U.S. and foreign regulatory and governmental programs. Any material changes or discontinuation, due to change in administration or U.S. Congress or otherwise could have a material adverse effect on the operations of a portfolio company in these industries and, in turn, impair our ability to timely collect principal and interest payments owed to us to the extent applicable.

*We have invested in and may continue investing in technology-related companies that do not have venture capital or private equity firms as equity investors, and these companies may entail a higher risk of loss than do companies with institutional equity investors, which could increase the risk of loss of your investment.*

Our portfolio companies will often require substantial additional equity financing to satisfy their continuing working capital and other cash requirements and, in most instances, to service the interest and principal payments

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

on our investment. Portfolio companies that do not have venture capital or private equity investors may be unable to raise any additional capital to satisfy their obligations or to raise sufficient additional capital to reach the next stage of development. Portfolio companies that do not have venture capital or private equity investors may be less financially sophisticated and may not have access to independent members to serve on their boards, which means that they may be less successful than portfolio companies sponsored by venture capital or private equity firms. Accordingly, financing these types of companies may entail a higher risk of loss than would financing companies that are sponsored by venture capital or private equity firms.

***Sustainable and renewable technology companies are subject to extensive government regulation and certain other risks particular to the sectors in which they operate and our business and growth strategy could be adversely affected if government regulations, priorities and resources impacting such sectors change or if our portfolio companies fail to comply with such regulations.***

As part of our investment strategy, we plan to invest in portfolio companies in sustainable and renewable technology sectors that may be subject to extensive regulation by foreign, U.S. federal, state and/or local agencies. Changes in existing laws, rules or regulations, or judicial or administrative interpretations thereof, or new laws, rules or regulations could have an adverse impact on the business and industries of our portfolio companies. In addition, changes in government priorities or limitations on government resources could also adversely impact our portfolio companies. We are unable to predict whether any such changes in laws, rules or regulations will occur and, if they do occur, the impact of these changes on our portfolio companies and our investment returns. Furthermore, if any of our portfolio companies fail to comply with applicable regulations, they could be subject to significant penalties and claims that could materially and adversely affect their operations, which would also impact our ability to realize value since our exit from the investment may be subject to the portfolio company obtaining the necessary regulatory approvals. Our portfolio companies may be subject to the expense, delay and uncertainty of the regulatory approval process for their products and, even if approved, these products may not be accepted in the marketplace.

In addition, there is considerable uncertainty about whether foreign, U.S., state and/or local governmental entities will enact or maintain legislation or regulatory programs that mandate reductions in greenhouse gas emissions or provide incentives for sustainable and renewable technology companies. Without such regulatory policies, investments in sustainable and renewable technology companies may not be economical and financing for sustainable and renewable technology companies may become unavailable, which could materially adversely affect the ability of our portfolio companies to repay the debt they owe to us. Any of these factors could materially and adversely affect the operations and financial condition of a portfolio company and, in turn, the ability of the portfolio company to repay the debt they owe to us.

***Cyclical within the energy sector may adversely affect some of our portfolio companies.***

Industries within the energy sector are cyclical with fluctuations in commodity prices and demand for, and production of commodities driven by a variety of factors. The highly cyclical nature of the industries within the energy sector may lead to volatile changes in commodity prices, which may adversely affect the earnings of energy companies in which we may invest and the performance and valuation of our portfolio.

***Depressed oil and natural gas prices for a prolonged period of time could have a material adverse effect on us.***

Depressed oil and natural gas prices could adversely affect (i) the credit quality of our debt investments in certain of our portfolio companies and (ii) the underlying operating performance of our portfolio companies business that are

heavily dependent upon the prices of, and demand for, oil and natural gas. A decrease in credit quality and the operating performance would, in turn, negatively affect the fair value of these investments, which would consequently negatively affect our NAV. Declines in oil and natural gas prices may adversely impact the ability of these portfolio companies to satisfy financial or operating covenants imposed by us or other lenders,

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

thereby negatively impacting their financial condition and their ability to satisfy their debt service and other obligations to us. Likewise, declines in oil and natural gas prices may adversely impact our energy-related portfolio companies and other affected companies cash flow and their profit generating capacities would also be adversely affected thereby negatively impacting their ability to pay us dividends or distributions on our equity investments.

***Our investments in the life sciences industry are subject to extensive government regulation, litigation risk and certain other risks particular to that industry.***

We have invested and plan to continue investing in companies in the life sciences industry that are subject to extensive regulation by the Food and Drug Administration, or the FDA, and to a lesser extent, other federal, state and other foreign agencies. If any of these portfolio companies fail to comply with applicable regulations, they could be subject to significant penalties and claims that could materially and adversely affect their operations. Portfolio companies that produce medical devices or drugs are subject to the expense, delay and uncertainty of the regulatory approval process for their products and, even if approved, these products may not be accepted in the marketplace. In addition, governmental budgetary constraints effecting the regulatory approval process, new laws, regulations or judicial interpretations of existing laws and regulations might adversely affect a portfolio company in this industry. Portfolio companies in the life sciences industry may also have a limited number of suppliers of necessary components or a limited number of manufacturers for their products, and therefore face a risk of disruption to their manufacturing process if they are unable to find alternative suppliers when needed. Any of these factors could materially and adversely affect the operations of a portfolio company in this industry and, in turn, impair our ability to timely collect principal and interest payments owed to us.

***Our investments in the drug discovery industry are subject to numerous risks, including competition, extensive government regulation, product liability and commercial difficulties.***

Our investments in the drug discovery industry are subject to numerous risks. The successful and timely implementation of the business model of our drug discovery portfolio companies depends on their ability to adapt to changing technologies and introduce new products. As competitors continue to introduce competitive products, the development and acquisition of innovative products and technologies that improve efficacy, safety, patient's and clinician's ease of use and cost-effectiveness are important to the success of such portfolio companies. The success of new product offerings will depend on many factors, including the ability to properly anticipate and satisfy customer needs, obtain regulatory approvals on a timely basis, develop and manufacture products in an economic and timely manner, obtain or maintain advantageous positions with respect to intellectual property, and differentiate products from those of competitors. Failure by our portfolio companies to introduce planned products or other new products or to introduce products on schedule could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Further, the development of products by drug discovery companies requires significant research and development, clinical trials and regulatory approvals. The results of product development efforts may be affected by a number of factors, including the ability to innovate, develop and manufacture new products, complete clinical trials, obtain regulatory approvals and reimbursement in the U.S. and abroad, or gain and maintain market approval of products. In addition, regulatory review processes by U.S. and foreign agencies may extend longer than anticipated as a result of decreased funding and tighter fiscal budgets. Further, patents attained by others can preclude or delay the commercialization of a product. There can be no assurance that any products now in development will achieve technological feasibility, obtain regulatory approval, or gain market acceptance. Failure can occur at any point in the development process, including after significant funds have been invested. Products may fail to reach the market or

may have only limited commercial success because of efficacy or safety concerns, failure to achieve positive clinical outcomes, inability to obtain necessary regulatory approvals, failure to achieve market adoption, limited scope of approved uses, excessive costs to manufacture, the failure to establish or maintain intellectual property rights, or the infringement of intellectual property rights of others.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Future legislation, and/or regulations and policies adopted by the FDA or other U.S. or foreign regulatory authorities may increase the time and cost required by some of our portfolio companies to conduct and complete clinical trials for the product candidates that they develop, and there is no assurance that these companies will obtain regulatory approval to market and commercialize their products in the U.S. and in foreign countries.***

The FDA has established regulations, guidelines and policies to govern the drug development and approval process, as have foreign regulatory authorities, which affect some of our portfolio companies. Any change in regulatory requirements due to the adoption by the FDA and/or foreign regulatory authorities of new legislation, regulations, or policies may require some of our portfolio companies to amend existing clinical trial protocols or add new clinical trials to comply with these changes. Such amendments to existing protocols and/or clinical trial applications or the need for new ones, may significantly impact the cost, timing and completion of the clinical trials.

In addition, increased scrutiny by the U.S. Congress of the FDA's and other authorities approval processes may significantly delay or prevent regulatory approval, as well as impose more stringent product labeling and post-marketing testing and other requirements. Foreign regulatory authorities may also increase their scrutiny of approval processes resulting in similar delays. Increased scrutiny and approvals processes may limit the ability of our portfolio companies to market and commercialize their products in the U.S. and in foreign countries.

Life sciences companies, including drug development companies, device manufacturers, service providers and others, are also subject to material pressures when there are changes in the outlook for healthcare insurance markets. The ability for individuals, along with private and public insurers, to account for the costs of paying for healthcare insurance can place strain on the ability of new technology, devices and services to enter those markets, particularly when they are new or untested. As a result, it is not uncommon for changes in the insurance market place to lead to a slower rate of adoption, price pressure and other forces that may materially limit the success of companies bringing such technologies to market. Changes in the health insurance sector might then have an impact on the value of companies in our portfolio or our ability to invest in the sector generally.

***Changes in healthcare laws and other regulations, or the enforcement or interpretation of such laws or regulations, applicable to some of our portfolio companies' businesses may constrain their ability to offer their products and services.***

Changes in healthcare or other laws and regulations, or the enforcement or interpretation of such laws or regulations, applicable to the businesses of some of our portfolio companies may occur that could increase their compliance and other costs of doing business, require significant systems enhancements, or render their products or services less profitable or obsolete, any of which could have a material adverse effect on their results of operations. There has also been an increased political and regulatory focus on healthcare laws in recent years, and new legislation could have a material effect on the business and operations of some of our portfolio companies.

Additionally, because of the continued uncertainty surrounding the healthcare industry under the Trump Administration, including the potential for further legal challenges or repeal of existing legislation, we cannot quantify or predict with any certainty the likely impact on our portfolio companies, our business model, prospects, financial condition or results of operations. We also anticipate that Congress, state legislatures, and third-party payors may continue to review and assess alternative healthcare delivery and payment systems and may in the future propose and adopt legislation or policy changes or implementations effecting additional fundamental changes in the healthcare delivery system. We cannot assure you as to the ultimate content, timing, or effect of changes, nor is it possible at this time to estimate the impact of any such potential legislation on certain of our portfolio companies, our business model,



prospects, financial condition or results of operations.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Price declines and illiquidity in the corporate debt markets could adversely affect the fair value of our portfolio investments, reducing our NAV through increased net unrealized depreciation.***

As a business development company, we are required to carry our investments at market value or, if no market value is ascertainable, at fair market value as determined in good faith by or under the direction of our Board of Directors. As part of the valuation process, we may take into account the following types of factors, if relevant, in determining the fair value of our investments: the enterprise value of a portfolio company (an estimate of the total fair value of the portfolio company's debt and equity), the nature and realizable value of any collateral, the portfolio company's ability to make payments and its earnings and discounted cash flow, the markets in which the portfolio company does business, a comparison of the portfolio company's securities to similar publicly traded securities, changes in the interest rate environment and the credit markets generally that may affect the price at which similar investments may be made in the future and other relevant factors. When an external event such as a purchase transaction, public offering or subsequent equity sale occurs, we use the pricing indicated by the external event to corroborate our valuation. While most of our investments are not publicly traded, applicable accounting standards require us to assume as part of our valuation process that our investments are sold in a principal market to market participants (even if we plan on holding an investment through its maturity). As a result, volatility in the capital markets can also adversely affect our investment valuations. Decreases in the market values or fair values of our investments are recorded as unrealized depreciation. The effect of all of these factors on our portfolio can reduce our NAV by increasing net unrealized depreciation in our portfolio.

Depending on market conditions, we could incur substantial realized losses and may suffer substantial unrealized depreciation in future periods, which could have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Economic recessions or slowdowns could impair the ability of our portfolio companies to repay loans, which, in turn, could increase our non-performing assets, decrease the value of our portfolio, reduce our volume of new loans and have a material adverse effect on our results of operations.***

Many of our portfolio companies may be susceptible to economic slowdowns or recessions in both the U.S. and foreign countries, and may be unable to repay our loans during such periods. Therefore, during such periods, our non-performing assets are likely to increase and the value of our portfolio is likely to decrease. Adverse economic conditions also may decrease the value of collateral securing some of our loans and the value of our equity investments. Economic slowdowns or recessions could lead to financial losses in our portfolio and a decrease in revenues, net income and assets. Unfavorable economic conditions also could increase our funding costs, limit our access to the capital markets or result in a decision by lenders not to extend credit to us. These events could prevent us from increasing investments and harm our operating results.

In particular, intellectual property owned or controlled by our portfolio companies may constitute an important portion of the value of the collateral of our loans to our portfolio companies. Adverse economic conditions may decrease the demand for our portfolio companies' intellectual property and consequently its value in the event of a bankruptcy or required sale through a foreclosure proceeding. As a result, our ability to fully recover the amounts owed to us under the terms of the loans may be impaired by such events.

A portfolio company's failure to satisfy financial or operating covenants imposed by us or other lenders could lead to defaults and, potentially, termination of the portfolio company's loans and foreclosure on its secured assets, which could trigger cross-defaults under other agreements and jeopardize the portfolio company's ability to meet its

obligations under the debt securities that we hold. We may incur expenses to the extent necessary to seek recovery upon default or to negotiate new terms with a defaulting portfolio company.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Our portfolio companies may be unable to repay or refinance outstanding principal on their loans at or prior to maturity, and rising interest rates may make it more difficult for portfolio companies to make periodic payments on their loans.***

Our portfolio companies may be unable to repay or refinance outstanding principal on their loans at or prior to maturity. This risk and the risk of default is increased to the extent that the loan documents do not require the portfolio companies to pay down the outstanding principal of such debt prior to maturity. In addition, if general interest rates rise, there is a risk that our portfolio companies will be unable to pay escalating interest amounts, which could result in a default under their loan documents with us. Any failure of one or more portfolio companies to repay or refinance its debt at or prior to maturity or the inability of one or more portfolio companies to make ongoing payments following an increase in contractual interest rates could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows.

***The disposition of our investments may result in contingent liabilities.***

We currently expect that a portion of our investments will involve private securities. In connection with the disposition of an investment in private securities, we may be required to make representations about the business and financial affairs of the portfolio company typical of those made in connection with the sale of a business. We may also be required to indemnify the purchasers of such investment to the extent that any such representations turn out to be inaccurate or with respect to certain potential liabilities. These arrangements may result in contingent liabilities that ultimately yield funding obligations that must be satisfied through our return of certain distributions previously made to us.

***The health and performance of our portfolio companies could be adversely affected by political and economic conditions in the countries in which they conduct business.***

Some of the products of our portfolio companies are developed, manufactured, assembled, tested or marketed outside the U.S. Any conflict or uncertainty in these countries, including due to natural disasters, public health concerns, political unrest or safety concerns, among other things, could harm their business, financial condition and results of operations. In addition, if the government of any country in which their products are developed, manufactured or sold sets technical or regulatory standards for products developed or manufactured in or imported into their country that are not widely shared, it may lead some of their customers to suspend imports of their products into that country, require manufacturers or developers in that country to manufacture or develop products with different technical or regulatory standards and disrupt cross-border manufacturing, marketing or business relationships which, in each case, could harm their businesses.

***Any unrealized depreciation we experience on our investment portfolio may be an indication of future realized losses, which could reduce our income available for distribution and could impair our ability to service our borrowings.***

As a business development company, we are required to carry our investments at market value or, if no market value is ascertainable, at fair value as determined in good faith by our Board of Directors. Decreases in the market values or fair values of our investments will be recorded as unrealized depreciation. Any unrealized depreciation in our investment portfolio could be an indication of a portfolio company's inability to meet its repayment obligations to us with respect to the affected investments. This could result in realized losses in the future and ultimately in reductions of our income available for distribution in future periods and could materially adversely affect our ability to service

our outstanding borrowings.

*A lack of IPO or merger and acquisition opportunities may cause companies to stay in our portfolio longer, leading to lower returns, unrealized depreciation, or realized losses.*

A lack of IPO or merger and acquisition ( M&A ) opportunities for venture capital-backed companies could lead to companies staying longer in our portfolio as private entities still requiring funding. This situation

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

may adversely affect the amount of available funding for early-stage companies in particular as, in general, venture-capital firms are being forced to provide additional financing to late-stage companies that cannot complete an IPO or M&A transaction. In the best case, such stagnation would dampen returns, and in the worst case, could lead to unrealized depreciation and realized losses as some companies run short of cash and have to accept lower valuations in private fundings or are not able to access additional capital at all. A lack of IPO or M&A opportunities for venture capital-backed companies can also cause some venture capital firms to change their strategies, leading some of them to reduce funding of their portfolio companies and making it more difficult for such companies to access capital and to fulfill their potential, which can result in unrealized depreciation and realized losses in such companies by other companies such as ourselves who are co-investors in such companies.

***The majority of our portfolio companies will need multiple rounds of additional financing to repay their debts to us and continue operations. Our portfolio companies may not be able to raise additional financing, which could harm our investment returns.***

The majority of our portfolio companies will often require substantial additional equity financing to satisfy their continuing working capital and other cash requirements and, in most instances, to service the interest and principal payments on our investment. Each round of venture financing is typically intended to provide a company with only enough capital to reach the next stage of development. We cannot predict the circumstances or market conditions under which our portfolio companies will seek additional capital. It is possible that one or more of our portfolio companies will not be able to raise additional financing or may be able to do so only at a price or on terms unfavorable to us, either of which would negatively impact our investment returns. Some of these companies may be unable to obtain sufficient financing from private investors, public capital markets or traditional lenders. This may have a significant impact if the companies are unable to obtain certain federal, state or foreign agency approval for their products or the marketing thereof, of if regulatory review processes extend longer than anticipated, and the companies need continued funding for their operations during these times. Accordingly, financing these types of companies may entail a higher risk of loss than would financing companies that are able to utilize traditional credit sources.

***If the assets securing the loans that we make decrease in value, then we may lack sufficient collateral to cover losses.***

To attempt to mitigate credit risks, we will typically take a security interest in the available assets of our portfolio companies. There is no assurance that we will obtain or properly perfect our liens.

There is a risk that the collateral securing our loans may decrease in value over time, may be difficult to sell in a timely manner, may be difficult to appraise and may fluctuate in value based upon the success of the business and market conditions, including as a result of the inability of a portfolio company to raise additional capital. In some circumstances, our lien could be subordinated to claims of other creditors. Consequently, the fact that a loan is secured does not guarantee that we will receive principal and interest payments according to the loan's terms, or that we will be able to collect on the loan should we be forced to enforce our remedies.

In addition, because we invest in technology-related companies, a substantial portion of the assets securing our investment may be in the form of intellectual property, if any, inventory and equipment and, to a lesser extent, cash and accounts receivable. Intellectual property, if any, that is securing our loan could lose value if, among other things, the company's rights to the intellectual property are challenged or if the company's license to the intellectual property is revoked or expires, the technology fails to achieve its intended results or a new technology makes the intellectual property functionally obsolete. Inventory may not be adequate to secure our loan if our valuation of the inventory at

the time that we made the loan was not accurate or if there is a reduction in the demand for the inventory.

Similarly, any equipment securing our loan may not provide us with the anticipated security if there are changes in technology or advances in new equipment that render the particular equipment obsolete or of limited

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

value, or if the company fails to adequately maintain or repair the equipment. Any one or more of the preceding factors could materially impair our ability to recover earned interest and principal in a foreclosure.

At December 31, 2017, approximately 45.1% of our portfolio company debt investments were secured by a first priority security in all of the assets of the portfolio company, including their intellectual property, 34.8% were secured by a first priority security in all of the assets of the portfolio company and the portfolio company was prohibited from pledging or encumbering its intellectual property, or subject to a negative pledge. Another 19.8% of our debt investments were secured by a second priority security interest in all of the portfolio company's assets, other than intellectual property, and 0.3% of our portfolio company debt investments were unsecured as a result of the terms of the acquisition of one of our portfolio companies during the period. At December 31, 2017 we had no equipment only liens on any of our portfolio companies.

***We may suffer a loss if a portfolio company defaults on a loan and the underlying collateral is not sufficient.***

In the event of a default by a portfolio company on a secured loan, we will only have recourse to the assets collateralizing the loan. If the underlying collateral value is less than the loan amount, we will suffer a loss. In addition, we sometimes make loans that are unsecured, which are subject to the risk that other lenders may be directly secured by the assets of the portfolio company. In the event of a default, those collateralized lenders would have priority over us with respect to the proceeds of a sale of the underlying assets. In cases described above, we may lack control over the underlying asset collateralizing our loan or the underlying assets of the portfolio company prior to a default, and as a result the value of the collateral may be reduced by acts or omissions by owners or managers of the assets.

In the event of bankruptcy of a portfolio company, we may not have full recourse to its assets in order to satisfy our loan, or our loan may be subject to equitable subordination. This means that depending on the facts and circumstances, including the extent to which we actually provided significant managerial assistance, if any, to that portfolio company, a bankruptcy court might re-characterize our debt holding and subordinate all or a portion of our claim to that of other creditors. In addition, certain of our loans are subordinate to other debt of the portfolio company. If a portfolio company defaults on our loan or on debt senior to our loan, or in the event of a portfolio company bankruptcy, our loan will be satisfied only after the senior debt receives payment. Where debt senior to our loan exists, the presence of intercreditor arrangements may limit our ability to amend our loan documents, assign our loans, accept prepayments, exercise our remedies (through standstill periods) and control decisions made in bankruptcy proceedings relating to the portfolio company. Bankruptcy and portfolio company litigation can significantly increase collection losses and the time needed for us to acquire the underlying collateral in the event of a default, during which time the collateral may decline in value, causing us to suffer losses.

If the value of collateral underlying our loan declines or interest rates increase during the term of our loan, a portfolio company may not be able to obtain the necessary funds to repay our loan at maturity through refinancing. Decreasing collateral value and/or increasing interest rates may hinder a portfolio company's ability to refinance our loan because the underlying collateral cannot satisfy the debt service coverage requirements necessary to obtain new financing. If a borrower is unable to repay our loan at maturity, we could suffer a loss which may adversely impact our financial performance.

***The inability of our portfolio companies to commercialize their technologies or create or develop commercially viable products or businesses would have a negative impact on our investment returns.***



The possibility that our portfolio companies will not be able to commercialize their technology, products or business concepts presents significant risks to the value of our investment. Additionally, although some of our portfolio companies may already have a commercially successful product or product line when we invest, technology-related products and services often have a more limited market- or life-span than have products in

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

other industries. Thus, the ultimate success of these companies often depends on their ability to continually innovate, or raise additional capital, in increasingly competitive markets. Their inability to do so could affect our investment return. In addition, the intellectual property held by our portfolio companies often represents a substantial portion of the collateral, if any, securing our investments. We cannot assure you that any of our portfolio companies will successfully acquire or develop any new technologies, or that the intellectual property the companies currently hold will remain viable. Even if our portfolio companies are able to develop commercially viable products, the market for new products and services is highly competitive and rapidly changing. Neither our portfolio companies nor we have any control over the pace of technology development. Commercial success is difficult to predict, and the marketing efforts of our portfolio companies may not be successful.

***An investment strategy focused on privately-held companies presents certain challenges, including the lack of available information about these companies, a dependence on the talents and efforts of only a few key portfolio company personnel and a greater vulnerability to economic downturns.***

We invest primarily in privately-held companies. Generally, very little public information exists about these companies, and we are required to rely on the ability of our management and investment teams to obtain adequate information to evaluate the potential returns from investing in these companies. Such small, privately held companies as we routinely invest in may also lack quality infrastructures, thus leading to poor disclosure standards or control environments. If we are unable to uncover all material information about these companies, then we may not make a fully informed investment decision, and we may not receive the expected return on our investment or lose some or all of the money invested in these companies.

Also, privately-held companies frequently have less diverse product lines and a smaller market presence than do larger competitors. Privately-held companies are, thus, generally more vulnerable to economic downturns and may experience more substantial variations in operating results than do larger competitors. These factors could affect our investment returns and our results of operations and financial condition.

In addition, our success depends, in large part, upon the abilities of the key management personnel of our portfolio companies, who are responsible for the day-to-day operations of our portfolio companies. Competition for qualified personnel is intense at any stage of a company's development, and high turnover of personnel is common in technology-related companies. The loss of one or more key managers can hinder or delay a company's implementation of its business plan and harm its financial condition. Our portfolio companies may not be able to attract and retain qualified managers and personnel. Any inability to do so may negatively impact our investment returns and our results of operations and financial condition.

***If our portfolio companies are unable to protect their intellectual property rights, or are required to devote significant resources to protecting their intellectual property rights, then our investments could be harmed.***

Our future success and competitive position depend in part upon the ability of our portfolio companies to obtain and maintain proprietary technology used in their products and services, which will often represent a significant portion of the collateral, if any, securing our investment. The portfolio companies will rely, in part, on patent, trade secret and trademark law to protect that technology, but competitors may misappropriate their intellectual property, and disputes as to ownership of intellectual property may arise. Portfolio companies may, from time to time, be required to institute litigation in order to enforce their patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights, to protect their trade secrets, to determine the validity and scope of the proprietary rights of others or to defend against claims of infringement. Such litigation could result in substantial costs and diversion of resources. Similarly, if a portfolio company is found

to infringe upon or misappropriate a third party's patent or other proprietary rights, that portfolio company could be required to pay damages to such third party, alter its own products or processes, obtain a license from the third party and/or cease activities utilizing such proprietary rights, including making or selling products utilizing such proprietary rights. Any of the foregoing events could negatively affect both the portfolio company's ability to service our debt investment and the value of any related debt and equity securities that we own, as well as any collateral securing our investment.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***We generally will not control our portfolio companies.***

In some instances, we may control our portfolio companies or provide our portfolio companies with significant managerial assistance. However, we generally do not, and do not expect to, control the decision making in many of our portfolio companies, even though we may have board representation or board observation rights, and our debt agreements may contain certain restrictive covenants. As a result, we are subject to the risk that a portfolio company in which we invest will make business decisions with which we disagree and the management of such company, as representatives of the holders of their common equity, will take risks or otherwise act in ways that do not serve our interests as debt investors. Due to the lack of liquidity for our investments in non-traded companies, we may not be able to dispose of our interests in our portfolio companies as readily as we would like or at an appropriate valuation. As a result, a portfolio company may make decisions that would decrease the value of our portfolio holdings.

***Our financial condition, results of operations and cash flows could be negatively affected if we are unable to recover our principal investment as a result of a negative pledge or lack of a security interest on the intellectual property of our venture growth stage companies.***

In some cases, we collateralize our loans with a secured collateral position in a portfolio company's assets, which may include a negative pledge or, to a lesser extent, no security on their intellectual property. In the event of a default on a loan, the intellectual property of the portfolio company will most likely be liquidated to provide proceeds to pay the creditors of the company. There can be no assurance that our security interest, if any, in the proceeds of the intellectual property will be enforceable in a court of law or bankruptcy court or that there will not be others with senior or *pari passu* credit interests.

***Our relationship with certain portfolio companies may expose us to our portfolio companies' trade secrets and confidential information which may require us to be parties to non-disclosure agreements and restrict us from engaging in certain transactions.***

Our relationship with some of our portfolio companies may expose us to our portfolio companies' trade secrets and confidential information (including transactional data and personal data about their employees and clients) which may require us to be parties to non-disclosure agreements and restrict us from engaging in certain transactions. Unauthorized access or disclosure of such information may occur, resulting in theft, loss or other misappropriation. Any theft, loss, improper use, such as insider trading or other misappropriation of confidential information could have a material adverse impact on our competitive positions, our relationship with our portfolio companies and our reputation and could subject us to regulatory inquiries, enforcement and fines, civil litigation (which may cause us to incur significant expense or expose us to losses) and possible financial liability or costs.

***Portfolio company litigation could result in additional costs, the diversion of management time and resources and have an adverse impact on the fair value of our investment.***

To the extent that litigation arises with respect to any of our portfolio companies, we may be named as a defendant, which could result in additional costs and the diversion of management time and resources. Furthermore, if we are providing managerial assistance to the portfolio company or have representatives on the portfolio company's board of directors, our costs and diversion of our management's time and resources in assessing the portfolio company could be substantial in light of any such litigation regardless of whether we are named as a defendant. In addition, litigation involving a portfolio company may be costly and affect the operations of the portfolio company's business, which could in turn have an adverse impact on the fair value of our investment in such company.

***We may not be able to realize our entire investment on equipment-based loans, if any, in the case of default.***

We may from time-to-time provide loans that will be collateralized only by equipment of the portfolio company. If the portfolio company defaults on the loan we would take possession of the underlying equipment to

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

satisfy the outstanding debt. The residual value of the equipment at the time we would take possession may not be sufficient to satisfy the outstanding debt and we could experience a loss on the disposition of the equipment. At December 31, 2017, we had no equipment-based loans.

***Our investments in foreign securities may involve significant risks in addition to the risks inherent in U.S. investments.***

Our investment strategy contemplates that a portion of our investments may be in securities of foreign companies. Our total investments at value in foreign companies were approximately \$138.0 million or 8.9% of total investments at December 31, 2017. Investing in foreign companies may expose us to additional risks not typically associated with investing in U.S. companies. These risks include changes in exchange control regulations, political and social instability, expropriation, imposition of foreign taxes, less liquid markets and less available information than is generally the case in the U.S., higher transaction costs, less government supervision of exchanges, brokers and issuers, less developed bankruptcy laws, difficulty in enforcing contractual obligations, lack of uniform accounting and auditing standards and greater price volatility, among other things.

***If our investments do not meet our performance expectations, you may not receive distributions.***

We intend to make distributions on a quarterly basis to our stockholders. We may not be able to achieve operating results that will allow us to make distributions at a specific level or to increase the amount of these distributions from time to time. In addition, due to the asset coverage test applicable to us as a business development company, we may be limited in our ability to make distributions. Also, restrictions and provisions in any future credit facilities may limit our ability to make distributions. As a RIC, if we do not distribute at least a certain percentage of our income each taxable year as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to our stockholders, we will suffer adverse tax consequences, including the inability to be subject to tax as a RIC. We cannot assure you that you will receive distributions at a particular level or at all.

***We may not have sufficient funds to make follow-on investments. Our decision not to make a follow-on investment may have a negative impact on a portfolio company in need of such an investment or may result in a missed opportunity for us.***

After our initial investment in a portfolio company, we may be called upon from time to time to provide additional funds to such company or have the opportunity or need to increase our investment in a successful situation or attempt to preserve or enhance the value of our initial investment, for example, the exercise of a warrant to purchase common stock, or a negative situation, to protect an existing investment. We have the discretion to make any follow-on investments, subject to the availability of capital resources and regulatory considerations. We may elect not to make follow-on investments or otherwise lack sufficient funds to make those investments. Any decision we make not to make a follow-on investment or any inability on our part to make such an investment may have a negative impact on a portfolio company in need of such an investment or may result in a missed opportunity for us to increase our participation in a successful operation and may dilute our equity interest or otherwise reduce the expected yield on our investment. Moreover, a follow-on investment may limit the number of companies in which we can make initial investments. In determining whether to make a follow-on investment, our management will exercise its business judgment and apply criteria similar to those used when making the initial investment. There is no assurance that we will make, or will have sufficient funds to make, follow-on investments and this could adversely affect our success and result in the loss of a substantial portion or all of our investment in a portfolio company.

***The lack of liquidity in our investments may adversely affect our business and, if we need to sell any of our investments, we may not be able to do so at a favorable price. As a result, we may suffer losses.***

We generally invest in debt securities with terms of up to seven years and hold such investments until maturity, and we do not expect that our related holdings of equity securities will provide us with liquidity

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

opportunities in the near-term. We invest and expect to continue investing in companies whose securities have no established trading market and whose securities are and will be subject to legal and other restrictions on resale or whose securities are and will be less liquid than are publicly-traded securities. The illiquidity of these investments may make it difficult for us to sell these investments when desired. In addition, if we are required to liquidate all or a portion of our portfolio quickly, we may realize significantly less than the value at which we had previously recorded these investments. As a result, we do not expect to achieve liquidity in our investments in the near-term. However, to maintain our qualification as a business development company and as a RIC, we may have to dispose of investments if we do not satisfy one or more of the applicable criteria under the respective regulatory frameworks.

***Our portfolio companies may incur debt or issue equity securities that rank equally with, or senior to, our investments in such companies.***

We invest primarily in debt securities issued by our portfolio companies. In some cases, portfolio companies will be permitted to incur other debt, or issue other equity securities, that rank equally with, or senior to, our investment. Such instruments may provide that the holders thereof are entitled to receive payment of distributions, interest or principal on or before the dates on which we are entitled to receive payments in respect of our investments. These debt instruments would usually prohibit the portfolio companies from paying interest on or repaying our investments in the event and during the continuance of a default under such debt. Also, in the event of insolvency, liquidation, dissolution, reorganization or bankruptcy of a portfolio company, holders of securities ranking senior to our investment in that portfolio company would typically be entitled to receive payment in full before we receive any distribution in respect of our investment. After repaying such holders, the portfolio company might not have any remaining assets to use for repaying its obligation to us. In the case of securities ranking equally with our investments, we would have to share on a pari passu basis any distributions with other security holders in the event of an insolvency, liquidation, dissolution, reorganization or bankruptcy of the relevant portfolio company.

The rights we may have with respect to the collateral securing any junior priority loans we make to our portfolio companies may also be limited pursuant to the terms of one or more intercreditor agreements that we enter into with the holders of senior debt. Under such an intercreditor agreement, at any time that senior obligations are outstanding, we may forfeit certain rights with respect to the collateral to the holders of the senior obligations. These rights may include the right to commence enforcement proceedings against the collateral, the right to control the conduct of such enforcement proceedings, the right to approve amendments to collateral documents, the right to release liens on the collateral and the right to waive past defaults under collateral documents. We may not have the ability to control or direct such actions, even if as a result our rights as junior lenders are adversely affected.

***Our warrant and equity-related investments are highly speculative, and we may not realize gains from these investments. If our warrant and equity-related investments do not generate gains, then the return on our invested capital will be lower than it would otherwise be, which could result in a decline in the value of shares of our common stock.***

When we invest in debt securities, we generally expect to acquire warrants or other equity-related securities as well. Our goal is ultimately to dispose of these equity interests and realize gains upon disposition of such interests. Over time, the gains that we realize on these equity interests may offset, to some extent, losses that we experience on defaults under debt and other securities that we hold. However, the equity interests that we receive may not appreciate in value and, in fact, may decline in value. Accordingly, we may not be able to realize gains from our equity interests, and any gains that we do realize on the disposition of any equity interests may not be sufficient to offset any other losses that we experience. In addition, we anticipate that approximately 50% of our warrants may not realize and exit



or generate any returns. Furthermore, because of the financial reporting requirements under GAAP, of those approximately 50% of warrants that we do not realize and exit, the assigned costs to the initial warrants may lead to realized write-offs when the warrants either expire or are not exercised.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Prepayments of our debt investments by our portfolio companies could adversely impact our results of operations and reduce our return on equity.***

During the year ended December 31, 2017, we received debt investment early principal repayments and pay down of working capital debt investments of approximately \$625.1 million. We are subject to the risk that the investments we make in our portfolio companies may be repaid prior to maturity. When this occurs, we will generally reinvest these proceeds in temporary investments, pending their future investment in new portfolio companies. These temporary investments will typically have substantially lower yields than the debt being prepaid and we could experience significant delays in reinvesting these amounts. Any future investment in a new portfolio company may also be at lower yields than the debt that was repaid. As a result, our results of operations could be materially adversely affected if one or more of our portfolio companies elect to prepay amounts owed to us. Additionally, prepayments could negatively impact our return on equity, which could result in a decline in the market price of our common stock.

***We may choose to waive or defer enforcement of covenants in the debt securities held in our portfolio, which may cause us to lose all or part of our investment in these companies.***

We structure the debt investments in our portfolio companies to include business and financial covenants placing affirmative and negative obligations on the operation of the company's business and its financial condition. However, from time to time we may elect to waive breaches of these covenants, including our right to payment, or waive or defer enforcement of remedies, such as acceleration of obligations or foreclosure on collateral, depending upon the financial condition and prospects of the particular portfolio company. These actions may reduce the likelihood of receiving the full amount of future payments of interest or principal and be accompanied by a deterioration in the value of the underlying collateral as many of these companies may have limited financial resources, may be unable to meet future obligations and may go bankrupt. This could negatively impact our ability to pay distributions, could adversely affect our results of operation and financial condition and cause the loss of all or part of your investment.

We may also be subject to lender liability claims for actions taken by us with respect to a borrower's business or instances where we exercise control over the borrower. It is possible that we could become subject to a lender's liability claim, including as a result of actions taken in rendering significant managerial assistance or actions to compel and collect payments from the borrower outside the ordinary course of business.

***Our loans could be subject to equitable subordination by a court which would increase our risk of loss with respect to such loans or we could be subject to lender liability claims.***

Courts may apply the doctrine of equitable subordination to subordinate the claim or lien of a lender against a borrower to claims or liens of other creditors of the borrower, when the lender or its affiliates is found to have engaged in unfair, inequitable or fraudulent conduct. The courts have also applied the doctrine of equitable subordination when a lender or its affiliates is found to have exerted inappropriate control over a client, including control resulting from the ownership of equity interests in a client or providing of significant managerial assistance. We have made direct equity investments or received warrants in connection with loans. These investments represent approximately 8.2% of the outstanding value of our investment portfolio as of December 31, 2017. Payments on one or more of our loans, particularly certain loans to clients in which we also hold equity interests, may be subject to claims of equitable subordination. If we were deemed to have the ability to control or otherwise exercise influence over the business and affairs of one or more of our portfolio companies resulting in economic hardship to other creditors of that company, this control or influence may constitute grounds for equitable subordination and a court may treat one or more of our loans as if it were unsecured or common equity in the portfolio company. In that case, if the portfolio company were

to liquidate, we would be entitled to repayment of our loan on a pro-rata basis with other unsecured debt or, if the effect of subordination was to place us at the level of common equity, then on an equal basis with other holders of the portfolio company's common equity only after all of its obligations relating to its debt and preferred securities had been satisfied.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Index to Financial Statements**

In addition to these risks, in the event we elect to convert our debt position to equity, or otherwise take control of a portfolio company (such as through placing a member of our management team on its board of directors), as part of a restructuring, we face additional risks acting in that capacity. It is not uncommon for unsecured, or otherwise unsatisfied creditors, to sue parties that elect to use their debt positions to later control a company following a restructuring or bankruptcy. Apart from lawsuits, key customers and suppliers might act in a fashion contrary to the interests of a portfolio company if they were left unsatisfied in a restructuring or bankruptcy. Any combination of these factors might lead to the loss in value of a company subject to such activity and may divert the time and attention of our management team and investment team to help to address such issues in a portfolio company.

***The potential inability of our portfolio companies in the healthcare industry to charge desired prices with respect to prescription drugs could impact their revenues and in turn their ability to repay us.***

Some of our portfolio companies in the healthcare industry are subject to risks associated with the pricing for prescription drugs. It is uncertain whether customers of our healthcare industry portfolio companies will continue to utilize established prescription drug pricing methods, or whether other pricing benchmarks will be adopted for establishing prices within the industry. Legislation may lead to changes in the pricing for Medicare and Medicaid programs. Regulators have conducted investigations into the use of prescription drug pricing methods for federal program payment, and whether such methods have inflated drug expenditures by the Medicare and Medicaid programs. Federal and state proposals have sought to change the basis for calculating payment of certain drugs by the Medicare and Medicaid programs. Additionally, President Trump has taken actions and made statements that suggest he plans to seek repeal of all or portions of the Affordable Care Act, or the ACA. There is currently uncertainty with respect to the impact any such repeal may have and any resulting changes may take time to unfold, which could have an impact on coverage and reimbursement for healthcare items and services covered by plans that were authorized by the ACA. We cannot predict the ultimate content, timing or effect of any such legislation or executive action or the impact of potential legislation or executive action on us. Any changes to the method for calculating prescription drug costs may reduce the revenues of our portfolio companies in the healthcare industry which could in turn impair their ability to timely make any principal and interest payments owed to us.

### **Risks Related to Our Securities**

***Investing in shares of our common stock involves an above average degree of risk.***

The investments we make in accordance with our investment objective may result in a higher amount of risk, volatility or loss of principal than alternative investment options. Our investments in portfolio companies may be highly speculative and aggressive, and therefore, an investment in our common stock may not be suitable for investors with lower risk tolerance.

***Our common stock may trade below its NAV per share, which limits our ability to raise additional equity capital.***

If our common stock is trading below its NAV per share, we will generally not be able to issue additional shares of our common stock at its market price without first obtaining the approval for such issuance from our stockholders and our independent directors. If our common stock trades below NAV, the higher cost of equity capital may result in it being unattractive to raise new equity, which may limit our ability to grow. The risk of trading below NAV is separate and distinct from the risk that our NAV per share may decline. We cannot predict whether shares of our common stock will trade above, at or below our NAV.

***Provisions of our charter and bylaws could deter takeover attempts and have an adverse impact on the price of our common stock.***

Our charter and bylaws contain provisions that may have the effect of discouraging, delaying, or making difficult a change in control of our company or the removal of our incumbent directors. Under our charter, our

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Board of Directors is divided into three classes serving staggered terms, which will make it more difficult for a hostile bidder to acquire control of us. In addition, our Board of Directors may, without stockholder action, authorize the issuance of shares of stock in one or more classes or series, including preferred stock. Subject to compliance with the 1940 Act, our Board of Directors may, without stockholder action, amend our charter to increase the number of shares of stock of any class or series that we have authority to issue. The existence of these provisions, among others, may have a negative impact on the price of our common stock and may discourage third party bids for ownership of our company. These provisions may prevent any premiums being offered to you for shares of our common stock in connection with a takeover.

***Sales of substantial amounts of our common stock in the public market may have an adverse effect on the market price of our common stock.***

Sales of substantial amounts of our common stock, or the availability of such common stock for sale (including as a result of the conversion of our 2022 Convertible Notes, issued in January 2017, into common stock), could adversely affect the prevailing market prices for our common stock, which may also lead to further dilution of our earnings per share. If this occurs and continues, it could impair our ability to raise additional capital through the sale of securities should we desire to do so.

***We may periodically obtain the approval of our stockholders to issue shares of our common stock at prices below the then current NAV per share of our common stock. If we receive such approval from the stockholders, we may issue shares of our common stock at a price below the then current NAV per share of common stock. Any such issuance could materially dilute your interest in our common stock and reduce our NAV per share.***

We may periodically obtain the approval of our stockholders to issue shares of our common stock at prices below the then current NAV per share of our common stock. Such approval has allowed and may again allow us to access the capital markets in a way that we typically are unable to do as a result of restrictions that, absent stockholder approval, apply to business development companies under the 1940 Act. Any decision to sell shares of our common stock below the then current NAV per share of our common stock is subject to the determination by our Board of Directors that such issuance and sale is in our and our stockholders' best interests.

Any sale or other issuance of shares of our common stock at a price below NAV per share has resulted and will continue to result in an immediate dilution to your interest in our common stock and a reduction of our NAV per share. This dilution would occur as a result of a proportionately greater decrease in a stockholder's interest in our earnings and assets and voting interest in us than the increase in our assets resulting from such issuance. Because the number of future shares of common stock that may be issued below our NAV per share and the price and timing of such issuances are not currently known, we cannot predict the actual dilutive effect of any such issuance. We also cannot determine the resulting reduction in our NAV per share of any such issuance at this time. We caution you that such effects may be material, and we undertake to describe all the material risks and dilutive effects of any offering that we make at a price below our then current NAV in the future in a prospectus supplement issued in connection with any such offering. We cannot predict whether shares of our common stock will trade above, at or below our NAV.

***If we conduct an offering of our common stock at a price below NAV, investors are likely to incur immediate dilution upon the closing of the offering.***

We are not generally able to issue and sell our common stock at a price below NAV per share. We may, however, sell our common stock, at a price below the current NAV of the common stock, or sell warrants, options or other rights to acquire such common stock, at a price below the current NAV of the common stock if our Board of Directors determines that such sale is in our best interests and the best interests of our stockholders and our stockholders have approved the practice of making such sales.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

In connection with the receipt of such stockholder approval, we will limit the number of shares that it issues at a price below NAV pursuant to this authorization so that the aggregate dilutive effect on our then outstanding shares will not exceed 20%. Our Board of Directors, subject to its fiduciary duties and regulatory requirements, has the discretion to determine the amount of the discount, and as a result, the discount could be up to 100% of NAV per share. If we were to issue shares at a price below NAV, such sales would result in an immediate dilution to existing common stockholders, which would include a reduction in the NAV per share as a result of the issuance. This dilution would also include a proportionately greater decrease in a stockholder's interest in our earnings and assets and voting interest in us than the increase in our assets resulting from such issuance.

In addition, if we determined to conduct additional offerings in the future there may be even greater dilution if we determine to conduct such offerings at prices below NAV. As a result, investors will experience further dilution and additional discounts to the price of our common stock. Because the number of shares of common stock that could be so issued and the timing of any issuance is not currently known, the actual dilutive effect of an offering cannot be predicted. We did not sell any of our securities at a price below NAV during the year ended December 31, 2017.

***We may allocate the net proceeds from an offering in ways with which you may not agree.***

We have significant flexibility in investing the net proceeds of an offering and may use the net proceeds from an offering in ways with which you may not agree or for purposes other than those contemplated at the time of the offering.

***If we issue preferred stock, debt securities or convertible debt securities, the NAV and market value of our common stock may become more volatile.***

We cannot assure you that the issuance of preferred stock and/or debt securities would result in a higher yield or return to the holders of our common stock. The issuance of preferred stock, debt securities or convertible debt would likely cause the NAV and market value of our common stock to become more volatile. If the distribution rate on the preferred stock, or the interest rate on the debt securities, were to approach the net rate of return on our investment portfolio, the benefit of leverage to the holders of our common stock would be reduced. If the distribution rate on the preferred stock, or the interest rate on the debt securities, were to exceed the net rate of return on our portfolio, the use of leverage would result in a lower rate of return to the holders of common stock than if we had not issued the preferred stock or debt securities. Any decline in the NAV of our investment would be borne entirely by the holders of our common stock. Therefore, if the market value of our portfolio were to decline, the leverage would result in a greater decrease in NAV to the holders of our common stock than if we were not leveraged through the issuance of preferred stock. This decline in NAV would also tend to cause a greater decline in the market price for our common stock.

There is also a risk that, in the event of a sharp decline in the value of our net assets, we would be in danger of failing to maintain required asset coverage ratios which may be required by the preferred stock, debt securities, convertible debt or units or of a downgrade in the ratings of the preferred stock, debt securities, convertible debt or our current investment income might not be sufficient to meet the distribution requirements on the preferred stock or the interest payments on the debt securities. If we do not maintain our required asset coverage ratios, we may not be permitted to declare dividend distributions. In order to counteract such an event, we might need to liquidate investments in order to fund redemption of some or all of the preferred stock, debt securities or convertible debt. In addition, we would pay (and the holders of our common stock would bear) all costs and expenses relating to the issuance and ongoing maintenance of the preferred stock, debt securities, convertible debt or any combination of these securities. Holders of



preferred stock, debt securities or convertible debt may have different interests than holders of common stock and may at times have disproportionate influence over our affairs.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Holders of any preferred stock that we may issue will have the right to elect members of the Board of Directors and have class voting rights on certain matters.***

The 1940 Act requires that holders of shares of preferred stock must be entitled as a class to elect two directors at all times and to elect a majority of the directors if distributions on such preferred stock are in arrears by two years or more, until such arrearage is eliminated. In addition, certain matters under the 1940 Act require the separate vote of the holders of any issued and outstanding preferred stock, including changes in fundamental investment restrictions and conversion to open-end status and, accordingly, preferred stockholders could veto any such changes. Restrictions imposed on the declarations and payment of dividends or other distributions to the holders of our common stock and preferred stock, both by the 1940 Act and by requirements imposed by rating agencies, might impair our ability to maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC.

***Terms relating to redemption may materially adversely affect your return on any debt securities that we may issue.***

If you are holding debt securities issued by the Company and such securities are redeemable at our option, we may choose to redeem your debt securities at times when prevailing interest rates are lower than the interest rate paid on your debt securities. In addition, if you are holding debt securities issued by the Company and such securities are subject to mandatory redemption, we may be required to redeem your debt securities at times when prevailing interest rates are lower than the interest rate paid on your debt securities. In this circumstance, you may not be able to reinvest the redemption proceeds in a comparable security at an effective interest rate as high as your debt securities being redeemed.

On October 24, 2017, our Board of Directors approved a redemption of \$75.0 million of the outstanding aggregate principal amount of the 2024 Notes, which were redeemed on November 23, 2017. Further, on February 9, 2018, our Board of Directors approved a redemption of \$100.0 million of the remaining outstanding aggregate principal amount of the 2024 Notes, which were redeemed on April 2, 2018. We may redeem the remaining 2024 Notes at any time prior to maturity and the 2022 Notes after September 23, 2022 at a redemption price of 100% of the outstanding principal amount thereof plus accrued and unpaid interest payments. If we choose to redeem the 2022 Notes or 2024 Notes when the fair market value of the 2022 Notes or 2024 Notes is above par value, you would experience a loss of any potential premium.

***Our shares may trade at discounts from NAV or at premiums that are unsustainable over the long term.***

Shares of business development companies may trade at a market price that is less than the NAV that is attributable to those shares. Our shares have historically traded above and below our NAV. The possibility that our shares of common stock will trade at a discount from NAV or at a premium that is unsustainable over the long term is separate and distinct from the risk that our NAV may decrease. It is not possible to predict whether our shares will trade at, above or below NAV in the future.

***Our credit ratings may not reflect all risks of an investment in our debt securities.***

Our credit ratings are an assessment by third parties of our ability to pay our obligations. Consequently, real or anticipated changes in our credit ratings will generally affect the market value of our debt securities. Our credit ratings, however, may not reflect the potential impact of risks related to market conditions generally or other factors discussed herein on the market value of or trading market for the publicly issued debt securities.

***A downgrade, suspension or withdrawal of the credit rating assigned by a rating agency to us or our debt securities, if any, or change in the debt markets could cause the liquidity or market value of our debt securities to decline significantly.***

Our credit ratings are an assessment by rating agencies of our ability to pay our debts when due. Consequently, real or anticipated changes in our credit ratings will generally affect the market value of our

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

outstanding debt and equity securities. These credit ratings may not reflect the potential impact of risks relating to the structure or marketing of such debt and equity securities. Credit ratings are not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold any security, and may be revised or withdrawn at any time by the issuing organization in its sole discretion.

Neither we nor any underwriter undertakes any obligation to maintain our credit ratings or to advise holders of our debt and equity securities of any changes in our credit ratings. There can be no assurance that a credit rating will remain for any given period of time or that such credit ratings will not be lowered or withdrawn entirely if future circumstances relating to the basis of the credit rating, such as adverse changes in our company, so warrant. An increase in the competitive environment, inability to cover distributions, or increase in leverage could lead to a downgrade in our credit ratings and limit our access to the debt and equity markets capability impairing our ability to grow the business. The conditions of the financial markets and prevailing interest rates have fluctuated in the past and are likely to fluctuate in the future.

***Investors in offerings of our common stock will likely incur immediate dilution upon the closing of an offering pursuant to this prospectus.***

We generally expect the public offering price of any offering of shares of our common stock to be higher than the book value per share of our outstanding common stock (unless we offer shares pursuant to a rights offering or after obtaining prior approval for such issuance from our stockholders and our independent directors). Accordingly, investors purchasing shares of common stock in offerings pursuant to this prospectus may pay a price per share that exceeds the tangible book value per share after such offering. We currently have an incentive plan and may in the future implement additional incentive plans or retention plans. To the extent equity is issued under any of these plans, stockholders' ownership interest will be diluted.

***Our stockholders may experience dilution upon the conversion of our 2022 Convertible Notes.***

Our 2022 Convertible Notes, issued in January 2017, are convertible into shares of our common stock beginning on August 1, 2021 or, under certain circumstances, earlier. Upon conversion of the 2022 Convertible Notes, we have the choice to pay or deliver, as the case may be, at our election, cash, shares of our common stock or a combination of cash and shares of our common stock. The initial conversion price of the 2022 Convertible Notes is \$16.41, subject to adjustment in certain circumstances. If we elect to deliver shares of common stock upon a conversion at the time our NAV per share exceeds the conversion price in effect at such time, our stockholders may incur dilution. In addition, our stockholders will experience dilution in their ownership percentage of common stock upon our issuance of common stock in connection with the conversion of the 2022 Convertible Notes and any distributions paid on our common stock will also be paid on shares issued in connection with such conversion after such issuance.

***Our stockholders will experience dilution in their ownership percentage if they opt out of our dividend reinvestment plan.***

All distributions in cash payable to stockholders that are participants in our dividend reinvestment plan are automatically reinvested in shares of our common stock. As a result, our stockholders that opt out of our dividend reinvestment plan will experience dilution in their ownership percentage of our common stock over time.

***Our distribution proceeds may exceed our earnings. Therefore, portions of the distributions that we make may represent a return of capital to stockholders, which will lower their tax basis in their shares.***

The tax treatment and characterization of our distributions may vary significantly from time to time due to the nature of our investments. The ultimate tax characterization of our distributions made during a taxable year generally will not finally be determined until after the end of that taxable year. We may make distributions during a taxable year that exceed our investment company taxable income, determined without regard to any

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

deduction for dividends paid, and net capital gains for that taxable year. In such a situation, the amount by which our total distributions exceed investment company taxable income, determined without regard to any deduction for dividends paid, and net capital gains generally would be treated as a return of capital up to the amount of a stockholder's tax basis in the shares, with any amounts exceeding such tax basis generally treated as a gain from the sale or exchange of such shares. A return of capital generally is a return of a stockholder's investment rather than a return of earnings or gains derived from our investment activities. Moreover, we may pay all or a substantial portion of our distributions from the proceeds of the sale of shares of our common stock or from borrowings in anticipation of future cash flow, which could constitute a return of stockholders' capital and will lower such stockholders' tax basis in our shares, which may result in increased tax liability to stockholders when they sell such shares. The tax liability to stockholders upon the sale of shares may increase even if such shares are sold at a loss.

***Our common stock price has been and continues to be volatile and may decrease substantially.***

As with any company, the price of our common stock will fluctuate with market conditions and other factors, which include, but are not limited to, the following:

price and volume fluctuations in the overall stock market from time to time;

significant volatility in the market price and trading volume of securities of RICs, business development companies or other financial services companies;

any inability to deploy or invest our capital;

fluctuations in interest rates;

any shortfall in revenue or net income or any increase in losses from levels expected by investors or securities analysts;

the financial performance of specific industries in which we invest in on a recurring basis;

announcement of strategic developments, acquisitions, and other material events by us or our competitors, or operating performance of companies comparable to us;

changes in regulatory policies or tax guidelines with respect to RICs, SBICs or business development companies;

losing our ability to either qualify or be subject to U.S. federal income tax as a RIC;

actual or anticipated changes in our earnings or fluctuations in our operating results, or changes in the expectations of securities analysts;

changes in the value of our portfolio of investments;

realized losses in investments in our portfolio companies;

general economic conditions and trends;

inability to access the capital markets;

loss of a major funded source; or

departure of key personnel.

In the past, following periods of volatility in the market price of a company's securities, securities class action litigation has often been brought against that company. Due to the potential volatility of our stock price, we may be the target of securities litigation in the future. Securities litigation could result in substantial costs and could divert management's attention and resources from our business.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***We may be unable to invest a significant portion of the net proceeds from an offering or from exiting an investment or other capital on acceptable terms, which could harm our financial condition and operating results.***

Delays in investing the net proceeds raised in an offering or from exiting an investment or other capital may cause our performance to be worse than that of other fully invested business development companies or other lenders or investors pursuing comparable investment strategies. We cannot assure you that we will be able to identify any investments that meet our investment objective or that any investment that we make will produce a positive return. We may be unable to invest the net proceeds of any offering or from exiting an investment or other capital on acceptable terms within the time period that we anticipate or at all, which could harm our financial condition and operating results.

We anticipate that, depending on market conditions and the amount of the capital, it may take us a substantial period of time to invest substantially all the capital in securities meeting our investment objective. During this period, we will invest the capital primarily in cash equivalents, U.S. government securities and other high-quality debt investments that mature in one year or less or use the net proceeds from such offerings to reduce then-outstanding debt obligations, which may produce returns that are significantly lower than the returns which we expect to achieve when our portfolio is fully invested in securities meeting our investment objective. As a result, any distributions that we pay during such period may be substantially lower than the distributions that we may be able to pay when our portfolio is fully invested in securities meeting our investment objective. In addition, until such time as the net proceeds of any offering or from exiting an investment or other capital are invested in new securities meeting our investment objective, the market price for our securities may decline. Thus, the initial return on your investment may be lower than when, if ever, our portfolio is fully invested in securities meeting our investment objective.

***Your interest in us may be diluted if you do not fully exercise your subscription rights in any rights offering. In addition, if the subscription price is less than our NAV per share, then you will experience an immediate dilution of the aggregate NAV of your shares.***

In the event we issue subscription rights, stockholders who do not fully exercise their subscription rights should expect that they will, at the completion of a rights offering pursuant to this prospectus, own a smaller proportional interest in us than would otherwise be the case if they fully exercised their rights. We cannot state precisely the amount of any such dilution in share ownership because we do not know at this time what proportion of the shares will be purchased as a result of such rights offering.

In addition, if the subscription price is less than the NAV per share of our common stock, then our stockholders would experience an immediate dilution of the aggregate NAV of their shares as a result of the offering. The amount of any decrease in NAV is not predictable because it is not known at this time what the subscription price and NAV per share will be on the expiration date of a rights offering or what proportion of the shares will be purchased as a result of such rights offering. Such dilution could be substantial.

***The trading market or market value of our publicly issued debt securities may fluctuate.***

Our publicly issued debt securities may or may not have, and may never develop, an established trading market. In addition to our creditworthiness, many factors may materially adversely affect the trading market for, and market value of, our publicly issued debt securities. These factors include, but are not limited to, the following:



the time remaining to the maturity of these debt securities;

the outstanding principal amount of debt securities with terms identical to these debt securities;

the ratings assigned by national statistical ratings agencies;

the general economic environment;

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

the supply of debt securities trading in the secondary market, if any;

the redemption or repayment features, if any, of these debt securities;

the level, direction and volatility of market interest rates generally; and

market rates of interest higher or lower than rates borne by the debt securities. You should also be aware that there may be a limited number of buyers when you decide to sell your debt securities. This too may materially adversely affect the market value of the debt securities or the trading market for the debt securities.

***The 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes are unsecured and therefore are effectively subordinated to any secured indebtedness we have currently incurred or may incur in the future.***

The 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes are not secured by any of our assets or any of the assets of our subsidiaries. As a result, while the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes remain senior in priority to our equity securities, they are effectively subordinated to any secured indebtedness we or our subsidiaries have currently incurred and may incur in the future (or any indebtedness that is initially unsecured to which we subsequently grant security) to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness. In any liquidation, dissolution, bankruptcy or other similar proceeding, the holders of any of our existing or future secured indebtedness and the secured indebtedness of our subsidiaries may assert rights against the assets pledged to secure that indebtedness in order to receive full payment of their indebtedness before the assets may be used to pay other creditors, including the holders of the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes.

***The 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes are structurally subordinated to the indebtedness and other liabilities of our subsidiaries.***

The 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes are obligations exclusively of Hercules Capital, Inc. and not of any of our subsidiaries. None of our subsidiaries are or act as guarantors of the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes and the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes are not required to be guaranteed by any subsidiaries we may acquire or create in the future. Our secured indebtedness with respect to the SBA debentures is held through our SBIC subsidiaries. The assets of any such subsidiaries are not directly available to satisfy the claims of our creditors, including holders of the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes.

Except to the extent we are a creditor with recognized claims against our subsidiaries, all claims of creditors (including holders of preferred stock, if any, of our subsidiaries) will have priority over our equity interests in such subsidiaries (and therefore the claims of our creditors, including holders of the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes) with respect to the assets of such subsidiaries. Even if we are recognized as a creditor of one or more of our subsidiaries, our claims would still be subordinated to any security interests in the assets of any such subsidiary and to any indebtedness or other liabilities of any such subsidiary senior to our claims. As a result of not having a direct claim against any of our subsidiaries, the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes are structurally subordinated to all indebtedness and other liabilities (including trade payables) of our subsidiaries and any subsidiaries that we may in the future acquire or establish as financing vehicles or otherwise. In addition, our subsidiaries may incur substantial additional indebtedness in the future, all of which would be structurally senior to

the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes.

***The respective indentures under which the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes were issued contains limited protections for the holders of the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes.***

The indenture under which 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes were issued offers limited protections to the holders of the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes. The terms of the respective indentures and the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes do not restrict our or any of our

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

subsidiaries ability to engage in, or otherwise be a party to, a variety of corporate transactions, circumstances or events that could have an adverse impact on an investment in the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes or 2022 Convertible Notes. In particular, the terms of the respective indentures and the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes do not place any restrictions on our or our subsidiaries ability to:

issue securities or otherwise incur additional indebtedness or other obligations, including (1) any indebtedness or other obligations that would be equal in right of payment to the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes or 2022 Convertible Notes, (2) any indebtedness or other obligations that would be secured and therefore rank effectively senior in right of payment to the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes or 2022 Convertible Notes to the extent of the values of the assets securing such debt, (3) indebtedness of ours that is guaranteed by one or more of our subsidiaries and which therefore would rank structurally senior to the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes or 2022 Convertible Notes and (4) securities, indebtedness or other obligations issued or incurred by our subsidiaries that would be senior in right of payment to our equity interests in our subsidiaries and therefore would rank structurally senior in right of payment to the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes or 2022 Convertible Notes with respect to the assets of our subsidiaries, in each case other than an incurrence of indebtedness or other obligation that would cause a violation of Section 18(a)(1)(A) of the 1940 Act as modified by Section 61(a)(1) of the 1940 Act or any successor provisions;

pay distributions on, or purchase or redeem or make any payments in respect of, capital stock or other securities ranking junior in right of payment to the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes or 2022 Convertible Notes, in each case other than distributions, purchases, redemptions or payments that would cause a violation of Section 18(a)(1)(B) of the 1940 Act as modified by Section 61(a)(1) of the 1940 Act or any successor provisions giving effect to any exemptive relief granted to us by the SEC (these provisions generally prohibit us from declaring any cash distributions upon any class of our capital stock, or purchasing any such capital stock if our asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, is below 200% (or 150%, subject to certain approval and disclosure requirements) at the time of the declaration of the distribution or the purchase and after deducting the amount of such distribution or purchase);

sell assets (other than certain limited restrictions on our ability to consolidate, merge or sell all or substantially all of our assets);

enter into transactions with affiliates;

create liens (including liens on the shares of our subsidiaries) or enter into sale and leaseback transactions;

make investments; or

create restrictions on the payment of distributions or other amounts to us from our subsidiaries.

The indenture and the 2024 Notes do not require us to offer to purchase the 2024 Notes in connection with a change of control or any other event.

Furthermore, the terms of the respective indentures and the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes do not protect their respective holders in the event that we experience changes (including significant adverse changes) in our financial condition or results of operations, as they do not require that we or our subsidiaries adhere to any financial tests or ratios or specified levels of net worth, revenues, income, cash flow or liquidity, except as required under the 1940 Act.

Our ability to recapitalize, incur additional debt and take a number of other actions that are not limited by the terms of the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes may have important consequences for their holders, including making it more difficult for us to satisfy our obligations with respect to the 2024 Notes or negatively affecting their trading value.

Certain of our current debt instruments include more protections for their respective holders than the indenture and 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes. In addition, other debt we issue or incur in

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

the future could contain more protections for its holders than the respective indentures and the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes, including additional covenants and events of default. The issuance or incurrence of any such debt with incremental protections could affect the market for and trading levels and prices of the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes.

***An active trading market for the 2024 Notes may not develop or be sustained, which could limit the market price of the 2024 Notes or your ability to sell them.***

Although the 2024 Notes are listed on the NYSE under the symbol HTGX, we cannot provide any assurances that an active trading market will develop or be sustained for the 2024 Notes or that the 2024 Notes will be able to be sold. At various times, the 2024 Notes may trade at a discount from their initial offering price depending on prevailing interest rates, the market for similar securities, our credit ratings, general economic conditions, our financial condition, performance and prospects and other factors. To the extent an active trading market is not sustained, the liquidity and trading price for the 2024 Notes may be harmed.

***If we default on our obligations to pay our other indebtedness, we may not be able to make payments on the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes or 2022 Convertible Notes.***

Any default under the agreements governing our indebtedness, including a default under the Wells Facility, the Union Bank Facility or other indebtedness to which we may be a party that is not waived by the required lenders or holders, and the remedies sought by the holders of such indebtedness could make us unable to pay principal, premium, if any, and interest on any of our indebtedness, including the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes or 2022 Convertible Notes and substantially decrease the market value of the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes. If we are unable to generate sufficient cash flow and are otherwise unable to obtain funds necessary to meet required payments of principal, premium, if any, and interest on our indebtedness, or if we otherwise fail to comply with the various covenants, including financial and operating covenants, in the instruments governing our indebtedness, we could be in default under the terms of the agreements governing such indebtedness. In the event of such default, the holders of such indebtedness could elect to declare all the funds borrowed thereunder to be due and payable, together with accrued and unpaid interest, the lenders under the Wells Facility and the Union Bank Facility or other debt we may incur in the future could elect to terminate their commitments, cease making further loans and institute foreclosure proceedings against our assets, and we could be forced into bankruptcy or liquidation. If our operating performance declines, we may in the future need to seek to obtain waivers from the required lenders under the Wells Facility or Union Bank Facility or other debt that we may incur in the future to avoid being in default. If we breach our covenants under the Wells Facility or Union Bank Facility or other debt and seek a waiver, we may not be able to obtain a waiver from the required lenders or holders. If this occurs, we would be in default under the Wells Facility or Union Bank Facility or other debt, the lenders or holders could exercise their rights as described above, and we could be forced into bankruptcy or liquidation. If we are unable to repay debt, lenders having secured obligations, including the lenders under the Wells Facility and the Union Bank Facility, could proceed against the collateral securing the debt. Because the Wells Facility and the Union Bank Facility have, and any future credit facilities will likely have, customary cross-default provisions, if the indebtedness under the 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes, 2022 Convertible Notes, Wells Facility, Union Bank Facility or under any future credit facility is accelerated, we may be unable to repay or finance the amounts due.

Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

The matters discussed in this prospectus, as well as in future oral and written statements by management of Hercules Capital, Inc. that are forward-looking statements are based on current management expectations that involve substantial risks and uncertainties which could cause actual results to differ materially from the results expressed in, or implied by, these forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements relate to future events or our future financial performance. We generally identify forward-looking statements by terminology such as may, will, should, expects, plans, anticipates, could, intends, target, projects, contemplates, believes, estimates, pr continue or the negative of these terms or other similar expressions. Important assumptions include our ability to originate new investments, achieve certain margins and levels of profitability, the availability of additional capital, and the ability to maintain certain debt to asset ratios. In light of these and other uncertainties, the inclusion of a projection or forward-looking statement in this prospectus should not be regarded as a representation by us that our plans or objectives will be achieved. The forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus include statements as to:

our current and future management structure;

our future operating results;

our business prospects and the prospects of our prospective portfolio companies;

the impact of investments that we expect to make;

our informal relationships with third parties including in the venture capital industry;

the expected market for venture capital investments and our addressable market;

the dependence of our future success on the general economy and its impact on the industries in which we invest;

our ability to access debt markets and equity markets;

the ability of our portfolio companies to achieve their objectives;

our expected financings and investments;

our regulatory structure and tax status;

our ability to operate as a business development company, a SBIC and a RIC;

the adequacy of our cash resources and working capital;

the timing of cash flows, if any, from the operations of our portfolio companies;

the timing, form and amount of any distributions;

the impact of fluctuations in interest rates on our business;

the valuation of any investments in portfolio companies, particularly those having no liquid trading market;  
and

our ability to recover unrealized losses.

For a discussion of factors that could cause our actual results to differ from forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus, please see the discussion under Risk Factors. You should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements. The forward-looking statements made in this prospectus relate only to events as of the date on which the statements are made. We undertake no obligation to update any forward-looking statement to reflect events or circumstances occurring after the date of this prospectus.



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

The following discussion should be read in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and related notes and other financial information appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. In addition to historical information, the following discussion and other parts of this prospectus contain forward-looking information that involves risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated by such forward-looking information due to the factors discussed under Risk Factors and Forward-Looking Statements.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**USE OF PROCEEDS**

We intend to use the net proceeds from selling our securities for funding investments in debt and equity securities in accordance with our investment objectives, to make acquisitions, retiring certain debt obligations and other general corporate purposes. The supplement to this prospectus relating to an offering will more fully identify the use of proceeds from such offering.

We anticipate that substantially all of the net proceeds from any offering of our securities will be used as described above within twelve months, but in no event longer than two years. Pending such uses and investments, we will invest the net proceeds primarily in cash, cash equivalents, U.S. government securities or high-quality debt securities maturing in one year or less from the time of investment. Our ability to achieve our investment objective may be limited to the extent that the net proceeds of any offering, pending full investment, are held in lower yielding short-term instruments.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**PRICE RANGE OF COMMON STOCK AND DISTRIBUTIONS**

Our common stock is traded on the NYSE under the symbol HTGC.

The following table sets forth the range of high and low sales prices of our common stock, the sales price as a percentage of NAV and the distributions declared by us for each fiscal quarter. The stock quotations are interdealer quotations and do not include markups, markdowns or commissions.

	NAV <sup>(1)</sup>	Price Range High	Low	Premium/ Discount of High Sales Price to NAV	Premium/ Discount of Low Sales Price to NAV	Cash Distribution per Share
<b>2016</b>						
First quarter	\$ 9.81	\$ 12.39	\$ 10.03	26.3%	2.2%	\$ 0.310
Second quarter	\$ 9.66	\$ 12.43	\$ 11.74	28.7%	21.6%	\$ 0.310
Third quarter	\$ 9.86	\$ 14.00	\$ 12.42	41.9%	25.9%	\$ 0.310
Fourth quarter	\$ 9.90	\$ 14.25	\$ 12.90	43.9%	30.2%	\$ 0.310
<b>2017</b>						
First quarter	\$ 9.76	\$ 15.43	\$ 14.12	58.1%	44.7%	\$ 0.310
Second quarter	\$ 9.87	\$ 15.56	\$ 12.66	57.6%	28.3%	\$ 0.310
Third quarter	\$ 10.00	\$ 13.50	\$ 12.04	35.0%	20.4%	\$ 0.310
Fourth quarter	\$ 9.96	\$ 13.94	\$ 12.44	39.9%	24.9%	\$ 0.310
<b>2018</b>						
First quarter	*	\$ 13.25	\$ 11.89	*	*	**
Second quarter (through April 6, 2018)	*	\$ 12.21	\$ 11.99	*	*	**

(1) NAV per share is generally determined as of the last day in the relevant quarter and therefore may not reflect the NAV per share on the date of the high and low sales prices. The NAVs shown are based on outstanding shares at the end of each period.

\* Net asset value has not yet been calculated for this period.

\*\* Cash distribution per share has not yet been determined for this period.

The last reported price for our common stock on April 6, 2018 was \$12.11 per share.

Shares of business development companies may trade at a market price that is less than the value of the net assets attributable to those shares. The possibility that our shares of common stock will trade at a discount from NAV or at premiums that are unsustainable over the long term are separate and distinct from the risk that our NAV will decrease. At times, our shares of common stock have traded at a premium to NAV and at times our shares of common stock have traded at a discount to the net assets attributable to those shares. It is not possible to predict whether the shares offered hereby will trade at, above, or below NAV.



**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****Distributions**

The following table summarizes our distributions declared and paid, to be paid or reinvested on all shares, including restricted stock, to date:

<b>Date Declared</b>	<b>Record Date</b>	<b>Payment Date</b>	<b>Amount Per Share</b>
Cumulative distributions declared and paid prior to January 1, 2016			\$ 11.23
February 17, 2016	March 7, 2016	March 14, 2016	0.31
April 27, 2016	May 16, 2016	May 23, 2016	0.31
July 27, 2016	August 15, 2016	August 22, 2016	0.31
October 24, 2016	November 14, 2016	November 21, 2016	0.31
February 16, 2017	March 6, 2017	March 13, 2017	0.31
April 26, 2017	May 15, 2017	May 22, 2017	0.31
July 26, 2017	August 14, 2017	August 21, 2017	0.31
October 25, 2017	November 13, 2017	November 20, 2017	0.31
February 14, 2018	March 5, 2018	March 12, 2018	0.31
			<b>\$ 14.02</b>

On February 14, 2018, the Board of Directors declared a cash distribution of \$0.31 per share to be paid on March 12, 2018 to stockholders of record as of March 5, 2018. This distribution represented our fiftieth consecutive distribution since our IPO, bringing the total cumulative distribution to date to \$14.02 per share.

Our Board of Directors maintains a variable distribution policy with the objective of distributing four quarterly distributions in an amount that approximates 90-100% of our taxable quarterly income or potential annual income for a particular taxable year. In addition, at the end of our taxable year, our Board of Directors may choose to pay an additional special distribution or fifth distribution, so that we may distribute approximately all of our annual taxable income in the taxable year in which it was earned, or may elect to maintain the option to spill over our excess taxable income into the following taxable year as part of any future distribution payments.

Distributions from our taxable income (including gains) to a stockholder generally will be treated as a dividend for U.S. federal income tax purposes to the extent of such stockholder's allocable share of our current or accumulated earnings and profits. Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits would generally be treated first as a return of capital to the extent of a stockholder's tax basis in our shares, and any remaining distributions would be treated as a capital gain. The determination of the tax attributes of our distributions is made annually as of the end of our taxable year based upon our taxable income for the full taxable year and distributions paid for the full taxable year. Of the distributions declared during the fiscal years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, 100% were distributions derived from our current and accumulated earnings and profits. There can be no certainty to stockholders that this determination is representative of the tax attributes of our 2018 distributions to stockholders.

We maintain an "opt out" dividend reinvestment plan that provides for reinvestment of our distribution on behalf of our stockholders, unless a stockholder elects to receive cash. As a result, if our Board of Directors authorizes, and we

declare a cash distribution, then our stockholders who have not opted out of our dividend reinvestment plan will have their cash distribution automatically reinvested in additional shares of our common stock, rather than receiving the cash distributions.

Shortly after the close of each calendar year information identifying the source of the distribution (i.e., paid from ordinary income, paid from net capital gains on the sale of securities, and/or a return of paid-in-capital surplus which is a nontaxable distribution, if any) will be provided to the IRS and our stockholders subject to information reporting. To the extent our taxable earnings fall below the total amount of our distributions for any taxable year, a portion of those distributions may be deemed a tax return of capital to our stockholders.

We expect to qualify to be subject to tax as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code. In order to be subject to tax as a RIC, we are required to satisfy certain annual gross income and quarterly asset composition tests, as well

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

as make distributions to our stockholders each taxable year treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes of an amount at least equal to 90% of the sum of our investment company taxable income, determined without regard to any deduction for dividends paid, plus our net tax-exempt income, if any. Upon being eligible to be subject to tax as a RIC, we would be entitled to deduct such distributions we pay to our stockholders in determining the overall components of our taxable income. Components of our taxable income include our taxable interest, dividend and fee income, reduced by certain deductions, as well as taxable net realized securities gains. Taxable income generally differs from net income for financial reporting purposes due to temporary and permanent differences in the recognition of income and expenses and generally excludes net unrealized appreciation or depreciation as such gains or losses are not included in taxable income until they are realized. In connection with maintaining our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC, among other things, we have made and intend to continue to make the requisite distributions to our stockholders each taxable year, which generally should relieve us from corporate-level U.S. federal income taxes.

As a RIC, we will be subject to a 4% nondeductible U.S. federal excise tax on certain undistributed income and gains unless we make distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes in a timely manner to our stockholders in respect of each calendar year of an amount generally at least equal to the sum of (1) 98% of our ordinary income for each calendar year, (2) 98.2% of our capital gain net income for the 1-year period ending October 31 in that calendar year and (3) any income realized, but not distributed, in the preceding years (the Excise Tax Avoidance Requirement ). We will not be subject to this excise tax on any amount on which we incurred U.S. federal corporate income tax (such as the tax imposed on a RIC's retained net capital gains).

Depending on the level of taxable income earned in a taxable year, we may choose to carry over taxable income in excess of current taxable year distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes from such taxable income into the next taxable year and incur a 4% excise tax on such taxable income, as required. The maximum amount of excess taxable income that may be carried over for distribution in the next taxable year under the Code is the total amount of distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes paid in the following taxable year, subject to certain declaration and payment guidelines. To the extent we choose to carry over taxable income into the next taxable year, distributions declared and paid by us in a taxable year may differ from our taxable income for that taxable year as such distributions may include the distribution of current taxable year taxable income, the distribution of prior taxable year taxable income carried over into and distributed in the current taxable year, or returns of capital.

We can offer no assurance that we will achieve results that will permit the payment of any cash distributions and, if we issue senior securities, we will be prohibited from making distributions if doing so causes us to fail to maintain the asset coverage ratios stipulated by the 1940 Act or if distributions are limited by the terms of any of our borrowings. See Regulation. Our ability to make distributions will be limited by the asset coverage requirements under the 1940 Act.

We intend to distribute 100% of our spillover earnings from ordinary income for the year ended December 31, 2017 to our stockholders during 2018.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES**

The following contains our ratio of earnings to fixed charges for the periods indicated, computed as set forth below. You should read these ratios of earnings to fixed charges in connection with our consolidated financial statements, including the notes to those statements, included in this prospectus.

	<b>For the year ended December 31, 2017</b>	<b>For the year ended December 31, 2016</b>	<b>For the year ended December 31, 2015</b>	<b>For the year ended December 31, 2014</b>	<b>For the year ended December 31, 2013</b>	<b>For the year ended December 31, 2012</b>
Earnings to Fixed Charges <sup>(1)</sup>	2.70	2.85	2.16	3.10	3.83	2.97

For purposes of computing the ratios of earnings to fixed charges, earnings represent net increase in stockholders equity resulting from operations plus fixed charges. Fixed charges include interest and credit facility fees expense and amortization of debt issuance costs.

(1) Earnings include net realized and unrealized gains or losses. Net realized and unrealized gains or losses can vary substantially from period to period.



Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF  
FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS**

*The following discussion should be read in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and related notes and other financial information appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. In addition to historical information, the following discussion and other parts of this prospectus contain forward-looking information that involves risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated by such forward-looking information due to the factors discussed under Risk Factors and Forward-Looking Statements appearing elsewhere herein.*

**Overview**

We are a specialty finance company focused on providing senior secured loans to high-growth, innovative venture capital-backed companies in a variety of technology, life sciences, and sustainable and renewable technology industries. We source our investments through our principal office located in Palo Alto, CA, as well as through our additional offices in Boston, MA, New York, NY, Washington, DC, Hartford, CT, and San Diego, CA.

Our goal is to be the leading structured debt financing provider for venture capital-backed companies in technology-related industries requiring sophisticated and customized financing solutions. Our strategy is to evaluate and invest in a broad range of technology-related industries including technology, drug discovery and development, biotechnology, life sciences, healthcare, and sustainable and renewable technology and to offer a full suite of growth capital products. We invest primarily in structured debt with warrants and, to a lesser extent, in senior debt and equity investments. We invest primarily in private companies but also have investments in public companies.

We use the term structured debt with warrants to refer to any debt investment, such as a senior or subordinated secured loan, that is coupled with an equity component, including warrants, options or other rights to purchase common or preferred stock. Our structured debt with warrants investments typically are secured by some or all of the assets of the portfolio company.

Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio's total return by generating current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our warrant and equity-related investments. Our primary business objectives are to increase our net income, net operating income and NAV by investing in structured debt with warrants and equity of venture capital-backed companies in technology-related industries with attractive current yields and the potential for equity appreciation and realized gains. Our equity ownership in our portfolio companies may exceed 25% of the voting securities of such companies, which represents a controlling interest under the 1940 Act. In some cases, we receive the right to make additional equity investments in our portfolio companies in connection with future equity financing rounds. Capital that we provide directly to venture capital-backed companies in technology-related industries is generally used for growth and general working capital purposes as well as in select cases for acquisitions or recapitalizations.

We also make investments in qualifying small businesses through our two wholly-owned SBICs. Our SBIC subsidiaries, HT II and HT III, hold approximately \$111.8 million and \$284.0 million in assets, respectively, and accounted for approximately 5.4% and 13.8% of our total assets, respectively, prior to consolidation at December 31, 2017. In aggregate, at December 31, 2017, with our net investment of \$118.5 million, HT II and HT III have the capacity to issue a total of \$190.2 million of SBA-guaranteed debentures, subject to SBA approval. At December 31, 2017, we have issued \$190.2 million in SBA-guaranteed debentures in our SBIC subsidiaries.

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

We have qualified as and have elected to be treated for tax purposes as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code. Pursuant to this election, we generally will not be subject to corporate-level taxes on any income and gains

---

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

that we distribute as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to our stockholders. However, our qualification and election to be treated as a RIC requires that we comply with provisions contained in Subchapter M of the Code. For example, as a RIC we must earn 90% or more of our gross income during each taxable year from qualified sources, typically referred to as good income, as well as satisfy certain quarterly asset diversification and annual income distribution requirements.

We are an internally managed, non-diversified, closed-end investment company that has elected to be regulated as a business development company under the 1940 Act. As a business development company, we are required to comply with certain regulatory requirements. For instance, we generally have to invest at least 70% of our total assets in qualifying assets, which includes securities of private U.S. companies, cash, cash equivalents and high-quality debt investments that mature in one year or less.

Our portfolio is comprised of, and we anticipate that our portfolio will continue to be comprised of, investments primarily in technology related companies at various stages of their development. Consistent with requirements under the 1940 Act, we invest primarily in United-States based companies and to a lesser extent in foreign companies.

We regularly engage in discussions with third parties with respect to various potential transactions. We may acquire an investment or a portfolio of investments or an entire company or sell a portion of our portfolio on an opportunistic basis. We, our subsidiaries or our affiliates may also agree to manage certain other funds that invest in debt, equity or provide other financing or services to companies in a variety of industries for which we may earn management or other fees for our services. We may also invest in the equity of these funds, along with other third parties, from which we would seek to earn a return and/or future incentive allocations. Some of these transactions could be material to our business. Consummation of any such transaction will be subject to completion of due diligence, finalization of key business and financial terms (including price) and negotiation of final definitive documentation as well as a number of other factors and conditions including, without limitation, the approval of our Board of Directors and required regulatory or third party consents and, in certain cases, the approval of our stockholders. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that any such transaction would be consummated. Any of these transactions or funds may require significant management resources either during the transaction phase or on an ongoing basis depending on the terms of the transaction.

**Portfolio and Investment Activity**

The total fair value of our investment portfolio was approximately \$1.5 billion at December 31, 2017 as compared to approximately \$1.4 billion at December 31, 2016. The fair value of our debt investment portfolio at December 31, 2017 was approximately \$1.4 billion, compared to a fair value of approximately \$1.3 billion at December 31, 2016. The fair value of the equity portfolio at December 31, 2017 was approximately \$89.4 million, compared to a fair value of approximately \$67.6 million at December 31, 2016. The fair value of the warrant portfolio at December 31, 2017 was approximately \$36.8 million, compared to a fair value of approximately \$27.5 million at December 31, 2016.

*Portfolio Activity*

Our investments in portfolio companies take a variety of forms, including unfunded contractual commitments and funded investments. From time to time, unfunded contractual commitments depend upon a portfolio company reaching certain milestones before the debt commitment is available to the portfolio company, which is expected to affect our funding levels. These commitments are subject to the same underwriting and ongoing portfolio maintenance as the on-balance sheet financial instruments that we hold. Debt commitments generally fund over the two succeeding

quarters from close. Not all debt commitments represent future cash requirements. Similarly, unfunded contractual commitments may expire without being drawn and thus do not represent future cash requirements.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

Prior to entering into a contractual commitment, we generally issue a non-binding term sheet to a prospective portfolio company. Non-binding term sheets are subject to completion of our due diligence and final investment committee approval process, as well as the negotiation of definitive documentation with the prospective portfolio companies. These non-binding term sheets generally convert to contractual commitments in approximately 90 days from signing. Not all non-binding term sheets are expected to close and do not necessarily represent future cash requirements.

Our portfolio activity for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 was comprised of the following:

(in millions)	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
<b>Debt Commitments<sup>(1)</sup></b>		
New portfolio company	\$ 773.2	\$ 624.0
Existing portfolio company	98.8	171.8
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 872.0</b>	<b>\$ 795.8</b>
<b>Funded and Restructured Debt Investments<sup>(2)</sup></b>		
New portfolio company	\$ 578.9	\$ 479.0
Existing portfolio company	175.9	181.5
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 754.8</b>	<b>\$ 660.5</b>
<b>Funded Equity Investments</b>		
New portfolio company	\$ 7.1	\$ 17.1
Existing portfolio company	2.9	3.1
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 10.0</b>	<b>\$ 20.2</b>
<b>Unfunded Contractual Commitments<sup>(3)</sup></b>		
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 73.6</b>	<b>\$ 59.7</b>
<b>Non-Binding Term Sheets</b>		
New portfolio company	\$ 122.0	\$ 55.0
Existing portfolio company		
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 122.0</b>	<b>\$ 55.0</b>

(1) Includes restructured loans and renewals in addition to new commitments.

(2) Funded amounts include borrowings on revolving facilities.

(3) Amount represents unfunded commitments, including undrawn revolving facilities, which are available at the request of the portfolio company. Amount excludes unfunded commitments which are unavailable due to the borrower having not met certain milestones.

We receive principal payments on our debt investment portfolio based on scheduled amortization of the outstanding balances. In addition, we receive principal repayments for some of our loans prior to their scheduled maturity date. The frequency or volume of these early principal repayments may fluctuate significantly from period to period. During the year ended December 31, 2017, we received approximately \$625.1 million in aggregate principal repayments. Of the approximately \$625.1 million of aggregate principal repayments, approximately \$119.5 million were scheduled principal payments, and approximately \$505.6 million were early principal repayments related to 47 portfolio companies. Of the approximately \$505.6 million early principal repayments, approximately \$74.2 million were early repayments due to merger and acquisition transactions for seven portfolio companies.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

Total portfolio investment activity (inclusive of unearned income and excluding activity related to taxes payable and escrow receivables) as of and for each of the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 was as follows:

(in millions)	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
<b>Beginning portfolio</b>	\$ 1,423.9	\$ 1,200.6
New fundings and restructures	764.8	680.7
Warrants not related to current period fundings	0.6	0.6
Principal payments received on investments	(119.5)	(111.2)
Early payoffs	(505.6)	(324.0)
Accretion of loan discounts and paid-in-kind principal	36.5	43.6
Net acceleration of loan discounts and loan fees due to early payoff or restructure	(8.1)	(6.3)
New loan fees	(9.8)	(10.1)
Warrants converted to equity		0.3
Sale of investments	(11.0)	(4.4)
Loss on investments due to write offs	(39.6)	(10.0)
Net change in unrealized depreciation	10.0	(35.9)
<b>Ending portfolio</b>	<b>\$ 1,542.2</b>	<b>\$ 1,423.9</b>

The following table shows the fair value of our investment portfolio by asset class as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016:

(in thousands)	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016	
	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio
Senior Secured Debt with Warrants	\$ 880,115	57.1%	\$ 1,078,779	75.7%
Senior Secured Debt	572,738	37.1%	277,509	19.5%
Preferred Stock	40,683	2.6%	39,418	2.8%
Common Stock	48,678	3.2%	28,236	2.0%
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 1,542,214</b>	<b>100.0%</b>	<b>\$ 1,423,942</b>	<b>100.0%</b>

The increase in senior secured debt and the decrease in senior secured debt with warrants during the period is primarily due to an increase in new debt investments that do not include detachable equity enhancement features.

A summary of our investment portfolio at value by geographic location as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 is as follows:

December 31, 2017

December 31, 2016

<b>(in thousands)</b>	<b>Investments at Fair Value</b>	<b>Percentage of Total Portfolio</b>	<b>Investments at Fair Value</b>	<b>Percentage of Total Portfolio</b>
United States	\$ 1,404,235	91.1%	\$ 1,362,223	95.6%
United Kingdom	91,105	5.9%	18,395	1.3%
Netherlands	20,783	1.3%	20,089	1.4%
Cayman Islands	14,954	1.0%		0.0%
Switzerland	10,581	0.7%	12,377	0.9%
Canada	556	0.0%	8,095	0.6%
Israel		0.0%	2,763	0.2%
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 1,542,214</b>	<b>100.0%</b>	<b>\$ 1,423,942</b>	<b>100.0%</b>



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

As of December 31, 2017, we held warrants or equity positions in two companies that have filed registration statements on Form S-1 with the SEC in contemplation of potential IPOs. Both companies filed confidentially under the JOBS Act. There can be no assurance that companies that have yet to complete their IPO will do so in a timely manner or at all.

*Changes in Portfolio*

We generate revenue in the form of interest income, primarily from our investments in debt securities and commitment and facility fees. Interest income is recognized in accordance with the contractual terms of the loan agreement to the extent that such amounts are expected to be collected. Fees generated in connection with our debt investments are recognized over the life of the loan or, in some cases, recognized as earned. In addition, we generate revenue in the form of capital gains, if any, on warrants or other equity-related securities that we acquire from our portfolio companies. Our investments generally range from \$12.0 million to \$40.0 million, although we may make investments in amounts above or below that range. As of December 31, 2017, our debt investments have a term of between two and seven years and typically bear interest at a rate ranging from approximately 4.6% to approximately 13.0%. In addition to the cash yields received on our debt investments, in some instances, our debt investments may also include any of the following: exit fees, balloon payment fees, commitment fees, success fees, PIK provisions or prepayment fees which may be required to be included in income prior to receipt.

Interest on debt securities is generally payable monthly, with amortization of principal typically occurring over the term of the investment. In addition, our loans may include an interest-only period ranging from three to eighteen months or longer. In limited instances in which we choose to defer amortization of the loan for a period of time from the date of the initial investment, the principal amount of the debt securities and any accrued but unpaid interest become due at the maturity date.

Loan origination and commitment fees received in full at the inception of a loan are deferred and amortized into fee income as an enhancement to the related loan's yield over the contractual life of the loan. We recognize nonrecurring fees amortized over the remaining term of the loan commencing in the quarter relating to specific loan modifications. We had approximately \$33.3 million of unamortized fees at December 31, 2017, of which approximately \$29.3 million was included as an offset to the cost basis of our current debt investments and approximately \$4.0 million was deferred contingent upon the occurrence of a funding or milestone. At December 31, 2016, we had approximately \$38.2 million of unamortized fees, of which approximately \$35.8 million was included as an offset to the cost basis of our current debt investments and approximately \$2.4 million was deferred contingent upon the occurrence of a funding or milestone.

Loan exit fees to be paid at the termination of the loan are accreted into interest income over the contractual life of the loan. At December 31, 2017, we had approximately \$27.5 million in exit fees receivable, of which approximately \$23.9 million was included as a component of the cost basis of our current debt investments and approximately \$3.6 million was a deferred receivable related to expired commitments. At December 31, 2016, we had approximately \$32.8 million in exit fees receivable, of which approximately \$30.3 million was included as a component of the cost basis of our current debt investments and approximately \$2.5 million was a deferred receivable related to expired commitments.

We have debt investments in our portfolio that contain a PIK provision. The PIK interest, computed at the contractual rate specified in each loan agreement, is recorded as interest income and added to the principal balance of the loan on specified capitalization dates. To maintain our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC, this non-cash source of income

must be distributed to stockholders with other sources of income in the form of dividend distributions even though we have not yet collected the cash. Amounts necessary to pay these distributions may come from available cash or the liquidation of certain investments. We recorded approximately \$10.0 million and \$7.8 million in PIK income in the years ended December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

The core yield on our debt investments, which excludes the effects of fee and income accelerations attributed to early payoffs, restructuring, loan modifications and other one-time events and includes income from expired commitments, was 12.4% and 13.1% during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The effective yield on our debt investments, which includes the effects of fee and income accelerations attributed to early payoffs, restructuring, loan modifications and other one-time events, was 14.2% and 14.1% for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The effective yield is derived by dividing total investment income by the weighted average earning investment portfolio assets outstanding during the year, excluding non-interest earning assets such as warrants and equity investments. Both the core yield and effective yield may be higher than what our common stockholders may realize as the core yield and effective yield do not reflect our expenses and any sales load paid by our common stockholders.

The total return for our investors was approximately 1.5% and 26.9% during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The total return equals the change in the ending market value over the beginning of the period price per share plus distributions paid per share during the period, divided by the beginning price assuming the distribution is reinvested on the date of the distribution. The total return does not reflect any sales load that must be paid by investors. See Note 9 Financial Highlights included in the notes to our consolidated financial statements appearing elsewhere in this prospectus.

*Portfolio Composition*

Our portfolio companies are primarily privately held companies and public companies which are active in the drug discovery & development, software, internet consumer & business services, media/content/info, sustainable and renewable technology, medical devices & equipment, drug delivery, healthcare services, specialty pharmaceuticals, information services, consumer & business products, surgical devices, semiconductors, electronics & computer hardware, communications & networking, biotechnology tools and diagnostic industry sectors. These sectors are characterized by high margins, high growth rates, consolidation and product and market extension opportunities. Value for companies in these sectors is often vested in intangible assets and intellectual property.

As of December 31, 2017, approximately 74.9% of the fair value of our portfolio was composed of investments in five industries: 23.9% was composed of investments in the drug discovery and development industry, 23.4% was composed of investments in the software industry, 10.0% was composed of investments in the internet consumer and business services industry, 9.9% was composed of investments in the media/content/info industry and 7.7% was composed of investments in the sustainable and renewable technology industry.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

The following table shows the fair value of our portfolio by industry sector at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016:

(in thousands)	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016	
	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio	Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio
Drug Discovery & Development	\$ 369,173	23.9%	\$ 422,550	29.7%
Software	360,123	23.4%	219,559	15.4%
Internet Consumer & Business Services	154,909	10.0%	97,047	6.8%
Media/Content/Info	152,998	9.9%	137,567	9.7%
Sustainable and Renewable Technology	118,432	7.7%	154,406	10.9%
Medical Devices & Equipment	94,595	6.1%	107,695	7.6%
Drug Delivery	91,214	5.9%	109,834	7.7%
Healthcare Services, Other	72,337	4.7%	30,200	2.1%
Specialty Pharmaceuticals	37,501	2.4%	38,944	2.7%
Information Services	24,618	1.6%	6,091	0.4%
Consumer & Business Products	19,792	1.3%	42,713	3.0%
Surgical Devices	13,161	0.9%	12,553	0.9%
Semiconductors	10,406	0.7%	11,326	0.8%
Electronics & Computer Hardware	9,982	0.6%	7,664	0.5%
Communications & Networking	6,649	0.4%	18,019	1.3%
Biotechnology Tools	5,604	0.4%	7,200	0.5%
Diagnostic	720	0.1%	574	0.0%
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 1,542,214</b>	<b>100.0%</b>	<b>\$ 1,423,942</b>	<b>100.0%</b>

Industry and sector concentrations vary as new loans are recorded and loans pay off. Loan revenue, consisting of interest, fees, and recognition of gains on equity and warrants or other equity-related interests, can fluctuate materially when a loan is paid off or a warrant or equity interest is sold. Revenue recognition in any given year can be highly concentrated in several portfolio companies.

For the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, our ten largest portfolio companies represented approximately 34.6% and 34.0% of the total fair value of our investments in portfolio companies, respectively. At December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, we had seven investments that represented 5% or more of our net assets. At December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, we had nine and seven equity investments representing approximately 67.1% and 54.7%, respectively, of the total fair value of our equity investments, and each represented 5% or more of the total fair value of our equity investments. No single portfolio investment represents more than 10% of the fair value of our total investments as of December 31, 2017 and 2016.

As of December 31, 2017, approximately 96.4% of the debt investment portfolio was priced at floating interest rates or floating interest rates with a Prime or LIBOR-based interest rate floor. As a result, we believe we are well positioned to benefit should market interest rates continue to rise.

## Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

As of December 31, 2017, 79.9% of our debt investments were in a senior secured first lien position, 19.8% were secured by a senior second priority security interest in all of the portfolio company's assets, other than intellectual property, and the remaining 0.3% were unsecured as a result of the terms of the acquisition of one of our portfolio companies during the period. In the majority of cases, we collateralize our investments by obtaining a first priority security interest in a portfolio company's assets, which may include its intellectual property. In other cases, we may obtain a negative pledge covering a company's intellectual property.

At December 31, 2017, of the approximately 79.9% of our debt investments in a senior secured first lien position, 45.1% were secured by a first priority security in all of the assets of the portfolio company, including its

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

intellectual property and 34.8% were secured by a first priority security in all of the assets of the portfolio company and the portfolio company was prohibited from pledging or encumbering its intellectual property, or subject to a negative pledge. At December 31, 2017, we had no equipment only liens on material investments in our portfolio companies.

Our investments in senior secured debt with warrants have detachable equity enhancement features, typically in the form of warrants or other equity-related securities designed to provide us with an opportunity for capital appreciation. These features are treated as OID and are accreted into interest income over the term of the loan as a yield enhancement. Our warrant coverage generally ranges from 3% to 20% of the principal amount invested in a portfolio company, with a strike price generally equal to the most recent equity financing round. As of December 31, 2017, we held warrants in 137 portfolio companies, with a fair value of approximately \$36.8 million. The fair value of our warrant portfolio increased by approximately \$9.3 million, as compared to a fair value of \$27.5 million at December 31, 2016, primarily related to the addition of warrants in 20 new and 8 existing portfolio companies during the year.

Our existing warrant holdings would require us to invest approximately \$87.6 million to exercise such warrants as of December 31, 2017. Warrants may appreciate or depreciate in value depending largely upon the underlying portfolio company's performance and overall market conditions. Of the warrants that we have monetized since inception, we have realized multiples in the range of approximately 1.02x to 29.06x based on the historical rate of return on our investments. However, our warrants may not appreciate in value and, in fact, may decline in value. Accordingly, we may experience losses from our warrant portfolio.

As required by the 1940 Act, we classify our investments by level of control. Control investments are defined in the 1940 Act as investments in those companies that we are deemed to control, which, in general, includes a company in which we own 25% or more of the voting securities of such company or have greater than 50% representation on its board. Affiliate investments are investments in those companies that are affiliated companies of ours, as defined in the 1940 Act, which are not control investments. We are deemed to be an affiliate of a company in which we have invested if we own 5% or more, but generally less than 25%, of the voting securities of such company.

Non-control/non-affiliate investments are investments that are neither control investments nor affiliate investments.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

The following table summarizes our realized gain and loss and changes in our unrealized appreciation and depreciation on control and affiliate investments for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and affiliate investments for the year ended December 2015. We did not hold any control investments at December 31, 2015.

(in thousands)

Portfolio Company	Type	Fair Value at December 31, 2017	Investment Income	Year Ended December 31, 2017		Realized Gain/(Loss)
				Net Change in Unrealized Appreciation/ (Depreciation)	Reversal of Unrealized Appreciation/ (Depreciation) <sup>(1)</sup>	
<b>Control Investments</b>						
Achilles Technology Management Co II, Inc.	Control	\$ 242	\$ 155	\$ (2,254)	\$	\$ (486)
HercGamma, Inc.	Control			(523)	523	(487)
SkyCross, Inc.	Control			1,842	15,452	(15,452)
Tectura Corporation	Control	19,219	1,827	(1,079)	51	(51)
Second Time Around (Simplify Holdings, LLC)	Control			140		
<b>Total Control Investments</b>		\$ 19,461	\$ 1,982	\$ (1,874)	\$ 16,026	\$ (16,476)
<b>Affiliate Investments</b>						
Optiscan BioMedical, Corp.	Affiliate	\$ 6,291	\$	\$ 1,419	\$	\$
Stion Corporation	Affiliate		2			
Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC (p.k.a. Sungevity, Inc.)	Affiliate	25,004	842	(50,102)		
<b>Total Affiliate Investments</b>		\$ 31,295	\$ 844	\$ (48,683)	\$	\$
<b>Total Control &amp; Affiliate Investments</b>		\$ 50,756	\$ 2,826	\$ (50,557)	\$ 16,026	\$ (16,476)

(in thousands)

Portfolio Company	Type	Fair Value at December 31, 2016	Investment Income	Year Ended December 31, 2016		Realized Gain/(Loss)
				Net Change in Unrealized Appreciation/ (Depreciation)	Reversal of Unrealized Appreciation/ (Depreciation)	
<b>Control Investments</b>						
SkyCross, Inc.	Control	\$	\$	\$ (3,421)	\$	\$
Achilles Technology Management Co II, Inc.	Control	4,700	84	(604)		

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

<b>Total Control Investments</b>		\$	4,700	\$	84	\$	(4,025)	\$		\$
<b>Affiliate Investments</b>										
Optiscan BioMedical, Corp.	Affiliate	\$	4,699	\$	12	\$	(3,409)	\$		\$
Stion Corporation	Affiliate		333		148		539		648	
<b>Total Affiliate Investments</b>		\$	5,032	\$	160	\$	(2,870)	\$	648	\$
<b>Total Control &amp; Affiliate Investments</b>		\$	9,732	\$	244	\$	(6,895)	\$	648	\$

(in thousands)

Portfolio Company	Type	Fair Value at December 31, 2015	Year Ended December 31, 2015			
			Investment Income (Depreciation)	Net Change in Unrealized Appreciation	Reversal of Unrealized Appreciation	Realized Gain/(Loss)
Optiscan BioMedical, Corp.	Affiliate	\$ 6,973	\$	\$	901	\$
Stion Corporation	Affiliate	1,013	348	206		
<b>Total</b>		\$ 7,986	\$ 348	\$	1,107	\$

(1) Represents reversals of prior period net unrealized depreciation upon being realized as a loss due to write off or reversals of prior period collateral based impairments.



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

In July 2017, we acquired the primary assets of Second Time Around (Simplify Holdings, LLC) as part of an article 9 consensual foreclosure and public auction. These assets represent the remaining possible recovery on our debt and as such this investment became classified as a control investment as of September 30, 2017.

In June 2017, we acquired 100% ownership of the equity in HercGamma, Inc. and classified it as a control investment in accordance with the requirements of the 1940 Act. In June 2017, HercGamma, Inc. acquired the assets of a medical device company that develops advanced digital imaging to detect breast cancer, as part of an article 9 consensual foreclosure and public auction for consideration with an estimated fair value of \$1.2 million. In September 2017, we reduced the cost basis of our equity position by \$646,000 with net proceeds from an asset sale and by \$36,000 from a final distribution in October 2017. Subsequent to the distributions, the our investments were deemed wholly worthless and written off for a realized loss.

In April 2017, our investment in Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC (p.k.a. Sungevity, Inc.) became classified as a control investment as a result of obtaining more than 25% of the portfolio company's voting securities. In April 2017, under Section 363 of the Bankruptcy Code, Sungevity, Inc. entered into a \$50.0 million asset purchase agreement and DIP financing facility with a group of investors, led by Northern Pacific Group and including us. On April 7, 2017, the U.S. Bankruptcy Court approved the DIP financing facility and on April 17, the U.S. Bankruptcy Court approved the asset purchase agreement. On April 26, 2017, Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC, a new company backed by the investment group, announced that it had acquired certain assets of Sungevity, Inc. as part of the bankruptcy court-approved sale. As a result, the cost basis of our debt investment in Sungevity, Inc. was converted to an equity position in Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC and our warrant and equity positions in Sungevity, Inc. were written off for a realized loss.

In August 2017, our ownership in Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC was diluted below 25% as a result of additional equity contributions by other investors to fund the acquisition of Horizon Solar Power, Inc. by Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC. We made a \$15.0 million debt investment to fund the acquisition. Accordingly, our equity and new debt investment in Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC became classified as affiliate investments as of September 30, 2017.

In January 2017, our investment in Tectura Corporation became classified as a control investment as a result of obtaining more than 50% representation on the portfolio company's board. In March 2017, our warrants in Tectura Corporation expired and were written off for a realized loss.

In June 2016, our investments in SkyCross, Inc. became classified as a control investment as a result of obtaining more than 50% representation on the portfolio company's board. In September 2017, our investments were deemed wholly worthless and written off for a realized loss.

In June 2016, we also acquired 100% ownership of the equity of Achilles Technology Management Co II, Inc. and classified it as a control investment in accordance with the requirements of the 1940 Act. In June 2016, Achilles Technology Management Co II, Inc. acquired the assets of a global antenna company that produces radio frequency system solutions as part of an article 9 consensual foreclosure and public auction for total consideration in the amount of \$4.0 million. In September and November 2016, we made a \$1.0 million and \$250,000 debt investment, respectively, in Achilles Technology Management II, Inc. to provide working capital under the terms of a loan servicing agreement

In August 2017, our debt investment in Achilles Technology Management II, Inc. was fully repaid by net proceeds from sales of the portfolio company's assets. In addition, our equity investment in Achilles Technology Management

II, Inc. was reduced by \$900,000 in lieu of a success fee on the repayment of our debt investment. The remaining equity investment in Achilles Technology Management II, Inc. is carried on the consolidated statement of assets and liabilities at fair value.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements***Portfolio Grading*

We use an investment grading system, which grades each debt investment on a scale of 1 to 5, to characterize and monitor our expected level of risk on the debt investments in our portfolio with 1 being the highest quality. See Business Investment Process Loan and Compliance Administration. The following table shows the distribution of our outstanding debt investments on the 1 to 5 investment grading scale at fair value as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively:

(in thousands)	December 31, 2017			December 31, 2016		
	Number of Companies	Debt Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio	Number of Companies	Debt Investments at Fair Value	Percentage of Total Portfolio
1	12	\$ 345,191	24.4%	15	\$ 275,832	20.8%
2	32	583,017	41.2%	32	590,547	44.4%
3	32	443,775	31.3%	25	329,393	24.8%
4	4	41,744	2.9%	8	58,874	4.4%
5	5	2,257	0.2%	8	74,157	5.6%
	85	\$ 1,415,984	100.0%	88	\$ 1,328,803	100.0%

As of December 31, 2017, our debt investments had a weighted average investment grading of 2.17, as compared to 2.41 at December 31, 2016. Our policy is to lower the grading on our portfolio companies as they approach the point in time when they will require additional equity capital. Additionally, we may downgrade our portfolio companies if they are not meeting our financing criteria or are underperforming relative to their respective business plans. Various companies in our portfolio will require additional funding in the near term or have not met their business plans and therefore have been downgraded until their funding is complete or their operations improve.

The improvement in weighted average investment grading at December 31, 2017 from December 31, 2016 is primarily due to the upgrade of Machine Zone, Inc. from a credit rating 2 to a credit rating 1 as well as the conversion of our debt investment in Sungevity Inc. to an equity position in Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC during the period. This position was rated 5 and represented \$44.6 million of the rated 5 debt investment fair value at December 31, 2016. In addition, four positions that were rated 5 as of December 31, 2016 were sold or liquidated during the period.

At December 31, 2017, we had five debt investments on non-accrual with a cumulative investment cost and fair value of approximately \$14.8 million and \$340,000, respectively. At December 31, 2016, we had five debt investments on non-accrual with a cumulative investment cost and fair value of approximately \$43.9 million and \$6.2 million, respectively. The decrease in the cumulative cost and fair value of debt investments on non-accrual between December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 is the result of the liquidation of two debt investments that were on non-accrual at December 31, 2016, offset by placing two new debt investments on non-accrual status during the period. For the year ended December 31, 2017, we recognized a realized loss of approximately \$24.2 million on the write off of two debt investments that were on non-accrual at December 31, 2016 and one investment placed on non-accrual and written-off during 2017.

**Results of Operations**

**Comparison of periods ended December 31, 2017 and 2016**

*Investment Income*

*Interest Income*

Total investment income for the year ended December 31, 2017 was approximately \$190.9 million as compared to approximately \$175.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2016.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

Interest income for the year ended December 31, 2017 totaled approximately \$172.2 million as compared to approximately \$158.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase in interest income for the year ended December 31, 2017 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2016 is primarily attributable to debt investment portfolio growth and an increase in the weighted average principal outstanding between the periods, the acceleration of income due to early repayments and other one-time events during the period and changes in various interest rates, including LIBOR and Prime rates, to the extent our debt investments include variable interest rates. As of December 31, 2017, approximately, 96.4% of the loans in our portfolio had variable rates based on floating Prime or LIBOR rates with a floor.

Of the \$172.2 million in interest income for the year ended December 31, 2017, approximately \$160.3 million represents recurring income from the contractual servicing of our loan portfolio and approximately \$11.9 million represents income related to the acceleration of income due to early loan repayments and other one-time events during the period. Income from the contractual servicing of our loan portfolio and the acceleration of interest income due to early loan repayments and other one-time events represented \$152.1 million and \$6.6 million, respectively, of the \$158.7 million interest income for the year ended December 31, 2016.

The following table shows the PIK-related activity, for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, at cost:

<b>(in thousands)</b>	<b>Year Ended December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
<b>Beginning PIK interest receivable balance</b>	\$ 9,930	\$ 5,149
PIK interest income during the period	9,960	7,825
PIK accrued (capitalized) to principal but not recorded as income during the period	129	(2,146)
Payments received from PIK loans	(2,349)	(632)
Realized loss	(2,183)	(266)
<b>Ending PIK interest receivable balance</b>	<b>\$ 15,487</b>	<b>\$ 9,930</b>

The increase in PIK interest income during the year ended December 31, 2017 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2016 is due to overall portfolio growth, or more specifically, an increase in the weighted average principal outstanding for loans which bear PIK interest. PIK receivable represents approximately 1% of total debt investments as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively.

*Fee Income*

Income from commitment, facility and loan related fees for the year ended December 31, 2017 totaled approximately \$18.7 million as compared to approximately \$16.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase in fee income is primarily attributable to an increase in the acceleration of unamortized fees due to early repayments and one-time fees during the period.

Of the \$18.7 million in income from commitment, facility and loan related fees for the year ended December 31, 2017, approximately \$6.4 million represents income from recurring fee amortization and approximately \$12.3 million

represents income related to the acceleration of unamortized fees during the period. Income from recurring fee amortization and the acceleration of unamortized fees due to early loan repayments represented \$9.5 million and \$6.8 million, respectively, of the \$16.3 million income for the year ended December 31, 2016.

In certain investment transactions, we may earn income from advisory services; however, we had no income from advisory services in the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Operating Expenses***

Our operating expenses are comprised of interest and fees on our borrowings, general and administrative expenses and employee compensation and benefits. Operating expenses totaled approximately \$94.4 million and \$82.7 million during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

***Interest and Fees on our Borrowings***

Interest and fees on our borrowings totaled approximately \$46.6 million and \$37.1 million for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Interest and fee expense for the year ended December 31, 2017 as compared to December 31, 2016 increased primarily due to higher weighted average principal balances outstanding due to the issuance of our 2022 Convertible Notes and 2022 Notes. The increase in interest and fee expense was partially offset by a reduction in the weighted average principal balance outstanding on our 2019 Notes, which were fully redeemed in February 2017, and on our 2021 Asset Backed Notes, which are amortizing. The increase was further offset by a partial redemption of our 2024 Notes in November 2017.

We had a weighted average cost of debt, comprised of interest and fees, of approximately 5.9% and 5.8% for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The slight increase between comparative periods was primarily driven by an increase in the weighted average principal outstanding compared to the prior period, specifically the issuance of our 2022 Convertible Notes and 2022 Notes, partially offset by the accelerations of unamortized deferred financing costs from the full and partial redemptions on our 2019 Notes, and 2024 Notes, and the principal amortization of our 2021 Asset Backed Notes, respectively, during the period.

***General and Administrative Expenses***

General and administrative expenses include legal fees, consulting fees, accounting fees, printer fees, insurance premiums, rent, expenses associated with the workout of underperforming investments and various other expenses. Our general and administrative expenses were \$16.1 million for both the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

***Employee Compensation***

Employee compensation and benefits totaled approximately \$24.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 as compared to approximately \$22.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase between comparative periods was primarily due to changes in variable incentive compensation related to the achievement of origination and strategic corporate objectives.

Employee stock-based compensation totaled approximately \$7.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2017 as compared to approximately \$7.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase between comparative periods was primarily related to the number and amount of restricted stock award vesting.

***Net Investment Realized Gains and Losses and Net Unrealized Appreciation and Depreciation***

Realized gains or losses are measured by the difference between the net proceeds from the repayment or sale and the cost basis of an investment without regard to unrealized appreciation or depreciation previously recognized, and includes investments written off during the period, net of recoveries. Net change in unrealized appreciation or

depreciation primarily reflects the change in portfolio investment values during the reporting period, including the reversal of previously recorded unrealized appreciation or depreciation when gains or losses are realized.



**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

A summary of realized gains and losses for the years ended December 31, 2017 as and 2016 is as follows:

<b>(in thousands)</b>	<b>Year Ended December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
Realized gains	\$ 14,163	\$ 15,202
Realized losses	(40,874)	(10,626)
<b>Net realized gains (losses)</b>	<b>\$ (26,711)</b>	<b>\$ 4,576</b>

During the year ended December 31, 2017, we recognized net realized losses of approximately \$26.7 million on the portfolio. These net realized losses included gross realized losses of approximately \$40.9 million, primarily from the liquidation or write off of our debt investments in five portfolio companies and our warrant and equity investments in twenty-one portfolio companies. These losses were offset by gross realized gains of approximately \$14.2 million, primarily from the sale of investments in five portfolio companies.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, we recognized net realized gains of approximately \$4.6 million on the portfolio. These net realized gains included gross realized gains of approximately \$15.2 million from the sale of investments in six portfolio companies. These gains were partially offset by gross realized losses of approximately \$10.6 million, primarily from the liquidation or write off of our warrant and equity investments in eight portfolio companies and our debt investments in five portfolio companies, including the settlement of our outstanding debt investment in one portfolio company.

The net unrealized appreciation and depreciation of our investments is based on the fair value of each investment determined in good faith by our Board of Directors. The following table summarizes the change in net unrealized appreciation/depreciation of investments for the years ended December 31, 2017, and 2016:

<b>(in thousands)</b>	<b>Year Ended December 31,</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
Gross unrealized appreciation on portfolio investments	\$ 130,272	\$ 75,264
Gross unrealized depreciation on portfolio investments	(148,345)	(115,867)
Reversal of prior period net unrealized appreciation upon a realization event	42,967	(8,525)
Reversal of prior period net unrealized depreciation upon a realization event	(14,925)	13,186
Net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) on debt, equity, and warrant investments	9,969	(35,942)
Other net unrealized appreciation (depreciation)	(704)	(275)
<b>Net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) on portfolio investments</b>	<b>\$ 9,265</b>	<b>\$ (36,217)</b>

During the year ended December 31, 2017, we recorded approximately \$9.3 million of net unrealized appreciation, of which \$10.0 million is net unrealized appreciation from our debt, equity and warrant investments. We recorded

\$32.1 million of net unrealized appreciation on our debt investments, which primarily relates to the reversal of \$53.7 million of prior period collateral based impairments on four portfolio companies and the reversal of \$31.0 million of prior period unrealized depreciation upon payoff or liquidation of our debt investments, offset by \$49.6 million of unrealized depreciation for collateral based impairments on eight portfolio companies during the period.

We recorded \$32.8 million of net unrealized depreciation on our equity investments, which primarily relates to \$51.9 million of unrealized depreciation for collateral based impairments on two portfolio companies, offset by \$9.7 million and \$6.6 million of unrealized appreciation on our public and private equity portfolios, respectively, related to portfolio company and industry performance.

Finally, we recorded \$10.7 million of unrealized appreciation on our warrant investments, which primarily relates to \$9.4 million and \$5.2 million of unrealized appreciation on our private and public portfolio companies,

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

respectively, related to portfolio company and industry performance. This unrealized appreciation was offset by the reversal of \$3.4 million of unrealized appreciation upon being recognized as a gain or loss due to the acquisition or liquidation of our warrant investments.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, we recorded approximately \$36.2 million of net unrealized depreciation, of which \$35.9 million is net unrealized depreciation from our debt, equity and warrant investments. Of the \$35.9 million, approximately \$14.0 million is attributed to net unrealized depreciation on our debt investments which primarily relates to \$50.0 million unrealized depreciation for collateral based impairments on eight portfolio companies, offset by the reversal of prior period collateral based impairments of \$17.3 million on six portfolio companies and the reversal of \$13.1 million of prior period unrealized depreciation upon payoff or settling of our debt investments. Approximately \$22.2 million is attributed to net unrealized depreciation on our equity investments which primarily relates to approximately \$7.4 million of unrealized depreciation for collateral based impairments on two portfolio companies, \$6.6 million of unrealized depreciation on our public equity portfolio, with the largest concentration in our investment in Box, Inc. and the reversal of \$5.4 million of prior period net unrealized appreciation upon being realized as a gain for our sale of shares of Box, Inc. This unrealized depreciation was partially offset by approximately \$245,000 of unrealized appreciation on our warrant investments, which primarily related to \$4.8 million of unrealized appreciation on our private portfolio companies, offset by \$2.9 million unrealized depreciation on our public portfolio companies related to individual portfolio company performance.

The following table summarizes the change in net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) in the investment portfolio by investment type, excluding other net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) for the years ended December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016:

(in millions)	Year Ended December 31, 2017			
	Debt	Equity	Warrants	Total
Collateral Based Impairments <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ (49.6)	\$ (51.9)	\$ (0.6)	\$ (102.1)
Reversals of Prior Period Collateral Based Impairments	53.7		0.1	53.8
Reversals due to Debt Payoffs & Warrant/Equity Sales	31.0	2.8	(3.4)	30.4
Fair Value Market/Yield Adjustments <sup>(2)</sup>				
Level 1 & 2 Assets		9.7	5.2	14.9
Level 3 Assets	(3.0)	6.6	9.4	13.0
Total Fair Value Market/Yield Adjustments	(3.0)	16.3	14.6	27.9
<b>Total Unrealized Appreciation (Depreciation)</b>	<b>\$ 32.1</b>	<b>\$ (32.8)</b>	<b>\$ 10.7</b>	<b>\$ 10.0</b>

(in millions)	Year Ended December 31, 2016			
	Debt	Equity	Warrants	Total
Collateral Based Impairments <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ (50.0)	\$ (7.4)	\$ (1.1)	\$ (58.5)
Reversals of Prior Period Collateral Based Impairments	17.3		0.5	17.8
Reversals due to Debt Payoffs & Warrant/Equity Sales	13.1	(5.4)	(1.0)	6.7
Fair Value Market/Yield Adjustments <sup>(2)</sup>				

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Level 1 & 2 Assets	(1.3)	(6.6)	(2.9)	(10.8)
Level 3 Assets	6.9	(2.8)	4.8	8.9
Total Fair Value Market/Yield Adjustments	5.6	(9.4)	1.9	(1.9)
<b>Total Unrealized Appreciation (Depreciation)</b>	\$ (14.0)	\$ (22.2)	\$ 0.3	\$ (35.9)

- (1) The unrealized appreciation (depreciation) attributable to collateral based impairments include all changes in estimated fair value on positions whose fair value remains impaired relative to cost as of the period end date. As such, this may include current period improvements in estimated fair value that do not represent reversals to prior period collateral based impairments.
- (2) Level 1 assets are generally equities listed in active markets and Level 2 assets are generally warrants held in a public company. Observable market prices are typically the primary input in valuing Level 1 and 2 assets. Level 3 asset valuations require inputs that are both significant and unobservable. Generally, Level 3 assets are debt investments and warrants and equities held in a private company. See Note 2 to the financial statements discussing ASC Topic 820 ( Fair Value Measurements ).

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Income and Excise Taxes***

We account for income taxes in accordance with the provisions of Topic 740 of the Financial Accounting Standards Board's (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification, as amended (ASC), Income Taxes, under which income taxes are provided for amounts currently payable and for amounts deferred based upon the estimated future tax effects of differences between the financial statements and tax basis of assets and liabilities given the provisions of the enacted tax law. Valuation allowances may be used to reduce deferred tax assets to the amount likely to be realized. Based upon our previous election and anticipated continued qualification to be subject to taxation as a RIC, we are typically not subject to a material level of federal income taxes. We intend to distribute 100% of our spillover earnings from ordinary income for our taxable year ended December 31, 2017 to our stockholders during 2018.

***Net Change in Net Assets Resulting from Operations and Earnings Per Share***

For the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, we had a net increase in net assets resulting from operations totaling approximately \$79.0 million and approximately \$68.7 million, respectively.

The basic and fully diluted net change in net assets per common share for the year ended December 31, 2017 was \$0.95, whereas the basic and fully diluted net change in net assets per common share for the year ended December 31, 2016 was \$0.91.

For the purpose of calculating diluted earnings per share for year ended December 31, 2017, the dilutive effect of the 2022 Convertible Notes, outstanding options and restricted stock units under the treasury stock method was considered. The effect of the 2022 Convertible Notes was excluded from these calculations for the year ended December 31, 2017 as our share price was less than the conversion price in effect which results in anti-dilution.

**Comparison of periods ended December 31, 2016 and 2015**

***Investment Income***

***Interest Income***

Total investment income for the year ended December 31, 2016 was approximately \$175.1 million as compared to approximately \$157.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2015.

Interest income for the year ended December 31, 2016 totaled approximately \$158.7 million as compared to approximately \$140.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2015. The increase in interest income for the year ended December 31, 2016 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2015 is primarily attributable to debt investment portfolio growth, specifically an increase in the weighted average principal outstanding between the periods, slightly offset by a reduction in the acceleration of income due to early repayments and other one-time events during the period.

Of the \$158.7 million in interest income for the year ended December 31, 2016, approximately \$152.1 million represents recurring income from the contractual servicing of our loan portfolio and approximately \$6.6 million represents income related to the acceleration of income due to early loan repayments and other one-time events during the period. Income from recurring interest and the acceleration of interest income due to early loan repayments represented \$130.4 million and \$9.9 million, respectively, of the \$140.3 million interest income for the year ended

December 31, 2015.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

The following table shows the PIK-related activity, for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, at cost:

(in thousands)	Year Ended December 31,	
	2016	2015
<b>Beginning PIK interest receivable balance</b>	\$ 5,149	\$ 6,250
PIK interest income during the period	7,825	4,658
PIK accrued (capitalized) to principal but not recorded as income during the period	(2,146)	
Payments received from PIK loans	(632)	(5,483)
Realized loss	(266)	(276)
<b>Ending PIK interest receivable balance</b>	\$ 9,930	\$ 5,149

The increase in PIK interest income during the year ended December 31, 2016 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2015 is due to overall portfolio growth, or more specifically, an increase in the weighted average principal outstanding for loans which bear PIK interest and a decrease in the number of PIK loans which paid-off during the period. PIK receivable represents less than 1% of total debt investments as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, respectively

*Fee Income*

Income from commitment, facility and loan related fees for the year ended December 31, 2016 totaled approximately \$16.3 million as compared to approximately \$16.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2015. The decrease in fee income is primarily attributable to a decrease in the acceleration of unamortized fees due to early repayments and one-time fees during the period.

Of the \$16.3 million in income from commitment, facility and loan related fees for the year ended December 31, 2016, approximately \$9.5 million represents income from recurring fee amortization and approximately \$6.8 million represents income related to the acceleration of unamortized fees during the period. Income from recurring fee amortization and the acceleration of unamortized fees due to early loan repayments represented \$5.8 million and \$11.1 million, respectively, of the \$16.9 million income for the year ended December 31, 2015.

In certain investment transactions, we may earn income from advisory services; however, we had no income from advisory services in the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

*Operating Expenses*

Our operating expenses are comprised of interest and fees on our borrowings, general and administrative expenses and employee compensation and benefits. Operating expenses totaled approximately \$82.7 million and \$83.6 million during the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

*Interest and Fees on our Borrowings*

Interest and fees on our borrowings totaled approximately \$37.1 million and \$36.9 million for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively. Interest and fee expense for the year ended December 31, 2016 as compared to December 31, 2015 increased primarily due to higher weighted average principal balances outstanding on our 2024 Notes related to the issuance of \$149.9 million of aggregate principal during the period. The increase in interest and fee expense incurred related to our 2024 notes was partially offset by principal pay-offs and paydowns on our 2016 Convertible Notes, Asset Backed Notes and Credit Facilities during the period.



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

We had a weighted average cost of debt, comprised of interest and fees and loss on debt extinguishment (long-term liabilities convertible notes), of approximately 5.8% and 6.0% for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively. The decrease between comparative periods was primarily driven by a reduction in the weighted average principal outstanding on our higher yielding debt instruments compared to the prior period, specifically due to the full impact of redemptions on our 2019 Notes and 2016 Convertible Notes which occurred in the prior period, offset by the incremental issuance of our 2024 Notes in fiscal year 2016.

*General and Administrative Expenses*

General and administrative expenses include legal fees, consulting fees, accounting fees, printer fees, insurance premiums, rent, expenses associated with the workout of underperforming investments and various other expenses. Our general and administrative expenses decreased to \$16.1 million from \$16.7 million for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively. This decrease was primarily attributable to a reduction in costs related to strategic hiring objectives and travel and entertainment, slightly offset by an increase in corporate legal and other expenses.

*Employee Compensation*

Employee compensation and benefits totaled approximately \$22.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 as compared to approximately \$20.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2015. The increase between comparative periods was primarily due to changes in variable incentive compensation related to the achievement of origination and strategic corporate objectives.

Employee stock-based compensation totaled approximately \$7.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 as compared to approximately \$9.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2015. The decrease between comparative periods was primarily related to the number and amount of restricted stock award vesting, specifically the vesting of retention grants issued in 2014 which occurred in the first half of 2016.

*Other Income (Loss)*

Other income (loss) generally consists of income or losses generated from sources other than our investment portfolio. For the years ended December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015 it consists of \$8.0 million of litigation settlement proceeds and \$1,000 of loss on extinguishment of debt, respectively.

*Litigation Settlement Proceeds*

On December 19, 2016, we entered into a Confidential Settlement Agreement (the *Settlement Agreement*) with all defendants in connection with a litigation matter (the *Action*) filed in November 2014. In connection with the Settlement Agreement, the Action was settled among the parties and we received a settlement payment in the amount of \$8.0 million. The Settlement Agreement also provides a mutual release by us and the defendants of any and all claims and cross-claims that were asserted in the Action, the circumstances and events underlying the Action and attorney's fees and costs related thereto. The Settlement Agreement does not constitute an admission of liability, fault, or wrongdoing by any party. The settlement payment was classified as a component of net investment income in our Consolidated Statement of Operations.

*Loss on Extinguishment of Convertible Notes*

Our 6.00% convertible notes due 2016 (the 2016 Convertible Notes ) were fully settled on or before their contractual maturity date of April 15, 2016. Throughout their life, holders of approximately \$74.8 million of our 2016 Convertible Notes exercised their conversion rights. These 2016 Convertible Notes were settled with a combination of cash equal to the outstanding principal amount of the 2016 Convertible Notes and approximately 1.6 million shares of our common stock, or \$24.3 million.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

We recorded a loss on extinguishment of debt for the proportionate amount of unamortized debt issuance costs and OID. The loss was partially offset by a gain in the amount of the difference between the outstanding principal balance of the converted notes and the fair value of the debt instrument. The net loss on extinguishment of debt we recorded for the year ended December 31, 2015 was approximately \$1,000. We did not record a loss on extinguishment of debt for the year ended December 31, 2016. The loss on extinguishment of debt was classified as a component of net investment income in our Consolidated Statements of Operations.

***Net Investment Realized Gains and Losses and Net Unrealized Appreciation and Depreciation***

Realized gains or losses are measured by the difference between the net proceeds from the repayment or sale and the cost basis of an investment without regard to unrealized appreciation or depreciation previously recognized, and includes investments written off during the period, net of recoveries. Net change in unrealized appreciation or depreciation primarily reflects the change in portfolio investment values during the reporting period, including the reversal of previously recorded unrealized appreciation or depreciation when gains or losses are realized.

A summary of realized gains and losses for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 is as follows:

(in thousands)	Year Ended December 31,	
	2016	2015
Realized gains	\$ 15,202	\$ 12,677
Realized losses	(10,626)	(7,530)
<b>Net realized gains</b>	<b>\$ 4,576</b>	<b>\$ 5,147</b>

During the year ended December 31, 2016, we recognized net realized gains of approximately \$4.6 million on the portfolio. These net realized gains included gross realized gains of approximately \$15.2 million, primarily from the sale of investments in six portfolio companies. These gains were partially offset by gross realized losses of approximately \$10.6 million, primarily from the liquidation or write off of our warrant and equity investments in eight portfolio companies and our debt investments in five portfolio companies, including the settlement of our outstanding debt investment in one portfolio company.

During the year ended December 31, 2015, we recognized net realized gains of approximately \$5.1 million on the portfolio. These net realized gains included gross realized gains of approximately \$12.6 million from the sale of investments in seven portfolio companies and \$1.5 million from subsequent recoveries on two previously written-off debt investments. These gains were partially offset by gross realized losses of approximately \$7.5 million primarily from the liquidation or write off of our investments in sixteen portfolio companies.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

The net unrealized appreciation and depreciation of our investments is based on the fair value of each investment determined in good faith by our Board of Directors. The following table summarizes the change in net unrealized appreciation/depreciation of investments for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015:

<b>(in thousands)</b>	<b>Year Ended</b>	
	<b>December 31,</b>	
	<b>2016</b>	<b>2015</b>
Gross unrealized appreciation on portfolio investments	\$ 75,264	\$ 78,991
Gross unrealized depreciation on portfolio investments	(115,867)	(111,926)
Reversal of prior period net unrealized appreciation upon a realization event	(8,525)	(8,707)
Reversal of prior period net unrealized depreciation upon a realization event	13,186	4,599
Net unrealized depreciation on debt, equity, and warrant investments	(35,942)	(37,043)
Other net unrealized appreciation (depreciation)	(275)	1,311
<b>Net unrealized depreciation on portfolio investments</b>	<b>\$ (36,217)</b>	<b>\$ (35,732)</b>

During the year ended December 31, 2016, we recorded approximately \$36.2 million of net unrealized depreciation, of which \$35.9 million is net unrealized depreciation from our debt, equity and warrant investments. Of the \$35.9 million, approximately \$14.0 million is attributed to net unrealized depreciation on our debt investments which primarily relates to \$50.0 million unrealized depreciation for collateral based impairments on eight portfolio companies, offset by the reversal of prior period collateral based impairments of \$17.3 million on six portfolio companies and the reversal of \$13.1 million of prior period unrealized depreciation upon payoff or settling of our debt investments. Approximately \$22.2 million is attributed to net unrealized depreciation on our equity investments which primarily relates to approximately \$7.4 million of unrealized depreciation for collateral based impairments on two portfolio companies, \$6.6 million of unrealized depreciation on our public equity portfolio, with the largest concentration in our investment in Box, Inc. and the reversal of \$5.4 million of prior period net unrealized appreciation upon being realized as a gain for our sale of shares of Box, Inc. This unrealized depreciation was partially offset by approximately \$245,000 of unrealized appreciation on our warrant investments, which primarily related to \$4.8 million of unrealized appreciation on our private portfolio companies, offset by \$2.9 million unrealized depreciation on our public portfolio companies related to individual portfolio company performance.

During the year ended December 31, 2015, we recorded approximately \$35.7 million of net unrealized depreciation, of which \$37.1 million is net unrealized depreciation from our debt, equity and warrant investments. Of the \$37.1 million, approximately \$14.0 million is attributed to net unrealized depreciation on our debt investments which primarily related to \$20.4 million unrealized depreciation for collateral based impairments on ten portfolio companies offset by the reversal of collateral based impairments of \$5.6 million on three portfolio companies. Approximately \$19.1 million is attributed to net unrealized depreciation on our equity investments which primarily related to \$11.4 million unrealized depreciation on our public equity portfolio with the largest concentration in our investment in Box, Inc. and the reversal of \$7.8 million of prior period net unrealized appreciation upon being realized as a gain for our sale of shares of Box, Inc., Atrenta, Inc., Cembra, Inc. Celladon Corporation, Egalet Corporation, Everyday Health, and Identiv, Inc. as discussed above. Finally, approximately \$4.0 million is attributed to net unrealized depreciation on our warrant investments which primarily related to \$6.0 million of unrealized depreciation on our private portfolio companies related to declining industry performance offset by the reversal of \$3.2 million of prior

period net unrealized depreciation upon being realized as a loss on the liquidation of our investments in thirteen portfolio companies.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

The following table summarizes the change in net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) in the investment portfolio by investment type, excluding other net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) for the years ended December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015:

(in millions)	Year Ended December 31, 2016			
	Debt	Equity	Warrants	Total
Collateral Based Impairments <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ (50.0)	\$ (7.4)	\$ (1.1)	\$ (58.5)
Reversals of Prior Period Collateral based impairments	17.3		0.5	17.8
Reversals due to Debt Payoffs & Warrant/Equity sales	13.1	(5.4)	(1.0)	6.7
Fair Value Market/Yield Adjustments <sup>(2)</sup>				
Level 1 & 2 Assets	(1.3)	(6.6)	(2.9)	(10.8)
Level 3 Assets	6.9	(2.8)	4.8	8.9
Total Fair Value Market/Yield Adjustments	5.6	(9.4)	1.9	(1.9)
<b>Total Unrealized Appreciation (Depreciation)</b>	<b>\$ (14.0)</b>	<b>\$ (22.2)</b>	<b>\$ 0.3</b>	<b>\$ (35.9)</b>

(in millions)	Year Ended December 31, 2015			
	Debt	Equity	Warrants	Total
Collateral Based Impairments <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ (20.4)	\$ (0.2)	\$ (0.4)	\$ (21.0)
Reversals of Prior Period Collateral based impairments	5.6		0.4	6.0
Reversals due to Debt Payoffs & Warrant/Equity sales	6.2	(7.8)	3.2	1.6
Fair Value Market/Yield Adjustments <sup>(2)</sup>				
Level 1 & 2 Assets	(1.1)	(11.4)	(1.2)	(13.7)
Level 3 Assets	(4.3)	0.3	(6.0)	(10.0)
Total Fair Value Market/Yield Adjustments	(5.4)	(11.1)	(7.2)	(23.7)
<b>Total Unrealized Appreciation (Depreciation)</b>	<b>\$ (14.0)</b>	<b>\$ (19.1)</b>	<b>\$ (4.0)</b>	<b>\$ (37.1)</b>

- (1) The unrealized appreciation (depreciation) attributable to collateral based impairments include all changes in estimated fair value on positions whose fair value remains impaired relative to cost as of the period end date. As such, this may include current period improvements in estimated fair value that do not represent reversals to prior period collateral based impairments.
- (2) Level 1 assets are generally equities listed in active markets and Level 2 assets are generally warrants held in a public company. Observable market prices are typically the primary input in valuing Level 1 and 2 assets. Level 3 asset valuations require inputs that are both significant and unobservable. Generally, Level 3 assets are debt investments and warrants and equities held in a private company. See Note 2 to the financial statements discussing ASC Topic 820 ( Fair Value Measurements ).

***Income and Excise Taxes***

We account for income taxes in accordance with the provisions of ASC Topic 740, Income Taxes, under which income taxes are provided for amounts currently payable and for amounts deferred based upon the estimated future tax effects of differences between the financial statements and tax basis of assets and liabilities given the provisions of the enacted tax law. Valuation allowances may be used to reduce deferred tax assets to the amount likely to be realized. Based upon our previous election and anticipated continued qualification to be subject to taxation as a RIC, we are typically not subject to a material level of federal income taxes. We distributed 100% of our spillover earnings, which consisted of ordinary income and long-term capital gains, from our taxable year ended December 31, 2016 to our stockholders during 2017.

***Net Change in Net Assets Resulting from Operations and Earnings Per Share***

For the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, the net increase in net assets resulting from operations totaled approximately \$68.7 million and approximately \$42.9 million, respectively.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

The basic and fully diluted net change in net assets per common share for the year ended December 31, 2016 was \$0.91, whereas the basic and fully diluted net change in net assets per common share for the year ended December 31, 2015 were \$0.60 and \$0.59, respectively.

For the purpose of calculating diluted earnings per share for year ended December 31, 2015, the dilutive effect of the 2016 Convertible Notes under the treasury stock method is included in this calculation as our share price was greater than the conversion price in effect ( \$11.03 as of December 31, 2015) for the 2016 Convertible Notes for such period. The 2016 Convertible Notes were fully settled on or before their contractual maturity date of April 15, 2016, as such, there is no potential additional dilutive effect for the year ended December 31, 2016.

**Financial Condition, Liquidity, and Capital Resources**

Our liquidity and capital resources are derived from our SBA debentures, 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes, 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, 2022 Convertible Notes, Credit Facilities and cash flows from operations, including investment sales and repayments, and income earned. Our primary use of funds from operations includes investments in portfolio companies and payments of fees and other operating expenses we incur. We have used, and expect to continue to use, our borrowings and the proceeds from the turnover of our portfolio and from public and private offerings of securities to finance our investment objectives. We may also raise additional equity or debt capital through registered offerings off a shelf registration, ATM and private offerings of securities, by securitizing a portion of our investments, or by borrowing from the SBA through our SBIC subsidiaries.

On August 16, 2013, we entered into an ATM equity distribution agreement (the Prior Equity Distribution Agreement ) with JMP Securities LLC ( JMP ). On March 7, 2016, we renewed the Prior Equity Distribution Agreement and on December 21, 2016, we further amended the agreement to increase the total shares available under the program. The Prior Equity Distribution Agreement, as amended, provided that we may offer and sell up to 12.0 million shares of our common stock from time to time through JMP, as our sales agent.

On September 7, 2017, we terminated the Prior Equity Distribution Agreement and entered into a new ATM equity distribution agreement (the Equity Distribution Agreement ) with JMP. As a result, the remaining shares that were available under the Prior Equity Distribution agreement are no longer available for issuance. The Equity Distribution Agreement provides that we may offer and sell up to 12.0 million shares of its common stock from time to time through JMP, as its sales agent. Sales of our common stock, if any, may be made in negotiated transactions or transactions that are deemed to be at the market, as defined in Rule 415 under the Securities Act, including sales made directly on the NYSE or similar securities exchange or sales made to or through a market maker other than on an exchange, at prices related to the prevailing market prices or at negotiated prices.

During the year ended December 31, 2017 we sold 4.9 million shares of common stock, of which 3.3 million shares and 1.6 million shares were issued under the Prior Equity Distribution Agreement and the Equity Distribution Agreement, respectively. During the year ended December 31, 2017, we received total accumulated net proceeds of approximately \$66.9 million, including \$962,000 of offering expenses, from these sales, of which \$46.9 million, including offering expenses of \$532,000, was received under the Prior Equity Distribution Agreement and \$20.0 million, including offering expenses of \$380,000, was received under the Equity Distribution Agreement, respectively. As of December 31, 2017, approximately 10.4 million shares remained available for issuance and sale under the Equity Distribution Agreement.



On August 27, 2015, our Board of Directors authorized a stock repurchase plan permitting us to repurchase up to \$50.0 million of our common stock until August 23, 2016, after which the plan expired. In January 2016, we repurchased 449,588 shares of our common stock at an average price per share of \$10.64 per share and a total cost of approximately \$4.8 million. We did not repurchase additional shares in subsequent months during 2016. During the year ended December 31, 2015, we repurchased 437,006 shares of our common stock at an average price per share of \$10.61 per share and a total cost of approximately \$4.6 million.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Our 2016 Convertible Notes were fully settled on or before their contractual maturity date of April 15, 2016. Throughout the life of the 2016 Convertible Notes, holders of approximately \$74.8 million of our 2016 Convertible Notes exercised their conversion rights. These 2016 Convertible Notes were settled with a combination of cash equal to the outstanding principal amount of the converted notes and approximately 1.6 million shares of our common stock, or \$24.3 million.

On May 2, 2016, we closed an underwritten public offering of an additional \$72.9 million in aggregate principal amount of our 2024 Notes. The \$72.9 million in aggregate principal amount includes \$65.4 million from the initial offering on April 21, 2016 and \$7.5 million as a result of underwriters exercising a portion of their option to purchase up to an additional \$9.8 million in aggregate principal to cover overallotments on April 29, 2016. On June 27, 2016, we closed an underwritten public offering of an additional \$60.0 million in aggregate principal amount of the 2024 Notes. On June 30, 2016, the underwriters exercised their option to purchase up to an additional \$9.0 million in aggregate principal to cover overallotments, resulting in total aggregate principal of \$69.0 million from the offering. The 2024 Notes rank equally in right of payment and form a single series of notes.

On May 5, 2016, we, through a special purpose wholly-owned subsidiary, Hercules Funding III, as borrower, entered into the Union Bank Facility with MUFG Union Bank, as the arranger and administrative agent, and the lenders party thereto from time to time. The Union Bank Facility replaced our credit facility (the Prior Union Bank Facility ) entered into on August 14, 2014 (as amended and restated from time to time) with MUFG Union Bank, as the arranger and administrative agent, and the lenders party to the Prior Union Bank Facility from time to time. Any references to amounts related to the Union Bank Facility prior to May 5, 2016 were incurred and relate to the Prior Union Bank Facility.

On October 11, 2016, we entered into a debt distribution agreement, pursuant to which we may offer for sale, from time to time, up to \$150.0 million in aggregate principal amount of 2024 Notes through FBR Capital Markets & Co. acting as our sales agent. Sales of the 2024 Notes, if any, may be made in negotiated transactions or transactions that are deemed to be at the market offerings as defined in Rule 415 under the Securities Act, including sales made directly on the NYSE, or similar securities exchange or sales made through a market maker other than on an exchange at prices related to prevailing market prices or at negotiated prices.

As of December 31, 2017, we sold 225,457 shares of our 2024 Notes for approximately \$5.6 million in aggregate principal amount. During the year ended December 31, 2016, we sold 317,125 shares of our 2024 Notes for approximately \$7.9 million in aggregate principal amount. As of December 31, 2017, approximately \$136.4 million in aggregate principal amount remains available for issuance and sale under the debt distribution agreement.

On January 25, 2017, we issued \$230.0 million in aggregate principal amount of 2022 Convertible Notes, which amount includes the additional \$30.0 million aggregate principal amount issued pursuant to the initial purchaser's exercise in full of its overallotment option. The sale generated net proceeds of approximately \$225.5 million, including \$4.5 million of debt issuance costs. Aggregate issuances costs include the initial purchaser's discount of approximately \$5.2 million, offset by the reimbursement of \$1.2 million by the initial purchaser.

On February 24, 2017, we redeemed the \$110.4 million remaining outstanding balance of our 2019 Notes in full.

On October 23, 2017, we issued \$150.0 million in aggregate principal amount of the 2022 Notes. The 2022 Notes were issued pursuant to an Indenture, dated September 7, 2017 (the 2022 Notes Indenture ), between us and U.S. Bank, National Association, as trustee (the 2022 Trustee ). The sale of the 2022 Notes generated net proceeds of

approximately \$147.5 million, including a public offering discount of \$826,500. Aggregate estimated offering expenses in connection with the transaction, including the underwriter's discount and commissions of approximately \$975,000, were approximately \$1.7 million.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

On November 23, 2017, we redeemed \$75.0 million of the \$258.5 million issued and outstanding aggregate principal amount of our 2024 Notes. On February 9, 2018, our Board of Directors approved a redemption of \$100.0 million of the remaining outstanding aggregate principal amount of the 2024 Notes, which were redeemed on April 2, 2018.

At December 31, 2017, we had \$190.2 million of SBA debentures, \$150.0 million of 2022 Notes, \$183.5 million of 2024 Notes, \$49.2 million of 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, and \$230.0 million of 2022 Convertible Notes payable. We had no borrowings outstanding under the Wells Facility or the Union Bank Facility.

At December 31, 2017, we had \$286.3 million in available liquidity, including \$91.3 million in cash and cash equivalents. We had available borrowing capacity of \$120.0 million under the Wells Facility and \$75.0 million under the Union Bank Facility, subject to existing terms and advance rates and regulatory requirements. We primarily invest cash on hand in interest bearing deposit accounts.

At December 31, 2017, with our net investments of \$44.0 million and \$74.5 million in HT II and HT III, respectively, we have the combined capacity to issue a total of \$190.2 million of SBA guaranteed debentures, subject to SBA approval. At December 31, 2017, we have issued \$190.2 million in SBA guaranteed debentures in our SBIC subsidiaries.

At December 31, 2017, we had approximately \$3.7 million of restricted cash, which consists of collections of interest and principal payments on assets that are securitized. In accordance with the terms of the related securitized 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, based on current characteristics of the securitized debt investment portfolio, the restricted funds may be used to pay monthly interest and principal on the securitized debt and are not distributed to us or available for our general operations.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, we principally funded our operations from (i) cash receipts from interest and fee income from our investment portfolio and (ii) cash proceeds from the realization of portfolio investments through the repayments of debt investments and the sale of debt and equity investments.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, our operating activities used \$18.4 million of cash and cash equivalents, compared to \$138.4 million used during the year ended December 31, 2016. The \$120.0 million reduction in cash used by operating activities is primarily due to an increase in investment repayments of \$196.3 million, offset by increases in investment purchases of \$83.8 million.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, our investing activities provided \$4.4 million of cash, compared to approximately \$617,000 provided during the year ended December 31, 2016. The \$3.8 million increase in cash provided by investing activities is primarily related to a decrease in restricted cash on securitized assets.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, our financing activities provided \$92.3 million of cash, compared to \$55.6 million provided during the year ended December 31, 2016. The \$36.7 million increase in cash provided by financing activities was primarily due to the net issuance of \$147.5 million and \$225.5 million in 2022 Notes and 2022 Convertible Notes, respectively, in the current period. The increase was offset by the repayments of \$110.4 million on our 2019 Notes, the principal repayment of \$75.0 million in our 2024 Notes and principal amortization of \$60.1 million on our 2021 Asset-Backed Notes.

As of December 31, 2017, net assets totaled \$841.0 million, with a NAV per share of \$9.96. We intend to generate additional cash primarily from cash flows from operations, including income earned from investments in our portfolio

companies. Our primary use of funds will be investments in portfolio companies and cash distributions to holders of our common stock.

As required by the 1940 Act, our asset coverage must be at least 200% (or 150%, subject to certain approval and disclosure requirements) after each issuance of senior securities. As of December 31, 2017, our asset coverage ratio under our regulatory requirements as a business development company was 236.7%, excluding our SBA debentures as a result of our exemptive order from the SEC that allows us to exclude all SBA leverage from our asset coverage ratio.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

As a result of the SEC exemptive order, our ratio of total assets on a consolidated basis to outstanding indebtedness may be less than 200% (or 150%, subject to certain approval and disclosure requirements), which while providing increased investment flexibility, also may increase our exposure to risks associated with leverage. Total asset coverage when including our SBA debentures was 204.3% at December 31, 2017.

***Outstanding Borrowings***

At December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, we had the following available borrowings and outstanding amounts:

(in thousands)	December 31, 2017			December 31, 2016		
	Total Available	Principal	Carrying Value <sup>(1)</sup>	Total Available	Principal	Carrying Value <sup>(1)</sup>
SBA Debentures <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 190,200	\$ 190,200	\$ 188,141	\$ 190,200	\$ 190,200	\$ 187,501
2019 Notes <sup>(3)</sup>				110,364	110,364	108,818
2022 Notes	150,000	150,000	147,572			
2024 Notes	183,510	183,510	179,001	252,873	252,873	245,490
2021 Asset-Backed Notes	49,153	49,153	48,650	109,205	109,205	107,972
2022 Convertible Notes	230,000	230,000	223,488			
Wells Facility <sup>(4)</sup>	120,000			120,000	5,016	5,016
Union Bank Facility <sup>(4)</sup>	75,000			75,000		
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 997,863</b>	<b>\$ 802,863</b>	<b>\$ 786,852</b>	<b>\$ 857,642</b>	<b>\$ 667,658</b>	<b>\$ 654,797</b>

(1) Except for the Wells Facility and Union Bank Facility, all carrying values represent the principal amount outstanding less the remaining unamortized debt issuance costs and unaccreted discount, if any, associated with the loan as of the balance sheet date. See below for the amount of debt issuance cost associated with each borrowing.

(2) At both December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, the total available borrowings under the SBA debentures were \$190.2 million, of which \$41.2 million was available in HT II and \$149.0 million was available in HT III.

(3) The 2019 Notes were redeemed in full on February 24, 2017.

(4) Availability subject to us meeting the borrowing base requirements.

Debt issuance costs are fees and other direct incremental costs we incur in obtaining debt financing and are recognized as prepaid expenses and amortized over the life of the related debt instrument using the effective yield method or the straight line method, which closely approximates the effective yield method. In accordance with ASC Subtopic 835-30 ( Interest Imputation of Interest ), debt issuance costs are presented as a reduction to the associated liability balance on the Consolidated Statement of Assets and Liabilities, except for debt issuance costs associated with line-of-credit arrangements. Debt issuance costs, net of accumulated amortization, as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 were as follows:

(in thousands)

December 31, 2017

December 31, 2016

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

SBA Debentures	\$	2,059	\$	2,699
2019 Notes <sup>(1)</sup>				1,546
2022 Notes		1,633		
2024 Notes		4,591		7,482
2021 Asset-Backed Notes		503		1,233
2022 Convertible Notes		3,715		
Wells Facility <sup>(2)</sup>		227		501
Union Bank Facility <sup>(2)</sup>		379		768
<b>Total</b>	\$	13,107	\$	14,229

(1) 2019 Notes were redeemed in full on February 24, 2017.

(2) As the Wells Facility and Union Bank Facility are line-of-credit arrangements, the debt issuance costs associated with these instruments are presented separately as an asset on the Consolidated Statement of Assets and Liabilities in accordance with ASC Subtopic 835-30.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****Commitments**

In the normal course of business, we are party to financial instruments with off-balance sheet risk. These consist primarily of unfunded contractual commitments to extend credit, in the form of loans, to our portfolio companies. Unfunded contractual commitments to provide funds to portfolio companies are not reflected on our balance sheet. Our unfunded contractual commitments may be significant from time to time. A portion of these unfunded contractual commitments are dependent upon the portfolio company reaching certain milestones before the debt commitment becomes available. Furthermore, our credit agreements contain customary lending provisions which allow us relief from funding obligations for previously made commitments in instances where the underlying company experiences materially adverse events that affect the financial condition or business outlook for the company. These commitments will be subject to the same underwriting and ongoing portfolio maintenance as are the on-balance sheet financial instruments that we hold. Since these commitments may expire without being drawn upon, the total commitment amount does not necessarily represent future cash requirements. As such, our disclosure of unfunded contractual commitments includes only those which are available at the request of the portfolio company and unencumbered by milestones.

At December 31, 2017, we had approximately \$73.6 million of unfunded commitments, including undrawn revolving facilities, which were available at the request of the portfolio company and unencumbered by milestones. We intend to use cash flow from normal and early principal repayments, and proceeds from borrowings and notes to fund these commitments.

We also had approximately \$122.0 million of non-binding term sheets outstanding to five new companies, which generally convert to contractual commitments within approximately 90 days of signing. Non-binding outstanding term sheets are subject to completion of our due diligence and final investment committee approval process, as well as the negotiation of definitive documentation with the prospective portfolio companies. Not all non-binding term sheets are expected to close and do not necessarily represent future cash requirements.

The fair value of our unfunded commitments is considered to be immaterial as the yield determined at the time of underwriting is expected to be materially consistent with the yield upon funding, given that interest rates are generally pegged to market indices and given the existence of milestones, conditions and/or obligations imbedded in the borrowing agreements.

As of December 31, 2017, our unfunded contractual commitments available at the request of the portfolio company, including undrawn revolving facilities, and unencumbered by milestones are as follows:

<b>(in thousands)</b>	<b>Unfunded Commitments<sup>(1)</sup></b>
<b>Portfolio Company</b>	
Myovant Sciences	\$ 15,000
Chemocentryx, Inc.	10,000
Evernote Corporation	10,000
Proterra, Inc.	10,000
Verastem, Inc.	10,000
Impact Radius Holdings, Inc.	7,500



Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Wrike, Inc.	5,000
MDX Medical, Inc.	4,500
Lithium Technologies, Inc.	878
Achronix Semiconductor Corporation	726
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 73,604</b>

(1) Amount represents unfunded commitments, including undrawn revolving facilities, which are available at the request of the portfolio company. Amount excludes unfunded commitments which are unavailable due to the borrower having not met certain milestones.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****Contractual Obligations**

The following table shows our contractual obligations as of December 31, 2017:

	Payments due by period (in thousands)				
	Total	Less than 1 year	1 - 3 years	3 - 5 years	After 5 years
<b>Contractual Obligations<sup>(1)</sup></b>					
Borrowings <sup>(2)(3)(5)</sup>	\$ 802,863	\$ 149,153	\$ 51,200	\$ 494,250	\$ 108,260
Operating Lease Obligations <sup>(4)</sup>	17,869	1,997	5,195	5,871	4,806
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 820,732</b>	<b>\$ 151,150</b>	<b>\$ 56,395</b>	<b>\$ 500,121</b>	<b>\$ 113,066</b>

(1) Excludes commitments to extend credit to our portfolio companies.

(2) Includes \$190.2 million principal outstanding under the SBA debentures, \$150.0 million of the 2022 Notes, \$183.5 million of the 2024 Notes, \$49.2 million of the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes and \$230.0 million of the Convertible Notes as of December 31, 2017. There are no outstanding borrowings on the Wells Facility or Union Facility as of December 31, 2017.

(3) Amounts represent future principal repayments and not the carrying value of each liability. See *Outstanding Borrowings* in this prospectus supplement.

(4) Facility leases.

(5) Reflects announced redemption of a portion of the 2024 Notes in April 2018. See *Subsequent Events* in this prospectus supplement.

Certain premises are leased under agreements which expire at various dates through June 2027. Total rent expense amounted to approximately \$1.8 million, \$1.7 million and \$1.7 million during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively.

**Indemnification Agreements**

We have entered into indemnification agreements with our directors and executive officers. The indemnification agreements are intended to provide our directors and executive officers the maximum indemnification permitted under Maryland law and the 1940 Act. Each indemnification agreement provides that we shall indemnify the director or executive officer who is a party to the agreement, or an Indemnitee, including the advancement of legal expenses, if, by reason of his or her corporate status, the Indemnitee is, or is threatened to be, made a party to or a witness in any threatened, pending, or completed proceeding, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law and the 1940 Act.

We and our executives and directors are covered by Directors and Officers Insurance, with the directors and officers being indemnified by us to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law subject to the restrictions in the 1940 Act.

**Borrowings***Long-Term SBA Debentures*

On September 27, 2006, HT II received a license to operate as a SBIC under the SBIC program and is able to borrow funds from the SBA against eligible investments and additional contributions to regulatory capital. Under the Small Business Investment Company Act and current SBA policy applicable to SBICs, a SBIC can have outstanding at any time SBA guaranteed debentures up to twice the amount of its regulatory capital. With our net investment of \$44.0 million in HT II as of December 31, 2017, HT II has the capacity to issue a total of \$41.2 million of SBA guaranteed debentures, subject to SBA approval, of which \$41.2 million was outstanding as of December 31, 2017. As of December 31, 2017, HT II has paid the SBA commitment fees and facility fees of approximately \$1.5 million and \$3.6 million, respectively. As of December 31, 2017, we held investments in HT II in 34 companies with a fair value of approximately \$90.3 million, accounting for approximately 5.8% of our total investment portfolio. HT II held approximately \$111.8 million in assets and accounted for approximately 5.4% of our total assets prior to consolidation at December 31, 2017.

---

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

On May 26, 2010, HT III received a license to operate as a SBIC under the SBIC program and is able to borrow funds from the SBA against eligible investments and additional contributions to regulatory capital. With our net investment of \$74.5 million in HT III as of December 31, 2017, HT III has the capacity to issue a total of \$149.0 million of SBA guaranteed debentures, subject to SBA approval, of which \$149.0 million was outstanding as of December 31, 2017. As of December 31, 2017, HT III has paid the SBA commitment fees and facility fees of approximately \$1.5 million and \$3.6 million, respectively. As of December 31, 2017, we held investments in HT III in 48 companies with a fair value of approximately \$229.1 million accounting for approximately 14.9% of our total portfolio. HT III held approximately \$284.0 million in assets and accounted for approximately 13.8% of our total assets prior to consolidation at December 31, 2017.

SBICs are designed to stimulate the flow of private equity capital to eligible small businesses. Under present SBA regulations, eligible small businesses include businesses that have a tangible net worth not exceeding \$19.5 million and have average annual fully taxed net income not exceeding \$6.5 million for the two most recent fiscal years. In addition, SBICs must devote 25.0% of its investment activity to smaller enterprises as defined by the SBA. A smaller enterprise is one that has a tangible net worth not exceeding \$6.0 million and has average annual fully taxed net income not exceeding \$2.0 million for the two most recent fiscal years. SBA regulations also provide alternative size standard criteria to determine eligibility, which depend on the industry in which the business is engaged and are based on such factors as the number of employees and gross sales. According to SBA regulations, SBICs may make long-term loans to small businesses, invest in the equity securities of such businesses and provide them with consulting and advisory services. Through our wholly-owned subsidiaries HT II and HT III, we plan to provide long-term loans to qualifying small businesses, and in connection therewith, make equity investments.

HT II and HT III are periodically examined and audited by the SBA's staff to determine their compliance with SBA regulations. If HT II or HT III fails to comply with applicable SBA regulations, the SBA could, depending on the severity of the violation, limit or prohibit HT II's or HT III's use of debentures, declare outstanding debentures immediately due and payable, and/or limit HT II or HT III from making new investments. In addition, HT II or HT III may also be limited in their ability to make distributions to us if they do not have sufficient capital in accordance with SBA regulations. Such actions by the SBA would, in turn, negatively affect us because HT II and HT III are our wholly owned subsidiaries. HT II and HT III were in compliance with the terms of the SBIC's leverage as of December 31, 2017 as a result of having sufficient capital as defined under the SBA regulations.

The rates of borrowings under various draws from the SBA beginning in March 2009 are set semiannually in March and September and range from 2.25% to 4.62% excluding annual fees. Interest payments on SBA debentures are payable semiannually. There are no principal payments required on these issues prior to maturity and no prepayment penalties. Debentures under the SBA generally mature ten years after being borrowed. Based on the initial draw down date of March 2009, the initial maturity of SBA debentures will occur in March 2019. In addition, the SBA charges a fee that is set annually, depending on the Federal fiscal year the leverage commitment was delegated by the SBA, regardless of the date that the leverage was drawn by the SBIC. The annual fees related to HT II debentures that pooled on September 22, 2010 were 0.406% and 0.285%, depending upon the year in which the underlying commitment was closed. The annual fees on other debentures have been set at 0.906%. The annual fees related to HT III debentures that pooled on March 27, 2013 were 0.804%. The annual fees on other debentures have been set at 0.515%. The rates of borrowings on our SBA debentures range from 3.05% to 5.53% when including these annual fees.

The average amount of debentures outstanding for the year ended December 31, 2017 for HT II was approximately \$41.2 million with an average interest rate of approximately 4.49%. The average amount of debentures outstanding for

the year ended December 31, 2017 for HT III was approximately \$149.0 million with an average interest rate of approximately 3.41%.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the components of interest expense and related fees and cash paid for interest expense for the SBA debentures are as follows:

(in thousands)	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Interest expense	\$ 6,969	\$ 6,988	\$ 6,969
Amortization of debt issuance cost (loan fees)	640	671	667
<b>Total interest expense and fees</b>	<b>\$ 7,609</b>	<b>\$ 7,659</b>	<b>\$ 7,636</b>

Cash paid for interest expense	\$ 6,942	\$ 6,961	\$ 6,942
--------------------------------	----------	----------	----------

In aggregate, at December 31, 2017, with our net investment of \$118.5 million, HT II and HT III have the capacity to issue a total of \$190.2 million of SBA-guaranteed debentures, subject to SBA approval. At December 31, 2017, we have issued \$190.2 million in SBA-guaranteed debentures in our SBIC subsidiaries.

We reported the following SBA debentures outstanding principal balances as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016:

(in thousands)

Issuance/Pooling Date	Maturity Date	Interest Rate <sup>(1)</sup>	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
March 25, 2009	March 1, 2019	5.53%	\$ 18,400	\$ 18,400
September 23, 2009	September 1, 2019	4.64%	3,400	3,400
September 22, 2010	September 1, 2020	3.62%	6,500	6,500
September 22, 2010	September 1, 2020	3.50%	22,900	22,900
March 29, 2011	March 1, 2021	4.37%	28,750	28,750
September 21, 2011	September 1, 2021	3.16%	25,000	25,000
March 21, 2012	March 1, 2022	3.28%	25,000	25,000
March 21, 2012	March 1, 2022	3.05%	11,250	11,250
September 19, 2012	September 1, 2022	3.05%	24,250	24,250
March 27, 2013	March 1, 2023	3.16%	24,750	24,750
<b>Total SBA Debentures</b>			<b>\$ 190,200</b>	<b>\$ 190,200</b>

(1) Interest rate includes annual charge

**2019 Notes**

In April and July 2012, we issued \$84.5 million in aggregate principal amount of 7.00% notes due 2019 (the April 2019 Notes). In September and October 2012, we issued \$85.9 million in aggregate principal amount of 7.00% notes due 2019 (the September 2019 Notes). The April 2019 Notes and September 2019 Notes are together referred to as the

2019 Notes .

In April 2015, we redeemed \$20.0 million of the \$84.5 million issued and outstanding aggregate principal amount of April 2019 Notes, as previously approved by the Board of Directors. In December 2015, we redeemed \$40.0 million of the \$85.9 million issued and outstanding aggregate principal amount of September 2019 Notes, as previously approved by the Board of Directors. The remaining 2019 Notes were fully redeemed on February 24, 2017.

As of December 31, 2016, the 2019 Notes payable outstanding principal balance consisted of:

<b>(in thousands)</b>	<b>December 31, 2016</b>
April 2019 Notes	\$ 64,490
September 2019 Notes	45,874
<b>Total 2019 Notes principal outstanding</b>	<b>\$ 110,364</b>

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

The April 2019 Notes bore interest at a rate of 7.00% per year and traded on the NYSE under the trading symbol HTGZ. The September 2019 Notes bore interest at a rate of 7.00% per year and traded on the NYSE under the trading symbol HTGY. For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the components of interest expense and related fees and cash paid for interest expense for the 2019 Notes are as follows:

(in thousands)	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Interest expense	\$ 1,159	\$ 7,725	\$ 10,899
Amortization of debt issuance cost (loan fees)	1,546	639	2,167
<b>Total interest expense and fees</b>	<b>\$ 2,705</b>	<b>\$ 8,364</b>	<b>\$ 13,066</b>
Cash paid for interest expense	\$ 1,911	\$ 7,726	\$ 11,132

***2022 Notes***

On October 23, 2017, we issued \$150.0 million in aggregate principal amount of the 2022 Notes. The 2022 Notes were issued pursuant to the 2022 Notes Indenture. The sale of the 2022 Notes generated net proceeds of approximately \$147.5 million, including a public offering discount of \$826,500. Aggregate estimated offering expenses in connection with the transaction, including the underwriter's discount and commissions of \$975,000, were approximately \$1.7 million.

The 2022 Notes mature on October 23, 2022, unless previously repurchased in accordance with their terms. The 2022 Notes bear interest at a rate of 4.625% per year payable semiannually in arrears on April 23 and October 23 of each year, commencing on April 23, 2018.

The 2022 Notes are unsecured obligations of ours that rank senior in right of payment to all of our existing and future indebtedness that is expressly subordinated, or junior, in right of payment to the 2022 Notes. The 2022 Notes are not guaranteed by any of our current or future subsidiaries. The 2022 Notes rank pari passu, or equally, in right of payment with all of our existing and future liabilities that are not so subordinated, or junior. The 2022 Notes effectively rank subordinated, or junior, to any of our secured indebtedness (including unsecured indebtedness that we later secure) to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness. The 2022 Notes rank structurally subordinated, or junior, to all existing and future indebtedness (including trade payables) incurred by subsidiaries, financing vehicles or similar facilities of ours.

We may redeem some or all of the 2022 Notes at any time, or from time to time, at the redemption price set forth under the terms of the indenture after September 23, 2022. No sinking fund is provided for the 2022 Notes. The 2022 Notes were issued in denominations of \$2,000 and integral multiples of \$1,000 thereof. As of December 31, 2017, we were in compliance with the terms of the 2022 Notes Indenture.

As of December 31, 2017, the components of the carrying value of the 2022 Notes were as follows:

(in thousands)

December 31, 2017



Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Principal amount of debt	\$	150,000
Unamortized debt issuance cost		(1,633)
Original issue discount, net of accretion		(795)
<b>Carrying value of 2022 Notes</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>147,572</b>

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the components of interest expense and related fees and cash paid for interest expense for the 2022 Notes are as follows:

(in thousands)	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Interest expense	\$ 1,305	\$	\$
Amortization of debt issuance cost (loan fees)	49		
Accretion of original issue discount	31		
<b>Total interest expense and fees</b>	<b>\$ 1,385</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>\$</b>
Cash paid for interest expense	\$	\$	\$

**2024 Notes**

On July 14, 2014, we and U.S. Bank, N.A. (the 2024 Trustee ), entered into the Third Supplemental Indenture (the Third Supplemental Indenture ) to the Base Indenture between us and the 2024 Trustee, dated July 14, 2014, relating to our issuance, offer and sale of \$100.0 million aggregate principal amount of 2024 Notes. On August 6, 2014, the underwriters issued notification to exercise their over-allotment option for an additional \$3.0 million in aggregate principal amount of the 2024 Notes.

On May 2, 2016, we closed an underwritten public offering of an additional \$72.9 million in aggregate principal amount of the 2024 Notes. The \$72.9 million in aggregate principal amount includes \$65.4 million from the initial offering on April 21, 2016 and \$7.5 million as a result of underwriters exercising a portion of their option to purchase up to an additional \$9.8 million in aggregate principal to cover overallotments on April 29, 2016.

On June 27, 2016, we closed an underwritten public offering of an additional \$60.0 million in aggregate principal amount of the 2024 Notes. On June 30, 2016, the underwriters exercised their option to purchase up to an additional \$9.0 million in aggregate principal to cover overallotments, resulting in total aggregate principal of \$69.0 million from the offering.

On October 11, 2016, we entered into a debt distribution agreement, pursuant to which it may offer for sale, from time to time, up to \$150.0 million in aggregate principal amount of 2024 Notes through FBR Capital Markets & Co. acting as its sales agent (the 2024 Notes Agent ). Sales of the 2024 Notes may be made in negotiated transactions or transactions that are deemed to be at the market offerings as defined in Rule 415 under the Securities Act, including sales made directly on the NYSE, or similar securities exchange or sales made through a market maker other than on an exchange at prices related to prevailing market prices or at negotiated prices.

On October 24, 2017, our Board of Directors approved a redemption of \$75.0 million of the outstanding aggregate principal amount of the 2024 Notes, which were redeemed on November 23, 2017.

The 2024 Notes Agent receives a commission from us equal to up to 2.00% of the gross sales of any 2024 Notes sold through the 2024 Notes Agent under the debt distribution agreement. The 2024 Notes Agent is not required to sell any specific principal amount of 2024 Notes, but will use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its sales and trading practices to sell the 2024 Notes. The 2024 Notes are expected to trade flat, which means that purchasers in the

secondary market will not pay, and sellers will not receive, any accrued and unpaid interest on the 2024 Notes that is not reflected in the trading price.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, we sold 225,457 notes for approximately \$5.6 million in aggregate principal amount. During the year ended December 31, 2016, we sold 317,125 notes for approximately \$7.9 million in aggregate principal amount. As of December 31, 2017, approximately \$136.4 million in aggregate principal amount remains available for issuance and sale under the debt distribution agreement.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

All issuances of 2024 Notes rank equally in right of payment and form a single series of notes.

The 2024 Notes will mature on July 30, 2024 and may be redeemed in whole or in part at our option at any time or from time to time on or after July 30, 2017, upon not less than 30 days nor more than 60 days written notice by mail prior to the date fixed for redemption thereof, at a redemption price of 100% of the outstanding principal amount thereof plus accrued and unpaid interest payments otherwise payable for the then-current quarterly interest period accrued to but not including the date fixed for redemption. The 2024 Notes bear interest at a rate of 6.25% per year payable quarterly on January 30, April 30, July 30 and October 30 of each year, commencing on July 30, 2014, and trade on the NYSE under the trading symbol HTGX.

On February 9, 2018, our Board of Directors approved a redemption of \$100.0 million of the remaining outstanding aggregate principal amount of the 2024 Notes, which were redeemed on April 2, 2018.

The 2024 Notes are our direct unsecured obligations and rank: (i) *pari passu* with our other outstanding and future senior unsecured indebtedness; (ii) senior to any of our future indebtedness that expressly provides it is subordinated to the 2024 Notes; (iii) effectively subordinated to all of our existing and future secured indebtedness (including indebtedness that is initially unsecured to which we subsequently grant security), to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness; (iv) structurally subordinated to all existing and future indebtedness and other obligations of any of our subsidiaries.

The Base Indenture, as supplemented by the Third Supplemental Indenture, contains certain covenants including covenants requiring us to comply with (regardless of whether it is subject to) the asset coverage requirements set forth in Section 18(a)(1)(A) of the 1940 Act as modified by Section 61(a)(1) of the 1940 Act and to comply with the restrictions on dividends or other distributions as well as the purchase of capital stock set forth in Section 18(a)(1)(B) of the 1940 Act as modified by Section 61(a)(1) of the 1940 Act. These covenants are subject to important limitations and exceptions that are described in the Base Indenture, as supplemented by the Third Supplemental Indenture. The Base Indenture, as supplemented by the Third Supplemental Indenture, also contains certain reporting requirements, including a requirement that we provide financial information to the holders of the 2024 Notes and the 2024 Trustee if we should no longer be subject to the reporting requirements under the Exchange Act. The Base Indenture provides for customary events of default and further provides that the 2024 Trustee or the holders of 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding 2024 Notes in a series may declare such 2024 Notes immediately due and payable upon the occurrence of any event of default after expiration of any applicable grace period. As of December 31, 2017, we were in compliance with the terms of the Base Indenture, as supplemented by the Third Supplemental Indenture.

As of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, the components of the carrying value of the 2024 Notes were as follows:

<b>(in thousands)</b>	<b>December 31, 2017</b>	<b>December 31, 2016</b>
Principal amount of debt	\$ 183,510	\$ 252,873
Unamortized debt issuance cost	(4,591)	(7,482)
Original issue premium, net of amortization	82	99
<b>Carrying value of 2024 Notes</b>	<b>\$ 179,001</b>	<b>\$ 245,490</b>



**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the components of interest expense and related fees and cash paid for interest expense for the 2024 Notes are as follows:

(in thousands)	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Interest expense	\$ 15,610	\$ 11,775	\$ 6,437
Amortization of debt issuance cost (loan fees)	3,050	686	333
Amortization of original issue premium	(56)	3	
<b>Total interest expense and fees</b>	<b>\$ 18,604</b>	<b>\$ 12,464</b>	<b>\$ 6,770</b>
Cash paid for interest expense	\$ 16,370	\$ 10,873	\$ 6,437

***2021 Asset-Backed Notes***

On November 13, 2014, we completed a \$237.4 million term debt securitization in connection with which an affiliate of ours made an offer of \$129.3 million in aggregate principal amount of fixed-rate asset-backed notes (the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes), which were rated A(sf) by Kroll Bond Rating Agency, Inc. The 2021 Asset-Backed Notes were sold by Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2014-1 pursuant to a note purchase agreement, dated as of November 13, 2014, by and among us, the 2014 Trust Depositor, the 2014 Securitization Issuer, and Guggenheim Securities, LLC, as initial purchaser, and are backed by a pool of senior loans made to certain of our portfolio companies and secured by certain assets of those portfolio companies and are to be serviced by us. The securitization has an 18-month reinvestment period during which time principal collections may be reinvested into additional eligible loans. Interest on the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes is paid, to the extent of funds available, at a fixed rate of 3.524% per annum. The 2021 Asset-Backed Notes have a stated maturity of April 16, 2021.

As part of this transaction, we entered into a sale and contribution agreement with the 2014 Trust Depositor under which we have agreed to sell or have contributed to the 2014 Trust Depositor the 2014 Loans. We have made customary representations, warranties and covenants in the sale and contribution agreement with respect to the 2014 Loans as of the date of their transfer to the 2014 Trust Depositor.

In connection with the issuance and sale of the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, we have made customary representations, warranties and covenants in the note purchase agreement. The 2021 Asset-Backed Notes are secured obligations of the 2014 Securitization Issuer and are non-recourse to us. The 2014 Securitization Issuer also entered into an indenture governing the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, which includes customary representations, warranties and covenants. The 2021 Asset-Backed Notes were sold without being registered under the Securities Act (A) in the United States to qualified institutional buyers as defined in Rule 144A under the Securities Act and to institutional accredited investors (as defined in Rules 501(a)(1), (2), (3) or (7) under the Securities Act) who in each case, are qualified purchasers as defined in Section 2 (a)(51)(A) of the 1940 Act and pursuant to an exemption under the Securities Act and (B) to non-U.S. purchasers acquiring interest in the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes outside the United States in accordance with Regulation S under the Securities Act. The 2014 Securitization Issuer is not registered under the 1940 Act in reliance on an exemption provided by Section 3(c)(7) thereof and Rule 3a-7 thereunder. In addition, the 2014 Trust Depositor entered into an amended and restated trust agreement in respect of the 2014 Securitization Issuer, which includes customary representation, warranties and covenants.

The 2014 Loans are serviced by us pursuant to a sale and servicing agreement, which contains customary representations, warranties and covenants. We perform certain servicing and administrative functions with respect to the 2014 Loans. We are entitled to receive a monthly fee from the 2014 Securitization Issuer for servicing the 2014 Loans. This servicing fee is equal to the product of one-twelfth (or in the case of the first payment date, a fraction equal to the number of days from and including October 5, 2014 through and including December 5, 2014 over 360) of 2.00% and the aggregate outstanding principal balance of the 2014 Loans plus collections on deposit in the 2014 Securitization Issuer's collections account, as of the first day of the related

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

collection period (the period from the 5th day of the immediately preceding calendar month through the 4th day of the calendar month in which a payment date occurs, and for the first payment date, the period from and including October 5, 2014, to the close of business on December 5, 2014). We also serve as administrator to the 2014 Securitization Issuer under an administration agreement, which includes customary representations, warranties and covenants.

At December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes had an outstanding principal balance of \$49.2 million and \$109.2 million, respectively.

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the components of interest expense and related fees and cash paid for interest expense for the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes are as follows:

(in thousands)	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Interest expense	\$ 2,830	\$ 4,366	\$ 4,557
Amortization of debt issuance cost (loan fees)	731	1,071	902
<b>Total interest expense and fees</b>	<b>\$ 3,561</b>	<b>\$ 5,437</b>	<b>\$ 5,459</b>
Cash paid for interest expense	\$ 3,036	\$ 4,396	\$ 4,557

Under the terms of the 2021 Asset Backed Notes, we are required to maintain a reserve cash balance, funded through interest and principal collections from the underlying securitized debt portfolio, which may be used to pay monthly interest and principal payments on the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes. We have segregated these funds and classified them as restricted cash. There was approximately \$3.7 million and \$8.3 million of restricted cash as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively, funded through interest collections.

***Convertible Notes******2016 Convertible Notes***

In April 2011, we issued \$75.0 million in aggregate principal amount of 2016 Convertible Notes. The 2016 Convertible Notes were fully settled on or before their contractual maturity date of April 15, 2016.

Prior to the close of business on October 14, 2015, holders were able to convert their 2016 Convertible Notes only under certain circumstances set forth in the indenture governing the 2016 Convertible Notes. On or after October 15, 2015 until the close of business on the scheduled trading day immediately preceding the maturity date, holders were able to convert their 2016 Convertible Notes at any time. Throughout the life of the 2016 Convertible Notes, holders of approximately \$74.8 million of the 2016 Convertible Notes exercised their conversion rights. These 2016 Convertible Notes were settled with a combination of cash equal to the outstanding principal amount of the 2016 Convertible Notes and approximately 1.6 million shares of our common stock, or \$24.3 million.

The 2016 Convertible Notes were accounted for in accordance with ASC Subtopic 470-20 ( Debt Instruments with Conversion and Other Options ). In accounting for the 2016 Convertible Notes, we estimated at the time of issuance that the values of the debt and the embedded conversion feature of the 2016 Convertible Notes were approximately



92.8% and 7.2%, respectively. The original issue discount of 7.2% attributable to the conversion feature of the 2016 Convertible Notes was recorded in capital in excess of par value in the Consolidated Statement of Assets and Liabilities. As a result, we recorded interest expense comprised of both stated interest expense as well as accretion of the original issue discount resulting in an estimated effective interest rate of approximately 8.1%.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the components of interest expense, fees and cash paid for interest expense for the 2016 Convertible Notes were as follows:

(in thousands)	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Interest expense	\$	\$ 352	\$ 1,007
Amortization of debt issuance cost (loan fees)		44	131
Accretion of original issue discount		82	246
<b>Total interest expense and fees</b>	\$	\$ 478	\$ 1,384
Cash paid for interest expense	\$	\$ 440	\$ 1,057

The estimated effective interest rate of the debt component of the 2016 Convertible Notes, equal to the stated interest of 6.0% plus the accretion of the original issue discount, was approximately 8.1% for the years ended December 31, 2016.

*2022 Convertible Notes*

On January 25, 2017, we issued \$230.0 million in aggregate principal amount of the 2022 Convertible Notes, which amount includes the additional \$30.0 million aggregate principal amount of 2022 Convertible Notes issued pursuant to the initial purchaser's exercise in full of its over-allotment option. The 2022 Convertible Notes were issued pursuant to an Indenture, dated January 25, 2017 (the "2022 Convertible Notes Indenture"), between us and U.S. Bank, National Association, as trustee (the "2022 Convertible Notes Trustee"). The sale of the 2022 Convertible Notes generated net proceeds of approximately \$225.5 million, including \$4.5 million of debt issuance costs.

The 2022 Convertible Notes mature on February 1, 2022, unless previously converted or repurchased in accordance with their terms. The 2022 Convertible Notes bear interest at a rate of 4.375% per year payable semiannually in arrears on February 1 and August 1 of each year, commencing on August 1, 2017.

The 2022 Convertible Notes are our unsecured obligations and rank senior in right of payment to our future indebtedness that is expressly subordinated in right of payment to the 2022 Convertible Notes; equal in right of payment to our existing and future indebtedness that is not so subordinated; effectively junior in right of payment to any of our secured indebtedness (including unsecured indebtedness that we later secure) to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness; and structurally junior to all existing and future indebtedness (including trade payables) incurred by our subsidiaries, financing vehicles or similar facilities.

Prior to the close of business on the business day immediately preceding August 1, 2021, holders may convert their 2022 Convertible Notes only under certain circumstances set forth in the 2022 Convertible Notes Indenture. On or after August 1, 2021 until the close of business on the scheduled trading day immediately preceding the maturity date, holders may convert their 2022 Convertible Notes at any time. Upon conversion, we will pay or deliver, as the case may be, at our election, cash, shares of our common stock or a combination of cash and shares of our common stock. The conversion rate is initially 60.9366 shares of common stock per \$1,000 principal amount of 2022 Convertible Notes (equivalent to an initial conversion price of approximately \$16.41 per share of common stock). The conversion

rate will be subject to adjustment in some events but will not be adjusted for any accrued and unpaid interest. In addition, if certain corporate events occur prior to the maturity date, we will increase the conversion rate for a holder who elects to convert our 2022 Convertible Notes in connection with such a corporate event in certain circumstances. As of December 31, 2017, the conversion rate was 60.9366 shares of common stock per \$1,000 principal amount of Convertible Senior Notes (equivalent to an adjusted conversion price of approximately \$16.41 per share of common stock).

We may not redeem the 2022 Convertible Notes at our option prior to maturity. No sinking fund is provided for the 2022 Convertible Notes. In addition, if certain corporate events occur, holders of the 2022 Convertible

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

Notes may require us to repurchase for cash all or part of their 2022 Convertible Notes at a repurchase price equal to 100% of the principal amount of the 2022 Convertible Notes to be repurchased, plus accrued and unpaid interest through, but excluding, the required repurchase date.

The 2022 Convertible Notes Indenture contains certain covenants, including covenants requiring us to comply with Section 18(a)(1)(A) of the 1940 Act as modified by Section 61(a)(1) of the 1940 Act and to provide financial information to the holders of the 2022 Convertible Notes and the 2022 Convertible Notes Trustee if we cease to be subject to the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act. These covenants are subject to important limitations and exceptions that are described in the 2022 Convertible Notes Indenture. We offered and sold the 2022 Convertible Notes to the initial purchaser in reliance on the exemption from registration provided by Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act, for resale by the initial purchaser to qualified institutional buyers (as defined in the Securities Act) pursuant to the exemption from registration provided by Rule 144A under the Securities Act. We relied on these exemptions from registration based in part on representations made by the initial purchaser in connection with the sale of the 2022 Convertible Notes.

The 2022 Convertible Notes are accounted for in accordance with ASC Subtopic 470-20 ( Debt Instruments with Conversion and Other Options ). In accounting for the 2022 Convertible Notes, we estimated at the time of issuance that the values of the debt and the embedded conversion feature of the 2022 Convertible Notes were approximately 98.5% and 1.5%, respectively. The original issue discount of 1.5%, or \$3.4 million, attributable to the conversion feature of the 2022 Convertible Notes was recorded in capital in excess of par value in the Consolidated Statement of Assets and Liabilities. As a result, we record interest expense comprised of both stated interest expense as well as accretion of the OID resulting in an estimated effective interest rate of approximately 4.76%.

As of December 31, 2017, the components of the carrying value of the 2022 Convertible Notes were as follows:

<b>(in thousands)</b>	<b>December 31, 2017</b>
Principal amount of debt	\$ 230,000
Unamortized debt issuance cost	(3,715)
Original issue discount, net of accretion	(2,797)
<b>Carrying value of 2022 Convertible Notes</b>	<b>\$ 223,488</b>

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the components of interest expense, fees and cash paid for interest expense for the 2022 Convertible Notes were as follows:

<b>(in thousands)</b>	<b>Year Ended December 31,</b>		
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>	<b>2015</b>
Interest expense	\$ 9,392	\$	\$
Amortization of debt issuance cost (loan fees)	781		
Accretion of original issue discount	615		
<b>Total interest expense and fees</b>	<b>\$ 10,788</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>\$</b>

Cash paid for interest expense	\$ 5,199	\$	\$
--------------------------------	----------	----	----

The estimated effective interest of the debt component of the 2022 Convertible Notes, equal to the stated interest rate of 4.375% plus the accretion of the original issue discount, was approximately 4.76% for the year ended December 31, 2017. As of December 31, 2017, we are in compliance with the terms of the indentures governing the 2022 Convertible Notes.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Credit Facilities***

As of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, we have two available secured credit facilities, the Wells Facility and the Union Bank Facility.

*Wells Facility*

On June 29, 2015, we, through a special purpose wholly owned subsidiary, Hercules Funding II LLC ( Hercules Funding II ), entered into the Wells Facility with Wells Fargo Capital Finance, LLC, as a lender and as the arranger and the administrative agent, and the lenders party thereto from time to time.

The Wells Facility matures on August 2, 2019, unless terminated sooner in accordance with its terms.

Under the Wells Facility, Wells Fargo Capital Finance, LLC made commitments of \$75.0 million, Alostar Bank of Commerce made commitments of \$20.0 million, and Everbank Commercial Finance Inc. made commitments of \$25.0 million. The Wells Facility contains an accordion feature, in which we can increase the credit line up to an aggregate of \$300.0 million, funded by additional lenders and with the agreement of Wells Fargo and subject to other customary conditions. We expect to continue discussions with various other potential lenders to join the facility; however, there can be no assurances that additional lenders will join the Wells Facility. Borrowings under the Wells Facility generally bear interest at a rate per annum equal to LIBOR plus 3.25%, and the Wells Facility has an advance rate of 50% against eligible debt investments. The Wells Facility is secured by all of the assets of Hercules Funding II. The Wells Facility requires payment of a non-use fee on a scale of 0.0% to 0.50% depending on the average monthly outstanding balance under the facility relative to the maximum amount of commitments at such time. For the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, this non-use fee was approximately \$604,000 and \$483,000, respectively.

The Wells Facility also includes various financial and other covenants applicable to us and our subsidiaries, in addition to those applicable to Hercules Funding II, including covenants relating to certain changes of control of us and Hercules Funding II. Among other things, these covenants also require us to maintain certain financial ratios, including a maximum debt to worth ratio, minimum interest coverage ratio, minimum portfolio funding liquidity, and a minimum tangible net worth in an amount, when added to outstanding subordinated indebtedness, that is in excess of \$500.0 million plus 90% of the cumulative amount of equity raised after June 30, 2014.

As of December 31, 2017, the minimum tangible net worth covenant has increased to \$737.0 million as a result of the March 2015 follow-on public offering of 7.6 million shares of common stock for total gross proceeds of approximately \$100.4 million, the issuance of 7.3 million shares of common stock issued under the Prior Equity Distribution Agreement for gross proceeds of \$95.0 million during the year ended December 31, 2016 and the issuance of 4.9 million shares of common stock issued under the Prior Equity Distribution Agreement and the Equity Distribution Agreement for gross proceeds of \$67.9 million during the year ended December 31, 2017. See Note 6 Stockholder s Equity included in the notes to our consolidated financial statements appearing elsewhere in this prospectus.

The Wells Facility provides for customary events of default, including, without limitation, with respect to payment defaults, breach of representations and covenants, certain key person provisions, cross acceleration provisions to certain other debt, lien and judgment limitations, and bankruptcy.

On June 20, 2011, we paid \$1.1 million in structuring fees in connection with the original Wells Facility. In connection with an amendment to the original Wells Facility in August 2014, we paid an additional \$750,000 in structuring fees and in connection with the amendment in December 2015, we paid an additional \$188,000 in structuring fees. These fees are being amortized through the end of the term of the Wells Facility.

We had aggregate draws of \$8.5 million on the available facility during the year ended December 31, 2017 offset by repayments of \$13.5 million. There was \$5.0 million of borrowings outstanding on this facility as of December 31, 2016. There were no borrowings outstanding on the facility as of December 31, 2017.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the components of interest expense and related fees and cash paid for interest expense for the Wells Facility are as follows:

<b>(in thousands)</b>	<b>Year Ended</b>		
	<b>December 31,</b>		
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>	<b>2015</b>
Interest expense	\$ 2	\$ 539	\$ 578
Amortization of debt issuance cost (loan fees)	324	492	361
<b>Total interest expense and fees</b>	<b>\$ 326</b>	<b>\$ 1,031</b>	<b>\$ 939</b>
Cash paid for interest expense	\$ 41	\$ 577	\$ 402

*Union Bank Facility*

On May 5, 2016, we, through a special purpose wholly owned subsidiary, Hercules Funding III LLC ( Hercules Funding III ), as borrower, entered into the Union Bank Facility with MUFG Union Bank, as the arranger and administrative agent, and the lenders party to the Union Bank Facility from time to time. The Union Bank Facility replaced the Prior Union Bank Facility. Any references to amounts related to the Union Bank Facility prior to May 5, 2016 were incurred and relate to the Prior Union Bank Facility.

On July 18, 2016, we entered into the First Amendment to the Loan and Security Agreement, dated as of May 5, 2016 with MUFG Union Bank, N.A. The Amendment amends certain definitions relating to borrowings which accrue interest based on the London Interbank Offered Rate ( LIBOR Loans ) and (ii) the method(s) for calculating interest on and the paying of certain fees related to such LIBOR Loans.

Under the Union Bank Facility, MUFG Union Bank made commitments of \$75.0 million. The Union Bank Facility contains an accordion feature, in which we can increase the credit line up to an aggregate of \$200.0 million, funded by additional lenders and with the agreement of MUFG Union Bank and subject to other customary conditions. There can be no assurances that additional lenders will join the Union Bank Facility to increase available borrowings. Borrowings under the Union Bank Facility generally bear interest at either (i) if such borrowing is a base rate loan, a base rate per annum equal to the federal funds rate plus 1.00%, LIBOR plus 1.00% or MUFG Union Bank's prime rate, in each case, plus a margin of 1.25% or (ii) if such borrowing is a LIBOR loan, a rate per annum equal to LIBOR plus 3.25%, and the Union Bank Facility generally has an advance rate of 50% against eligible debt investments. The Union Bank Facility is secured by all of the assets of Hercules Funding III.

We paid a one-time \$562,500 structuring fee in connection with the Union Bank Facility. The Union Bank Facility requires payment of a non-use fee during the revolving credit availability period on a scale of 0.25% to 0.50% depending on the average monthly outstanding balance under the facility relative to the maximum amount of commitments at such time. Although we did not incur any non-use fees under the Union Bank Facility prior to May 5, 2016, for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, we incurred non-use fees under the Union Bank Facility and Prior Union Bank Facility of approximately \$380,000 and \$356,000, respectively.

The Union Bank Facility also includes various financial and other covenants applicable to us and our subsidiaries, in addition to those applicable to Hercules Funding III, including covenants relating to certain changes of control of the



Company and Hercules Funding III. Among other things, these covenants also require us to maintain certain financial ratios, including a maximum debt to worth ratio, minimum interest coverage ratio, minimum portfolio funding liquidity, and a minimum tangible net worth in an amount that is in excess of \$500.0 million plus 90% of the cumulative amount of equity raised after June 30, 2014.

As of December 31, 2017, the minimum tangible net worth covenant increased to \$783.9 million as a result of the March 2015 follow-on public offering of 7.6 million shares of common stock for total net proceeds of approximately \$100.1 million, the issuance of 7.3 million shares of common stock issued under the Prior Equity

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

Distribution Agreement for net proceeds of \$92.8 million during the year ended December 31, 2016, and the issuance of 4.9 million shares of common stock issued under the Prior Equity Distribution Agreement and the Equity Distribution Agreement for net proceeds of \$66.9 million during the year ended December 31, 2017. See Note 6 Stockholder's Equity included in the notes to our consolidated financial statements appearing elsewhere in this prospectus.

The Union Bank Facility provides for customary events of default, including with respect to payment defaults, breach of representations and covenants, servicer defaults, certain key person provisions, cross default provisions to certain other debt, lien and judgment limitations, and bankruptcy.

The Union Bank Facility matures on May 5, 2020, unless terminated sooner in accordance with its terms.

In connection with the Union Bank Facility, we and Hercules Funding III also entered into the Sale and Servicing Agreement, dated May 5, 2016 (the "Sale Agreement"), by and among Hercules Funding III, as borrower, us, as originator and servicer, and MUFG Union Bank, as agent. Under the Sale Agreement, we agree to (i) sell or transfer certain loans to Hercules Funding III under the Union Bank Facility and (ii) act as servicer for the loans sold or transferred.

We did not make any draws or repayments on the available facility during the year ended December 31, 2017. We had aggregate draws of \$90.0 million during the year ended December 31, 2016, offset by repayments of \$90.0 million. At December 31, 2017 and 2016, there were no borrowings outstanding on the Union Bank Facility.

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the components of interest expense and related fees and cash paid for interest expense for the previous and current Union Bank Facility are as follows:

(in thousands)	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Interest expense	\$	\$ 189	\$
Amortization of debt issuance cost (loan fees)	388	356	61
<b>Total interest expense and fees</b>	<b>\$ 388</b>	<b>\$ 545</b>	<b>\$ 61</b>
Cash paid for interest expense	\$ 80	\$ 38	\$

**Distributions**

The following table summarizes our distributions declared and paid, to be paid or reinvested on all shares, including restricted stock, to date:

Date Declared	Record Date	Payment Date	Amount Per Share
Cumulative distributions declared and paid prior to January 1, 2016			\$ 11.23
February 17, 2016	March 7, 2016	March 14, 2016	0.31

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

April 27, 2016	May 16, 2016	May 23, 2016	0.31
July 27, 2016	August 15, 2016	August 22, 2016	0.31
October 24, 2016	November 14, 2016	November 21, 2016	0.31
February 16, 2017	March 6, 2017	March 13, 2017	0.31
April 26, 2017	May 15, 2017	May 22, 2017	0.31
July 26, 2017	August 14, 2017	August 21, 2017	0.31
October 25, 2017	November 13, 2017	November 20, 2017	0.31
February 14, 2018	March 5, 2018	March 12, 2018	0.31
			<b>\$ 14.02</b>

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

On February 14, 2018, the Board of Directors declared a cash distribution of \$0.31 per share to be paid on March 12, 2018 to stockholders of record as of March 5, 2018. This distribution represented our fiftieth consecutive distribution since our IPO, bringing the total cumulative distribution to date to \$14.02 per share.

Our Board of Directors maintains a variable distribution policy with the objective of distributing four quarterly distributions in an amount that approximates 90-100% of our taxable quarterly income or potential annual income for a particular taxable year. In addition, at the end of our taxable year, our Board of Directors may choose to pay an additional special distribution, or fifth distribution, so that we may distribute approximately all of our annual taxable income in the taxable year in which it was earned, or may elect to maintain the option to spill over our excess taxable income into the following taxable year as part of any future distribution payments.

Distributions from our taxable income (including gains) to a stockholder generally will be treated as a dividend for U.S. federal income tax purposes to the extent of such stockholder's allocable share of our current or accumulated earnings and profits. Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits would generally be treated first as a return of capital to the extent of a stockholder's tax basis in our shares, and any remaining distributions would be treated as a capital gain. The determination of the tax attributes of our distributions is made annually as of the end of our taxable year based upon our taxable income for the full taxable year and distributions paid for the full taxable year. Of the distributions declared during the fiscal years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, 100% were distributions derived from our current and accumulated earnings and profits. There can be no certainty to stockholders that this determination is representative of the tax attributes of our 2018 distributions to stockholders.

We maintain an "opt out" dividend reinvestment plan that provides for reinvestment of our distribution on behalf of our stockholders, unless a stockholder elects to receive cash. As a result, if our Board of Directors authorizes, and we declare a cash distribution, then our stockholders who have not "opted out" of our dividend reinvestment plan will have their cash distribution automatically reinvested in additional shares of our common stock, rather than receiving the cash distributions.

Shortly after the close of each calendar year information identifying the source of the distribution (i.e., paid from ordinary income, paid from net capital gains on the sale of securities, and/or a return of paid-in-capital surplus which is a nontaxable distribution, if any) will be provided to our stockholders subject to information reporting. To the extent our taxable earnings fall below the total amount of our distributions for any taxable year, a portion of those distributions may be deemed a tax return of capital to our stockholders.

We expect to qualify to be subject to tax as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code. In order to be subject to tax as a RIC, we are required to satisfy certain annual gross income and quarterly asset composition tests, as well as make distributions to our stockholders each taxable year treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes of an amount at least equal to 90% of the sum of our investment company taxable income, determined without regard to any deduction for dividends paid, plus our net tax-exempt income, if any. Upon being eligible to be subject to tax as a RIC, we would be entitled to deduct such distributions we pay to our stockholders in determining the overall components of our taxable income. Components of our taxable income include our taxable interest, dividend and fee income, reduced by certain deductions, as well as taxable net realized securities gains. Taxable income generally differs from net income for financial reporting purposes due to temporary and permanent differences in the recognition of income and expenses and generally excludes net unrealized appreciation or depreciation as such gains or losses are not included in taxable income until they are realized. In connection with maintaining our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC, among other things, we have made and intend to continue to make the requisite distributions to

our stockholders each taxable year, which generally should relieve us from corporate-level U.S. federal income taxes.

As a RIC, we will be subject to a 4% nondeductible U.S. federal excise tax on certain undistributed income and gains unless we make distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes in a timely

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

manner to our stockholders in respect of each calendar year of an amount generally at least equal to the Excise Tax Avoidance Requirement. We will not be subject to this excise tax on any amount on which we incurred U.S. federal corporate income tax (such as the tax imposed on a RIC's retained net capital gains).

Depending on the level of taxable income earned in a taxable year, we may choose to carry over taxable income in excess of current taxable year distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes from such taxable income into the next taxable year and incur a 4% excise tax on such taxable income, as required. The maximum amount of excess taxable income that may be carried over for distribution in the next taxable year under the Code is the total amount of distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes paid in the following taxable year, subject to certain declaration and payment guidelines. To the extent we choose to carry over taxable income into the next taxable year, distributions declared and paid by us in a taxable year may differ from our taxable income for that taxable year as such distributions may include the distribution of current taxable year taxable income, the distribution of prior taxable year taxable income carried over into and distributed in the current taxable year, or returns of capital.

We can offer no assurance that we will achieve results that will permit the payment of any cash distributions and, if we issue senior securities, we will be prohibited from making distributions if doing so causes us to fail to maintain the asset coverage ratios stipulated by the 1940 Act or if distributions are limited by the terms of any of our borrowings. Our ability to make distributions will be limited by the asset coverage requirements under the 1940 Act.

We intend to distribute 100% of our spillover earnings from ordinary income for the year ended December 31, 2017 to our stockholders during 2018.

**Critical Accounting Policies**

The preparation of consolidated financial statements in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles ( GAAP ) requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the consolidated financial statements, and revenues and expenses during the period reported. On an ongoing basis, our management evaluates its estimates and assumptions, which are based on historical experience and on various other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could differ from those estimates. Changes in our estimates and assumptions could materially impact our results of operations and financial condition.

*Revision of Previously Issued Financial Statements*

It was determined that there was a misclassification in the previously issued consolidated financial statements of \$15.3 million, and \$8.0 million in the distributions for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 respectively. The amounts had been categorized as distributions of net investment income rather than distributions of realized gains and the components of net assets have been revised in the respective years to reflect the correct classification. In addition, the financial highlights in note 9 have been updated to reclassify \$0.22 and \$0.11 per share from distributions of net investment income to distributions of realized gains for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 respectively. The amounts reclassified are not material individually, or in the aggregate, and there is no impact on previously reported net assets, total distributions, and earnings per share for the years ended December 2015 and 2016. We plan to reflect the revised amounts in our quarterly consolidated financial statements in future filings containing such information.

*Valuation of Investments*

The most significant estimate inherent in the preparation of our consolidated financial statements is the valuation of investments and the related amounts of unrealized appreciation and depreciation of investments recorded.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

At December 31, 2017, approximately 93.2% of our total assets represented investments in portfolio companies whose fair value is determined in good faith by the Board of Directors. Value, as defined in Section 2(a)(41) of the 1940 Act, is (i) the market price for those securities for which a market quotation is readily available and (ii) for all other securities and assets, fair value is as determined in good faith by the Board of Directors. Our investments are carried at fair value in accordance with the 1940 Act and ASC Topic 946 and measured in accordance with ASC Topic 820. Our debt securities are primarily invested in venture capital-backed companies in technology-related industries including technology, drug discovery and development, biotechnology, life sciences, healthcare and sustainable and renewable technology at all stages of development. Given the nature of lending to these types of businesses, substantially all of our investments in these portfolio companies are considered Level 3 assets under ASC Topic 820 because there is no known or accessible market or market indexes for these investment securities to be traded or exchanged. As such, we value substantially all of our investments at fair value as determined in good faith pursuant to a consistent valuation policy by our Board of Directors in accordance with the provisions of ASC Topic 820 and the 1940 Act. Due to the inherent uncertainty in determining the fair value of investments that do not have a readily available market value, the fair value of our investments determined in good faith by our Board of Directors may differ significantly from the value that would have been used had a readily available market existed for such investments, and the differences could be material.

See [Determination of Net Asset Value](#) for a discussion of our investment valuation process.

Investments measured at fair value on a recurring basis are categorized in the tables below based upon the lowest level of significant input to the valuations as of December 31, 2017 and as of December 31, 2016. We transfer investments in and out of Level 1, 2 and 3 as of the beginning balance sheet date, based on changes in the use of observable and unobservable inputs utilized to perform the valuation for the period. During the year ended December 31, 2017, there were no transfers between Levels 1 or 2.

(in thousands)	Balance December 31, 2017	Quoted Prices In Active Markets For Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)
<b>Description</b>				
Senior Secured Debt	\$ 1,415,984	\$	\$	\$ 1,415,984
Preferred Stock	40,683			40,683
Common Stock	48,678	22,825		25,853
Warrants	36,869		5,664	31,205
Escrow Receivable	752			752
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 1,542,966</b>	<b>\$ 22,825</b>	<b>\$ 5,664</b>	<b>\$ 1,514,477</b>

(in thousands)	Balance December 31, 2016	Quoted Prices In Active Markets For Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)
<b>Description</b>				



Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Senior Secured Debt	\$ 1,328,803	\$	\$ 4,825	\$ 1,323,978
Preferred Stock	39,418			39,418
Common Stock	28,236	17,271		10,965
Warrants	27,485		3,239	24,246
Escrow Receivable	1,382			1,382
<b>Total</b>	\$ 1,425,324	\$ 17,271	\$ 8,064	\$ 1,399,989

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

The table below presents a reconciliation for all financial assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis, excluding accrued interest components, using significant unobservable inputs (Level 3) for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016.

(in thousands)	Balance January 1, 2017	Net Change in		Purchases <sup>(5)</sup>	Sales	Repayments <sup>(6)</sup>	Gross Transfers into Level 3 <sup>(3)</sup>	Gross Transfers out of Level 3 <sup>(3)</sup>	Balance December 31, 2017
		Realized Gains (Losses)	Unrealized Appreciation (Depreciation)						
Senior Debt	\$ 1,323,978	\$ (24,684)	\$ 29,610	\$ 776,648	\$	\$ (626,897)	\$	\$ (62,671)	\$ 1,415,984
Preferred Stock	39,418	(7,531)	11,955	2,683	(468)			(5,374)	40,683
Common Stock	10,965	(487)	(49,462)	3,748	(1,582)		62,671		25,853
Warrants	24,246	727	8,450	5,449	(7,303)			(364)	31,205
Escrow Receivable	1,382	261		3,127	(4,018)				752
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 1,399,989</b>	<b>\$ (31,714)</b>	<b>\$ 553</b>	<b>\$ 791,655</b>	<b>\$ (13,371)</b>	<b>\$ (626,897)</b>	<b>\$ 62,671</b>	<b>\$ (68,409)</b>	<b>\$ 1,514,477</b>

(in thousands)	Balance January 1, 2016	Net Change in		Purchases <sup>(5)</sup>	Sales	Repayments <sup>(6)</sup>	Gross Transfers into Level 3 <sup>(4)</sup>	Gross Transfers out of Level 3 <sup>(4)</sup>	Balance December 31, 2016
		Realized Gains (Losses)	Unrealized Appreciation (Depreciation)						
Senior Debt	\$ 1,102,396	\$ (6,968)	\$ (12,675)	\$ 687,353	\$	\$ (441,567)	\$	\$ (4,561)	\$ 1,323,978
Preferred Stock	35,245	(334)	(7,864)	13,873	(1,367)		626	(761)	39,418
Common Stock	1,527		(1,404)	6,081			4,761		10,965
Warrants	18,565	(116)	3,465	4,082	(1,186)			(564)	24,246
Escrow Receivable	2,967	(6)		2,009	(3,588)				1,382
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 1,160,700</b>	<b>\$ (7,424)</b>	<b>\$ (18,478)</b>	<b>\$ 713,398</b>	<b>\$ (6,141)</b>	<b>\$ (441,567)</b>	<b>\$ 5,387</b>	<b>\$ (5,886)</b>	<b>\$ 1,399,989</b>

(1) Included in net realized gains or losses in the accompanying Consolidated Statement of Operations.

(2) Included in net change in unrealized appreciation (depreciation) in the accompanying Consolidated Statement of Operations.

(3) Transfers out of Level 3 during the year ended December 31, 2017 relate to the conversion of our debt investment in Sungevity, Inc. and a portion of our debt investment in Gamma Medica, Inc. to common stock through bankruptcy transactions, IPOs of ForeScout Technologies, Inc., Aquantia Corporation, and Quanterix Corporation, and merger of our former portfolio company Cempra, Inc. and current portfolio company Melinta Therapeutics, Inc. into NASDAQ-listed company Melinta Therapeutics, Inc. Transfers into Level 3 during the year ended December 31, 2017 relate to the conversion of our debt investment in Sungevity, Inc. and a portion of our debt

investment in Gamma Medica, Inc. to common stock through bankruptcy transactions.

- (4) Transfers out of Level 3 during the year ended December 31, 2016 relate to the exercise of warrants in TPI Composites, Inc. and Touchcommerce, Inc. to common stock in an initial public offering, or IPO, and acquisition, respectively; the exercise of warrants in Ping Identity Corporation to preferred stock; the conversion of debt to equity in Optiscan Biomedical Corp and Achilles Technology Management Co II, Inc. and the conversion of our preferred shares to common shares in SCIEnergy, Inc. Transfers into Level 3 during the year ended December 31, 2016 relate to the acquisition of preferred stock as a result of the exercise of warrants in Ping Identity Corporation, the conversion of debt to equity in Optiscan Biomedical Corp and Achilles Technology Management Co II, Inc. and the conversion of our preferred shares to common shares in SCIEnergy, Inc.
- (5) Amounts listed above are inclusive of loan origination fees received at the inception of the loan which are deferred and amortized into fee income as well as the accretion of existing loan discounts and fees during the period. Escrow receivable purchases may include additions due to proceeds held in escrow from the liquidation of level 3 investments.
- (6) Amounts listed above include the acceleration and payment of loan discounts and loan fees due to early payoffs or restructures.

For the year ended December 31, 2017, approximately \$4.2 million in net unrealized appreciation and \$49.2 million in net unrealized depreciation was recorded for preferred stock and common stock Level 3 investments, respectively, relating to assets still held at the reporting date. The depreciation on common stock during the period reflects the conversion of our debt investment in Sungevity, Inc. to common stock at cost through a bankruptcy transaction and subsequent depreciation to fair value. For the same period, approximately \$10.5 million in net unrealized depreciation and \$9.0 million in net unrealized appreciation was recorded for debt and warrant Level 3 investments, respectively, relating to assets still held at the reporting date.

For the year ended December 31, 2016, approximately \$9.1 million and \$1.4 million in net unrealized depreciation was recorded for preferred stock and common stock Level 3 investments, respectively, relating to assets still held at the reporting date. For the same period, approximately \$25.7 million in net unrealized

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

depreciation and \$2.8 million in net unrealized appreciation was recorded for debt and warrant Level 3 investments, respectively, relating to assets still held at the reporting date.

The following tables provide quantitative information about our Level 3 fair value measurements as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016. In addition to the techniques and inputs noted in the tables below, according to our valuation policy we may also use other valuation techniques and methodologies when determining our fair value measurements. The tables below are not intended to be all-inclusive, but rather provide information on the significant Level 3 inputs as they relate to our fair value measurements.

The significant unobservable input used in the fair value measurement of our escrow receivables is the amount recoverable at the contractual maturity date of the escrow receivable.

Investment Type - Level 3	Fair Value at December 31, 2017		Valuation Techniques/ Methodologies	Unobservable Input <sup>(1)</sup>	Range	Weighted Average <sup>(2)</sup>
	(in thousands)					
Pharmaceuticals	\$ 44,301		Originated Within 6 Months	Origination Yield	10.71% - 12.61%	11.89%
	379,841		Market Comparable Companies	Hypothetical Market Yield	10.14% - 16.14%	12.94%
	2,257		Liquidation <sup>(3)</sup>	Premium/(Discount) Probability weighting of alternative outcomes	(0.25%) - 0.75% 100.00%	
Technology	158,916		Originated Within 6 Months	Origination Yield	9.4% - 25.11%	11.68%
	290,561		Market Comparable Companies	Hypothetical Market Yield	9.47% - 19.21%	13.55%
	22,020		Liquidation <sup>(3)</sup>	Premium/(Discount) Probability weighting of alternative outcomes	(0.25%) - 1.00% 5.00% - 100.00%	
Sustainable and Renewable Technology			Originated Within 6 Months	Origination Yield		
	33,020				11.97% - 20.06%	15.31%
	49,647		Market Comparable Companies	Hypothetical Market Yield	11.15% - 14.16%	12.13%
Medical Devices				Premium/(Discount)	0.00% - 0.25%	
	17,013		Originated Within 6 Months	Origination Yield	13.49%	13.49%
	89,869		Market Comparable Companies	Hypothetical Market Yield	9.66% - 17.57%	12.28%
Lower Middle Market				Premium/(Discount)	0.00% - 0.50%	
	97,291		Originated Within 6 Months	Origination Yield	8.29% - 12.68%	12.01%
	19,219		Liquidation <sup>(3)</sup>		10.00% - 100.00%	

Probability weighting of  
alternative outcomes

**Debt Investments Where Fair Value Approximates Cost**

35,517 Imminent Payoffs<sup>(4)</sup>  
176,512 Debt Investments Maturing in Less than One Year

**\$ 1,415,984 Total Level Three Debt Investments**

(1) The significant unobservable inputs used in the fair value measurement of our debt securities are hypothetical market yields and premiums/(discounts). The hypothetical market yield is defined as the exit price of an investment in a hypothetical market to hypothetical market participants where buyers and sellers are willing participants. The premiums (discounts) relate to company specific characteristics such as underlying investment performance, security liens, and other characteristics of the investment. Significant increases (decreases) in the inputs in isolation may result in a significantly lower (higher) fair value measurement, depending on the materiality of the investment. Debt investments in the industries noted in our Consolidated Schedule of Investments are included in the industries noted above as follows:

Pharmaceuticals, above, is comprised of debt investments in the Specialty Pharmaceuticals, Drug Discovery and Development and Drug Delivery and Biotechnology Tools industries in the Consolidated Schedule of Investments.

Technology, above, is comprised of debt investments in the Software, Semiconductors, Internet Consumer and Business Services, Consumer and Business Products, Information Services, and Communications and Networking industries in the Consolidated Schedule of Investments.

Sustainable and Renewable Technology, above, aligns with the Sustainable and Renewable Technology Industry in the Consolidated Schedule of Investments.

Medical Devices, above, is comprised of debt investments in the Surgical Devices and Medical Devices and Equipment industries in the Consolidated Schedule of Investments.

Lower Middle Market, above, is comprised of debt investments in the Communications and Networking, Electronics and Computer Hardware, Healthcare Services Other, Information Services, Internet Consumer and Business Services, Media/Content/Info, and Specialty Pharmaceuticals industries in the Consolidated Schedule of Investments.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

- (2) The weighted averages are calculated based on the fair market value of each investment.
- (3) The significant unobservable input used in the fair value measurement of impaired debt securities is the probability weighting of alternative outcomes.
- (4) Imminent payoffs represent debt investments that we expect to be fully repaid within the next three months, prior to their scheduled maturity date.

<b>Investment Type - Level</b>	<b>Fair Value at December 31, 2016</b>	<b>Valuation Techniques/ Methodologies</b>	<b>Unobservable Input<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Range</b>	<b>Weighted Average<sup>(2)</sup></b>
<b>Three Debt Investments</b>	(in thousands) \$ 102,412 434,718 2,693	Originated Within 6 Months	Origination Yield	12.24% - 14.59%	13.64%
		Market Comparable Companies	Hypothetical Market Yield Premium/(Discount)	9.07% - 15.62% (0.25%) - 0.75%	12.44%
		Liquidation <sup>(3)</sup>	Probability weighting of alternative outcomes	25.00% - 100.00%	
<b>Technology</b>	93,674 325,553 24,706	Originated Within 6 Months	Origination Yield	7.29% - 16.53%	13.69%
		Market Comparable Companies	Hypothetical Market Yield Premium/(Discount)	10.14% - 21.66% (0.50%) - 0.50%	12.69%
		Liquidation <sup>(3)</sup>	Probability weighting of alternative outcomes	20.00% - 100.00%	
<b>Sustainable and Renewable Technology</b>	99,286 44,626	Market Comparable Companies	Hypothetical Market Yield Premium/(Discount)	11.77% - 16.84% 0.00% - 0.25%	13.45%
		Liquidation <sup>(3)</sup>	Probability weighting of alternative outcomes	10.00% - 40.00%	
<b>Medical Devices</b>	88,983	Market Comparable Companies	Hypothetical Market Yield Premium/(Discount)	10.25% - 18.60% (0.25%) - 0.75%	14.01%
<b>Lower Middle Market</b>	25,017 13,148	Market Comparable Companies	Hypothetical Market Yield Premium/(Discount)	8.85% - 15.79% 0.00% - 0.25%	10.10%
		Liquidation <sup>(3)</sup>	Probability weighting of alternative outcomes	100.00%	
<b>Debt Investments Where Fair Value Approximates Cost</b>					
	25,000	Imminent Payoffs <sup>(4)</sup>			
	44,162	Debt Investments Maturing in Less than One Year			

**\$ 1,323,978 Total Level Three Debt Investments**

(1) The significant unobservable inputs used in the fair value measurement of our securities are hypothetical market yields and premiums/(discounts). The hypothetical market yield is defined as the exit price of an investment in a hypothetical market to hypothetical market participants where buyers and sellers are willing participants. The premiums (discounts) relate to company specific characteristics such as underlying investment performance, security liens, and other characteristics of the investment. Significant increases (decreases) in the inputs in isolation may result in a significantly lower (higher) fair value measurement, depending on the materiality of the investment. Debt investments in the industries noted in our Consolidated Schedule of Investments are included in the industries noted above as follows:

Pharmaceuticals, above, is comprised of debt investments in the Specialty Pharmaceuticals, Drug Discovery and Development and Drug Delivery and Biotechnology Tools industries in the Consolidated Schedule of Investments.

Technology, above, is comprised of debt investments in the Software, Semiconductors, Internet Consumer and Business Services, Consumer and Business Products, Information Services, and Communications and Networking industries in the Consolidated Schedule of Investments.

Sustainable and Renewable Technology, above, aligns with the Sustainable and Renewable Technology Industry in the Consolidated Schedule of Investments.

Medical Devices, above, is comprised of debt investments in the Surgical Devices, and Medical Devices and Equipment industries in the Consolidated Schedule of Investments.

Lower Middle Market, above, is comprised of debt investments in the Communications and Networking, Electronics and Computer Hardware, Healthcare Services Other, Information Services, Internet Consumer and Business Services, Media/Content/Info, and Specialty Pharmaceuticals industries in the Consolidated Schedule of Investments.

- (2) The weighted averages are calculated based on the fair market value of each investment.
- (3) The significant unobservable input used in the fair value measurement of impaired debt securities is the probability weighting of alternative outcomes.
- (4) Imminent payoffs represent debt investments that we expect to be fully repaid within the next three months, prior to their scheduled maturity date.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

Investment Type - Level Three	Fair Value at December 31, 2017 (in thousands)	Valuation Techniques/Methodologies	Unobservable Input <sup>(1)</sup>	Range	Weighted Average
Warrant and Warrant Investments	\$ 7,684	Market Comparable Companies	EBITDA Multiple <sup>(2)</sup>	5.1x - 40.2x	8
			Revenue Multiple <sup>(2)</sup>	0.5x - 6.2x	5
			Discount for Lack of Marketability <sup>(3)</sup>	7.49% - 12.97%	1
			Average Industry Volatility <sup>(4)</sup>	27.8% - 77.3%	5
			Risk-Free Interest Rate	1.40% - 1.90%	1
			Estimated Time to Exit (in months)	3 - 10	1
Investments	19,323	Market Adjusted OPM Backsolve	Market Equity Adjustment <sup>(5)</sup>	(16.43%) - 29.4%	1
			Average Industry Volatility <sup>(4)</sup>	33.17% - 78.77%	6
			Risk-Free Interest Rate	0.84% - 1.51%	1
			Estimated Time to Exit (in months)	5 - 26	1
	39,529	Other <sup>(7)</sup>			
Investments	19,310	Market Comparable Companies	EBITDA Multiple <sup>(2)</sup>	5x - 40.2x	1
			Revenue Multiple <sup>(2)</sup>	0.5x - 6.4x	5
			Discount for Lack of Marketability <sup>(3)</sup>	5.16% - 27.41%	1
			Average Industry Volatility <sup>(4)</sup>	27.8% - 102.77%	5
			Risk-Free Interest Rate	1.31% - 2.09%	1
			Estimated Time to Exit (in months)	2 - 48	1
Investments	6,713	Market Adjusted OPM Backsolve	Market Equity Adjustment <sup>(5)</sup>	(68.52%) - 154.5%	1
			Average Industry Volatility <sup>(4)</sup>	33.17% - 110.32%	6
			Risk-Free Interest Rate	0.96% - 2.09%	1
			Estimated Time to Exit (in months)	5 - 48	1
	5,182	Other <sup>(7)</sup>			
<b>Level Three Warrant and Investments</b>	<b>\$ 97,741</b>				

(1) The significant unobservable inputs used in the fair value measurement of our warrant and equity-related securities are revenue and/or EBITDA multiples, market equity adjustment factors, and discounts for lack of marketability. Additional inputs used in the Black Scholes OPM include industry volatility, risk free interest rate and estimated time to exit. Significant increases (decreases) in the inputs in isolation would result in a significantly higher (lower) fair value measurement, depending on the materiality of the investment. For some investments, additional consideration may be given to data from the last round of financing or merger/acquisition events near the measurement date.

(2) Represents amounts used when we have determined that market participants would use such multiples when pricing the investments.

(3)



Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Represents amounts used when we have determined market participants would take into account these discounts when pricing the investments.

- (4) Represents the range of industry volatility used by market participants when pricing the investment.
- (5) Represents the range of changes in industry valuations since the portfolio company's last external valuation event.
- (6) Weighted averages are calculated based on the fair market value of each investment.
- (7) The fair market value of these investments is derived based on recent private market and merger and acquisition transaction prices.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

Investment Type - Level Three	Fair Value at December 31, 2016 (in thousands)	Valuation Techniques/Methodologies	Unobservable Input <sup>(1)</sup>	Range	Weighted Average
Warrant Investments	\$ 9,258	Market Comparable Companies	EBITDA Multiple <sup>(2)</sup>	0.0x - 38.7x	1
			Revenue Multiple <sup>(2)</sup>	0.9x - 8.7x	6
			Discount for Lack of Marketability <sup>(3)</sup>	13.75% - 25.97%	0
			Average Industry Volatility <sup>(4)</sup>	45.54% - 113.16%	6
			Risk-Free Interest Rate	0.79% - 1.50%	0
			Estimated Time to Exit (in months)	10 - 38	
	19,836	Market Adjusted OPM Backsolve	Average Industry Volatility <sup>(4)</sup>	29.93% - 109.95%	7
			Risk-Free Interest Rate	0.65% - 1.44%	0
			Estimated Time to Exit (in months)	10 - 34	
	21,289	Other <sup>(6)</sup>			
Equity-Related Investments	8,959	Market Comparable Companies	EBITDA Multiple <sup>(2)</sup>	2.6x - 51.4x	1
			Revenue Multiple <sup>(2)</sup>	0.4x - 6.1x	6
			Discount for Lack of Marketability <sup>(3)</sup>	11.74% - 27.25%	0
			Average Industry Volatility <sup>(4)</sup>	38.58% - 111.15%	6
			Risk-Free Interest Rate	0.68% - 1.68%	0
			Estimated Time to Exit (in months)	7 - 47	
	9,713	Market Adjusted OPM Backsolve	Average Industry Volatility <sup>(4)</sup>	29.93% - 116.29%	6
			Risk-Free Interest Rate	0.45% - 1.84%	0
			Estimated Time to Exit (in months)	3 - 47	
	5,574	Other <sup>(6)</sup>			
Level Three Warrant and Equity-Related Investments	\$ 74,629				

(1) The significant unobservable inputs used in the fair value measurement of our warrant and equity-related securities are revenue and/or EBITDA multiples and discounts for lack of marketability. Additional inputs used in the Black Scholes OPM include industry volatility, risk free interest rate and estimated time to exit. Significant increases (decreases) in the inputs in isolation may result in a significantly higher (lower) fair value measurement, depending on the materiality of the investment. For some investments, additional consideration may be given to data from the last round of financing or merger/acquisition events near the measurement date.

(2) Represents amounts used when we have determined that market participants would use such multiples when pricing the investments.

(3) Represents amounts used when we have determined market participants would take into account these discounts when pricing the investments.

(4) Represents the range of industry volatility used by market participants when pricing the investment.

(5) Weighted averages are calculated based on the fair market value of each investment.

(6)

The fair market value of these investments is derived based on recent private market and merger and acquisition transaction prices.

*Cash and Cash Equivalents*

Cash and cash equivalents consists solely of funds deposited with financial institutions and short-term liquid investments in money market deposit accounts. Cash and cash equivalents are carried at cost, which approximates fair value.

*Other Assets*

Other Assets generally consists of prepaid expenses, deferred financing costs net of accumulated amortization, fixed assets net of accumulated depreciation, deferred revenues and deposits and other assets, including escrow receivable. The escrow receivable balance as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 was approximately \$752,000 and \$1.4 million, respectively, and was fair valued and held in accordance with ASC Topic 820.

*Income Recognition*

We record interest income on an accrual basis and recognize it as earned in accordance with the contractual terms of the loan agreement, to the extent that such amounts are expected to be collected. OID initially represents the value of detachable equity warrants obtained in conjunction with the acquisition of debt securities and is accreted into interest income over the term of the loan as a yield enhancement. When a loan becomes 90 days or more past due, or if management otherwise does not expect that principal, interest and other obligations due will be collected in full, we will generally place the loan on non-accrual status and cease recognizing interest income on that loan until all principal

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

and interest due has been paid or we believe the portfolio company has demonstrated the ability to repay our current and future contractual obligations. Any uncollected interest related to prior periods is reversed from income in the period that collection of the interest receivable is determined to be doubtful. However, we may make exceptions to this policy if the investment has sufficient collateral and is in the process of collection.

At December 31, 2017, we had five debt investments on non-accrual with a cumulative investment cost and fair value of approximately \$14.8 million and \$340,000, respectively. At December 31, 2016, we had five debt investments on non-accrual at with a cumulative investment cost and fair value of approximately \$43.9 million and \$6.2 million, respectively. The decrease in the cumulative cost and fair value of debt investments on non-accrual between December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 is the result of the liquidation of two debt investments that were on non-accrual at December 31, 2016, offset by placing two new debt investments on non-accrual during the period. For the year ended December 31, 2017, we recognized a realized loss of approximately \$24.2 million on the write off of two debt investments that were on non-accrual at December 31, 2016 and one investment placed on non-accrual and written-off during 2017.

Fee income, generally collected in advance, includes loan commitment and facility fees for due diligence and structuring, as well as fees for transaction services and management services rendered by us to portfolio companies and other third parties. Loan and commitment fees are amortized into income over the contractual life of the loan. Management fees are generally recognized as income when the services are rendered. Loan origination fees are capitalized and then amortized into interest income using the effective interest rate method. In certain loan arrangements, warrants or other equity interests are received from the borrower as additional origination fees.

We recognize nonrecurring fees amortized over the remaining term of the loan commencing in the quarter relating to specific loan modifications. Certain fees may still be recognized as one-time fee income, including prepayment penalties, fees related to select covenant default waiver fees and acceleration of previously deferred loan fees and OID related to early loan pay-off or material modification of the specific debt outstanding. In addition, we may also be entitled to an exit fee that is amortized into income over the life of the loan. Loan exit fees to be paid at the termination of the loan are accreted into interest income over the contractual life of the loan.

We have debt investments in our portfolio that contain a PIK provision. Contractual PIK interest, which represents contractually deferred interest added to the loan balance that is generally due at the end of the loan term, is generally recorded on the accrual basis to the extent such amounts are expected to be collected. We will generally cease accruing PIK interest if there is insufficient value to support the accrual or management does not expect the portfolio company to be able to pay all principal and interest due. We recorded approximately \$10.0 million and \$7.8 million in PIK income in the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

To maintain the Company's ability to be subject to tax as a RIC, PIK and exit fee income generally must be accrued and distributed to stockholders in the form of dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes even though the cash has not yet been collected. Amounts necessary to pay these distributions may come from available cash or the liquidation of certain investments.

In certain investment transactions, we may provide advisory services. For services that are separately identifiable and external evidence exists to substantiate fair value, income is recognized as earned, which is generally when the investment transaction closes. We had no income from advisory services in the years ended December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016.

*Other Income (Loss)*

Other Income (loss) generally consists of income or losses generated from sources other than our investment portfolio. There was no Other Income (loss) for the year ended December 31, 2017. For the year ended December 31, 2016 it consisted of litigation settlement proceeds and for the year ended December 31, 2015, it consisted of loss on extinguishment of debt. Other income (loss) is classified as a component of net investment income in our Consolidated Statement of Operations.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

*Stock Based Compensation*

We have issued and may, from time to time, issue stock options and restricted stock to employees under our 2004 Equity Incentive Plan and to Board members under our 2006 Equity Incentive Plan prior to its expiration on June 21, 2017. We follow the guidelines set forth under ASC Topic 718, ( Compensation Stock Compensation ) to account for stock options granted. Under ASC Topic 718, compensation expense associated with stock based compensation is measured at the grant date based on the fair value of the award and is recognized over the vesting period. Determining the appropriate fair value model and calculating the fair value of stock-based awards at the grant date requires judgment, including estimating stock price volatility, forfeiture rate and expected option life.

On December 29, 2016, our Board of Directors approved a further amendment and restatement of the 2004 Equity Incentive Plan. The amended plan provides, in addition to the preexisting types of awards available for grant thereunder and among other things, (1) for the grant of restricted stock units; (2) for the deferral of the receipt of the shares of our common stock underlying vested restricted stock units; (3) that grantees may receive up to 10% of the value of the tentative restricted stock unit grants proposed for any grantee in the form of an option to acquire shares of our common stock; (4) that awards of restricted stock units may include performance vesting conditions; (5) that awards may require that all or a portion of the shares of our common stock delivered in respect of any vested restricted stock unit award be subject to a specified post-delivery holding period; and (6) that restricted stock unit awards may accrue dividend equivalents in respect of our common stock underlying any restricted stock unit award payable in the form of cash or additional shares of our common stock to the extent, and in respect of, any vested restricted stock units. As of December 31, 2017, we issued 600,461 restricted stock units and 54,674 dividend equivalent units based on the December 2016 amended terms.

*Income Taxes*

We intend to operate so as to qualify to be taxed subject to tax as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code and, as such, will not be subject to federal income tax on the portion of taxable income (including gains) distributed as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to stockholders. Taxable income includes our taxable interest, dividend and fee income, reduced by certain deductions, as well as taxable net realized securities gains. Taxable income generally differs from net income for financial reporting purposes due to temporary and permanent differences in the recognition of income and expenses, and generally excludes net unrealized appreciation or depreciation, as such gains or losses are not included in taxable income until they are realized.

As a RIC, we will be subject to a 4% nondeductible U.S. federal excise tax on certain undistributed income unless we make distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes in a timely manner to our stockholders in respect of each calendar year of an amount at least equal to the Excise Tax Avoidance Requirement. We will not be subject to this excise tax on any amount on which we incurred U.S. federal corporate income tax (such as the tax imposed on a RIC's retained net capital gains).

Depending on the level of taxable income earned in a taxable year, we may choose to carry over taxable income in excess of current taxable year distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes from such taxable income into the next taxable year and incur a 4% excise tax on such taxable income, as required. The maximum amount of excess taxable income that may be carried over for distribution in the next taxable year under the Code is the total amount of distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes paid in the following taxable year, subject to certain declaration and payment guidelines. To the extent we choose to carry over taxable income into the next taxable year, distributions declared and paid by us in a taxable year may differ from

taxable income for that taxable year as such distributions may include the distribution of current taxable year taxable income, the distribution of prior taxable year taxable income carried over into and distributed in the current taxable year, or returns of capital.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

We intend to distribute 100% of our spillover earnings from ordinary income for the taxable year ended December 31, 2017 to our stockholders during 2018. We distributed 100% of our spillover earnings, which consisted of ordinary income and long-term capital gains, from our taxable year ended December 31, 2016 to our stockholders during 2017.

Because federal income tax regulations differ from accounting principles generally accepted in the United States, distributions in accordance with tax regulations may differ from net investment income and realized gains recognized for financial reporting purposes. Differences may be permanent or temporary. Permanent differences are reclassified among capital accounts in the financial statements to reflect their appropriate tax character. Permanent differences may also result from the classification of certain items, such as the treatment of short-term gains as ordinary income for tax purposes. Temporary differences arise when certain items of income, expense, gain or loss are recognized at some time in the future.

*Recent Accounting Pronouncements*

In January 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-01, *Financial Instruments Overall (Subtopic 825-10): Recognition and Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities*, which, among other things, requires that (i) all equity investments, other than equity-method investments, in unconsolidated entities generally be measured at fair value through earnings and (ii) an entity to present separately in other comprehensive income the portion of the total change in the fair value of a liability resulting from a change in the instrument-specific credit risk when the entity has elected to measure the liability at fair value in accordance with the fair value option for financial instruments. Additionally, the ASU changes the disclosure requirements for financial instruments. ASU 2016-01 is effective for annual reporting periods, and the interim periods within those periods, beginning after December 15, 2017. We do not believe that ASU 2016-01 will have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements and disclosures.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-02, *Leases (Topic 842)*, which, among other things, requires recognition of lease assets and lease liabilities by lessees for those leases classified as operating leases under previous GAAP. Additionally, the ASU requires the classification of all cash payments on leases within operating activities in the Consolidated Statement of Cash Flows. ASU 2016-02 is effective for annual reporting periods, and the interim periods within those periods, beginning after December 15, 2018. Early adoption is permitted. We anticipate an increase in the recognition of right-of-use assets and lease liabilities, however, we do not believe that ASU 2016-02 will have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements and disclosures.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-09, *Compensation Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting*, which, among other things, simplifies several aspects of the accounting for share-based payment transactions, including the income tax consequences, classification of awards as either equity or liabilities, and classification on the statement of cash flows. ASU 2016-09 is effective for annual reporting periods, and the interim periods within those periods, beginning after December 15, 2016. We have adopted this standard for the year ended December 31, 2017 and determined that the adoption did not have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements and disclosures.

In August 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-15, *Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230): Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments*, which addresses eight specific cash flow issues including, among other things, the classification of debt prepayment or debt extinguishment costs. ASU 2016-15 is effective for annual reporting periods, and the interim periods within those periods, beginning after December 15, 2017. We do not believe that ASU 2016-15 will have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements and disclosures.



In October 2016, the SEC adopted new rules and forms and amended other rules to enhance the reporting and disclosure of information by registered investment companies. As part of these changes, the SEC amended

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

Regulation S-X to standardize and enhance disclosures in investment company financial statements. Implementation of the new or amended rules is required for reporting periods ending after August 1, 2017. We have reviewed the requirements and adopted the amendments to Regulation S-X on our consolidated financial statements and related disclosures for the periods presented.

In November 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-18, Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230), which requires that a statement of cash flows explain the change during the period in the total of cash, cash equivalents, and amounts generally described as restricted cash or restricted cash equivalents. Therefore, amounts generally described as restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents should be included with cash and cash equivalents when reconciling the beginning-of-period and end-of-period total amounts shown on the statement of cash flows. The new guidance is effective for interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017. The amendment should be adopted retrospectively. We do not believe that ASU 2016-18 will have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements and disclosures.

**Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosure About Market Risk**

We are subject to financial market risks, including changes in interest rates. Interest rate risk is defined as the sensitivity of our current and future earnings to interest rate volatility, variability of spread relationships, the difference in re-pricing intervals between our assets and liabilities and the effect that interest rates may have on our cash flows. Changes in interest rates may affect both our cost of funding and our interest income from portfolio investments, cash and cash equivalents and idle fund investments. Our investment income will be affected by changes in various interest rates, including LIBOR and Prime rates, to the extent our debt investments include variable interest rates. As of December 31, 2017, approximately 96.4% of the loans in our portfolio had variable rates based on floating Prime or LIBOR rates with a floor. Changes in interest rates can also affect, among other things, our ability to acquire and originate loans and securities and the value of our investment portfolio.

Based on our Consolidated Statement of Assets and Liabilities as of December 31, 2017, the following table shows the approximate annualized increase (decrease) in components of net assets resulting from operations of hypothetical base rate changes in interest rates, assuming no changes in our investments and borrowings.

(in thousands)

<b>Basis Point Change</b>	<b>Interest Income</b>	<b>Interest Expense</b>	<b>Net Income</b>	<b>EPS<sup>(1)</sup></b>
25	\$ 3,152	\$	\$ 3,152	\$ 0.04
50	\$ 6,368	\$	\$ 6,368	\$ 0.08
75	\$ 9,605	\$	\$ 9,605	\$ 0.11
100	\$ 12,937	\$	\$ 12,937	\$ 0.15
200	\$ 26,683	\$	\$ 26,683	\$ 0.32
300	\$ 40,322	\$	\$ 40,322	\$ 0.48

(1) Earnings per share impact calculated based on basic weighted average shares outstanding of 82,519.

We do not currently engage in any hedging activities. However, we may, in the future, hedge against interest rate fluctuations (and foreign currency) by using standard hedging instruments such as futures, options, and forward

contracts. While hedging activities may insulate us against changes in interest rates (and foreign currency), they may also limit our ability to participate in the benefits of lower interest rates with respect to our borrowed funds and higher interest rates with respect to our portfolio of investments. During the year ended December 31, 2017, we did not engage in interest rate (or foreign currency) hedging activities.

Although we believe that the foregoing analysis is indicative of our sensitivity to interest rate changes, it does not adjust for potential changes in the credit market, credit quality, size and composition of the assets in our portfolio. It also does not adjust for other business developments, including borrowings under our SBA

## **Table of Contents**

### **Index to Financial Statements**

debentures, 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes, 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, 2022 Convertible Notes, and Credit Facilities, that could affect the net increase in net assets resulting from operations, or net income. It also does not assume any repayments from borrowers. Accordingly, no assurances can be given that actual results would not differ materially from the statement above.

Because we currently borrow, and plan to borrow in the future, money to make investments, our net investment income is dependent upon the difference between the rate at which we borrow funds and the rate at which we invest the funds borrowed. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that a significant change in market interest rates will not have a material adverse effect on our net investment income. In periods of rising interest rates, our cost of funds would increase, which could reduce our net investment income if there is not a corresponding increase in interest income generated by variable rate assets in our investment portfolio.

For additional information regarding the interest rate associated with each of our SBA debentures, 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes, 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, 2022 Convertible Notes, and Credit Facilities, please refer to Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations—Financial Condition, Liquidity and Capital Resources—Outstanding Borrowings in this prospectus.

### **Disclosure Controls and Procedures**

The Company's chief executive and chief financial officers, under the supervision and with the participation of the Company's management, conducted an evaluation of the Company's disclosure controls and procedures, as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Exchange Act. As of the end of the period covered by this prospectus, the Company's chief executive and chief financial officers have concluded that the Company's disclosure controls and procedures were effective to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in reports that the Company files or submits under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized, and reported within the time periods specified in SEC rules and forms, and that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that the Company files or submits under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to the Company's management, including the Company's chief executive and chief financial officers, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure.

### **Internal Control Over Financial Reporting**

#### *a. Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting*

The Company is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting and for the assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting. As defined by the SEC, internal control over financial reporting is a process designed under the supervision of the Company's principal executive and principal financial and accounting officer, approved and monitored by the Company's Board of Directors, and implemented by management and other personnel, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements in accordance with GAAP.

The Company's internal control over financial reporting is supported by written policies and procedures, that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the Company's assets; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with GAAP, and that receipts and expenditures of the Company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of the Company's management and directors; and

(3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of the Company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Management of the Company conducted an assessment of the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017 based on criteria established in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework* (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (the COSO Framework). Based on this assessment, management has concluded that the Company's internal control over financial reporting was effective as of December 31, 2017.

**Report of the Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

The effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017 has been audited by PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm who also audited the Company's consolidated financial statements, as stated in their report, which is included in this prospectus.

**Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting in 2017**

There have been no changes in the Company's internal control over financial reporting, as defined in Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) of the Exchange Act, which occurred during the Company's most recently completed fiscal quarter that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**BUSINESS**

We are a specialty finance company focused on providing senior secured loans to high-growth, innovative venture capital-backed companies in a variety of technology, life sciences and sustainable and renewable technology industries. We source our investments through our principal office located in Palo Alto, CA, as well as through our additional offices in Boston, MA, New York, NY, Washington, DC, Hartford, CT and San Diego, CA.

Our goal is to be the leading structured debt financing provider for venture capital-backed companies in technology-related industries requiring sophisticated and customized financing solutions. Our strategy is to evaluate and invest in a broad range of technology-related industries including technology, drug discovery and development, biotechnology, life sciences, healthcare, and sustainable and renewable technology and to offer a full suite of growth capital products. We focus our investments in companies active in the technology industry sub-sectors characterized by products or services that require advanced technologies, including, but not limited to, computer software and hardware, networking systems, semiconductors, semiconductor capital equipment, information technology infrastructure or services, internet consumer and business services, telecommunications, telecommunications equipment, renewable or alternative energy, media and life sciences. Within the life sciences sub-sector, we generally focus on medical devices, bio-pharmaceutical, drug discovery, drug delivery, health care services and information systems companies. Within the sustainable and renewable technology sub-sector, we focus on sustainable and renewable energy technologies and energy efficiency and monitoring technologies. We refer to all of these companies as technology-related companies and intend, under normal circumstances, to invest at least 80% of the value of our total assets in such businesses.

We invest primarily in structured debt with warrants and, to a lesser extent, in senior debt and equity investments. We invest primarily in private companies but also have investments in public companies. We use the term structured debt with warrants to refer to any debt investment, such as a senior or subordinated secured loan, that is coupled with an equity component, including warrants, options or other rights to purchase common or preferred stock. Our structured debt with warrants investments typically are secured by some or all of the assets of the portfolio company.

Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio's total return by generating current income from our debt investments and capital appreciation from our warrant and equity-related investments. Our primary business objectives are to increase our net income, net operating income and NAV by investing in structured debt with warrants and equity of venture capital-backed companies in technology-related industries with attractive current yields and the potential for equity appreciation and realized gains. Our equity ownership in our portfolio companies may exceed 25% of the voting securities of such companies, which represents a controlling interest under the 1940 Act. In some cases, we receive the right to make additional equity investments in our portfolio companies in connection with future equity financing rounds. Capital that we provide directly to venture capital-backed companies in technology-related industries is generally used for growth and general working capital purposes as well as in select cases for acquisitions or recapitalizations.

We also make investments in qualifying small businesses through our two wholly-owned SBICs. Our SBIC subsidiaries, Hercules Technology II, L.P., or HT II, and Hercules Technology III, L.P., or HT III, hold approximately \$111.8 million and \$284.0 million in assets, respectively, and accounted for approximately 5.4% and 13.8% of our total assets, respectively, prior to consolidation at December 31, 2017. At December 31, 2017, we have issued \$190.2 million in SBA-guaranteed debentures in our SBIC subsidiaries. See Regulation Small Business Administration Regulations for additional information regarding our SBIC subsidiaries.

We regularly engage in discussions with third parties with respect to various potential transactions to explore all alternatives. We may acquire an investment or a portfolio of investments or an entire company or sell portions of our portfolio on an opportunistic basis. We, our subsidiaries or our affiliates, may also agree to manage certain other funds that invest in debt, equity or provide other financing or services to companies in a



---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

variety of industries for which we may earn management or other fees for our services. We may also invest in the equity of these funds, along with other third parties, from which we would seek to earn a return and/or future incentive allocations. Some of these transactions could be material to our business. Consummation of any such transaction will be subject to completion of due diligence, finalization of key business and financial terms (including price) and negotiation of final definitive documentation as well as a number of other factors and conditions including, without limitation, the approval of our Board of Directors and required regulatory or third party consents and, in certain cases, the approval of our stockholders. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that any such transaction would be consummated. Any of these transactions or funds may require significant management resources either during the transaction phase or on an ongoing basis depending on the terms of the transaction.

**CORPORATE HISTORY AND OFFICES**

We are a Maryland corporation formed in December 2003 that began investment operations in September 2004. On February 25, 2016, we changed our name from Hercules Technology Growth Capital, Inc. to Hercules Capital, Inc. We are an internally managed, non-diversified closed-end investment company that has elected to be regulated as a business development company under the 1940 Act. As a business development company, we are required to comply with certain regulatory requirements. For instance, we generally have to invest at least 70% of our total assets in qualifying assets, including securities of private U.S. companies, cash, cash equivalents, U.S. government securities and high-quality debt investments that mature in one year or less. A business development company also must meet a coverage ratio of total net assets to total senior securities, which include all of our borrowings (including accrued interest payable) except for debentures issued by the SBA and any preferred stock we may issue in the future, of at least 200% (or 150%, subject to certain approval and disclosure requirements) subsequent to each borrowing or issuance of senior securities. See Regulation.

Our portfolio is comprised of, and we anticipate that our portfolio will continue to be comprised of, investments primarily in technology-related companies at various stages of their development. Consistent with regulatory requirements, we invest primarily in United States based companies and, to a lesser extent, in foreign companies.

We are internally managed under the supervision of our Board of Directors. We do not pay management or advisory fees, but instead incur costs customary for an operating company. Some of those costs include recruiting and marketing expenses as well as the costs associated with employing management, investment and portfolio management professionals, and technology, secretarial and other support personnel. In connection with our recruiting, branding and marketing efforts, we may, among other things, make charitable contributions in amounts we believe to be immaterial. We believe that many of these contributions help us raise our profile in the communities and benefit us in attracting and retaining talent and investment opportunities.

Effective January 1, 2006, we elected to be treated for tax purposes as a RIC under the Code. Pursuant to this election, we generally will not have to pay corporate-level taxes on any income that we distribute to our stockholders. However, our qualification and election to be treated as a RIC requires that we comply with provisions contained in the Code. For example, as a RIC we must receive 90% or more of our income from qualified earnings, typically referred to as good income, as well as satisfy asset diversification and income distribution requirements. As an investment company, we follow accounting and reporting guidance as set forth in Topic 946 of FASB's ASC.

Our principal executive offices are located at 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301, and our telephone number is (650) 289-3060. We also have offices in Boston, MA, New York, NY, Washington, DC, Hartford, CT and San Diego, CA. We maintain a website on the Internet at [www.htgc.com](http://www.htgc.com). We make available, free

of charge, on our website our proxy statement, annual report on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Form 10-Q, current reports on Form 8-K and amendments to those reports as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file such material with, or furnish it to, the SEC. Information contained on our website is not incorporated by reference into this prospectus, and you should not consider that information to be part of this prospectus.

We file annual, quarterly and current periodic reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC under the Exchange Act. This information is available at the SEC's public reference room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. You may obtain information about the operation of the SEC's public reference room by calling the SEC at (202) 551-8090. In addition, the SEC maintains an Internet website, at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov), that contains reports, proxy and information statements, and other information regarding issuers, including us, who file documents electronically with the SEC.

**OUR MARKET OPPORTUNITY**

We believe that technology-related companies compete in one of the largest and most rapidly growing sectors of the U.S. economy and that continued growth is supported by ongoing innovation and performance improvements in technology products as well as the adoption of technology across virtually all industries in response to competitive pressures. We believe that an attractive market opportunity exists for a specialty finance company focused primarily on investments in structured debt with warrants in technology-related companies for the following reasons:

technology-related companies have generally been underserved by traditional lending sources;

unfulfilled demand exists for structured debt financing to technology-related companies due to the complexity of evaluating risk in these investments; and

structured debt with warrants products are less dilutive and complement equity financing from venture capital and private equity funds.

***Technology-Related Companies are Underserved by Traditional Lenders.*** We believe many viable technology-related companies backed by financial sponsors have been unable to obtain sufficient growth financing from traditional lenders, including financial services companies such as commercial banks and finance companies because traditional lenders have continued to consolidate and have adopted a more risk-averse approach to lending. More importantly, we believe traditional lenders are typically unable to underwrite the risk associated with these companies effectively.

The unique cash flow characteristics of many technology-related companies typically include significant research and development expenditures and high projected revenue growth thus often making such companies difficult to evaluate from a credit perspective. In addition, the balance sheets of these companies often include a disproportionately large amount of intellectual property assets, which can be difficult to value. Finally, the speed of innovation in technology and rapid shifts in consumer demand and market share add to the difficulty in evaluating technology-related companies.

Due to the difficulties described above, we believe traditional lenders generally refrain from entering the structured debt financing marketplace, instead preferring the risk-reward profile of asset-based lending. Traditional lenders generally do not have flexible product offerings that meet the needs of technology-related companies. The financing products offered by traditional lenders typically impose on borrowers many restrictive covenants and conditions, including limiting cash outflows and requiring a significant depository relationship to facilitate rapid liquidation.

***Unfulfilled Demand for Structured Debt Financing to Technology-Related Companies.*** Private debt capital in the form of structured debt financing from specialty finance companies continues to be an important source of funding for technology-related companies. We believe that the level of demand for structured debt financing is a function of the level of annual venture equity investment activity.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

We believe that demand for structured debt financing is currently underserved. The venture capital market for the technology-related companies in which we invest has been active. Therefore, to the extent we have capital available, we believe this is an opportune time to be active in the structured lending market for technology-related companies.

***Structured Debt with Warrants Products Complement Equity Financing From Venture Capital and Private Equity Funds.*** We believe that technology-related companies and their financial sponsors will continue to view structured debt securities as an attractive source of capital because it augments the capital provided by venture capital and private equity funds. We believe that our structured debt with warrants products provide access to growth capital that otherwise may only be available through incremental investments by existing equity investors. As such, we provide portfolio companies and their financial sponsors with an opportunity to diversify their capital sources. Generally, we believe many technology-related companies at all stages of development target a portion of their capital to be debt in an attempt to achieve a higher valuation through internal growth. In addition, because financial sponsor-backed companies have reached a more mature stage prior to reaching a liquidity event, we believe our investments could provide the debt capital needed to grow or recapitalize during the extended period sometimes required prior to liquidity events.

**OUR BUSINESS STRATEGY**

Our strategy to achieve our investment objective includes the following key elements:

***Leverage the Experience and Industry Relationships of Our Management Team and Investment Professionals.*** We have assembled a team of experienced investment professionals with extensive experience as venture capitalists, commercial lenders, and originators of structured debt and equity investments in technology-related companies. Our investment professionals have, on average, more than 15 years of experience as equity investors in, and/or lenders to, technology-related companies. In addition, our team members have originated structured debt, debt with warrants and equity investments in over 410 technology-related companies, representing almost \$7.3 billion in commitments from inception to December 31, 2017, and have developed a network of industry contacts with investors and other participants within the venture capital and private equity communities. In addition, members of our management team also have operational, research and development and finance experience with technology-related companies. We have established contacts with leading venture capital and private equity fund sponsors, public and private companies, research institutions and other industry participants, which we believe will enable us to identify and attract well-positioned prospective portfolio companies.

We focus our investing activities generally in industries in which our investment professionals have investment experience. We believe that our focus on financing technology-related companies will enable us to leverage our expertise in structuring prospective investments, to assess the value of both tangible and intangible assets, to evaluate the business prospects and operating characteristics of technology-related companies and to identify and originate potentially attractive investments with these types of companies.

***Mitigate Risk of Principal Loss and Build a Portfolio of Equity-Related Securities.*** We expect that our investments have the potential to produce attractive risk-adjusted returns through current income, in the form of interest and fee income, as well as capital appreciation from warrant and equity-related securities. We believe that we can mitigate the risk of loss on our debt investments through the combination of loan principal amortization, cash interest payments, relatively short maturities (typically between 24-48 months), security interests in the assets of our portfolio companies, and on select investment covenants requiring prospective portfolio companies to have certain amounts of available cash at the time of our investment and the continued support from a venture capital or private equity firm at

the time we make our investment. Although we do not currently engage in hedging transactions, we may engage in hedging transactions in the future utilizing instruments such as forward contracts, currency options and interest rate swaps, caps, collars, and floors.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Historically our structured debt investments to technology-related companies typically include warrants or other equity interests, giving us the potential to realize equity-like returns on a portion of our investment. In addition, in some cases, we receive the right to make additional equity investments in our portfolio companies, including the right to convert some portion of our debt into equity, in connection with future equity financing rounds. We believe these equity interests will create the potential for meaningful long-term capital gains in connection with the future liquidity events of these technology-related companies.

***Provide Customized Financing Complementary to Financial Sponsors' Capital.*** We offer a broad range of investment structures and possess expertise and experience to effectively structure and price investments in technology-related companies. Unlike many of our competitors that only invest in companies that fit a specific set of investment parameters, we have the flexibility to structure our investments to suit the particular needs of our portfolio companies. We offer customized financing solutions ranging from senior debt, including below-investment grade debt instruments (also known as junk bonds), to equity capital, with a focus on structured debt with warrants.

We use our relationships in the financial sponsor community to originate investment opportunities. Because venture capital and private equity funds typically invest solely in the equity securities of their portfolio companies, we believe that our debt investments will be viewed as an attractive and complimentary source of capital, both by the portfolio company and by the portfolio company's financial sponsor. In addition, we believe that many venture capital and private equity fund sponsors encourage their portfolio companies to use debt financing for a portion of their capital needs as a means of potentially enhancing equity returns, minimizing equity dilution and increasing valuations prior to a subsequent equity financing round or a liquidity event.

***Invest at Various Stages of Development.*** We provide growth capital to technology-related companies at all stages of development, including select publicly listed companies and select special opportunity lower middle market companies that require additional capital to fund acquisitions, recapitalizations and refinancings and established-stage companies. We believe that this provides us with a broader range of potential investment opportunities than those available to many of our competitors, who generally focus their investments on a particular stage in a company's development. Because of the flexible structure of our investments and the extensive experience of our investment professionals, we believe we are well positioned to take advantage of these investment opportunities at all stages of prospective portfolio companies' development.

***Benefit from Our Efficient Organizational Structure.*** We believe that the perpetual nature of our corporate structure enables us to be a long-term partner for our portfolio companies in contrast to traditional investment funds, which typically have a limited life. In addition, because of our access to the equity markets, we believe that we may benefit from a lower cost of capital than that available to private investment funds. We are not subject to requirements to return invested capital to investors nor do we have a finite investment horizon. Capital providers that are subject to such limitations are often required to seek a liquidity event more quickly than they otherwise might, which can result in a lower overall return on an investment.

***Deal Sourcing Through Our Proprietary Database.*** We have developed a proprietary and comprehensive SQL database system to track various aspects of our investment process including sourcing, originations, transaction monitoring and post-investment performance. As of December 31, 2017, our proprietary SQL-based database system included approximately 48,350 technology-related companies and approximately 9,650 venture capital firms, private equity sponsors/investors, as well as various other industry contacts. This proprietary SQL system allows us to maintain, cultivate and grow our industry relationships while providing us with comprehensive details on companies in the technology-related industries and their financial sponsors.

**OUR INVESTMENTS AND OPERATIONS**

We principally invest in debt securities and, to a lesser extent, equity securities, with a particular emphasis on structured debt with warrants.



---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

We generally seek to invest in companies that have been operating for at least six to 12 months prior to the date of our investment. We anticipate that such entities may, at the time of investment, be generating revenues or will have a business plan that anticipates generation of revenues within 24 to 48 months. Further, we anticipate that on the date of our investment we will generally obtain a lien on available assets, which may or may not include intellectual property, and these companies will have sufficient cash on their balance sheet to operate as well as potentially amortize their debt for at least three to nine months following our investment. We generally require that a prospective portfolio company, in addition to having sufficient capital to support leverage, demonstrate an operating plan capable of generating cash flows or raising the additional capital necessary to cover its operating expenses and service its debt, for an additional six to 12 months subject to market conditions.

We expect that our investments will generally range from \$12.0 million to \$40.0 million, although we may make investments in amounts above or below this range. We typically structure our debt securities to provide for amortization of principal over the life of the loan, but may include a period of interest-only payments. Our loans will typically be collateralized by a security interest in the borrower's assets, although we may not have the first claim on these assets and the assets may not include intellectual property. Our debt investments carry fixed or variable contractual interest rates which generally ranged from approximately 4.6% to 13.0% as of December 31, 2017. As of December 31, 2017, approximately 96.4% of our loans were at floating rates or floating rates with a floor and 3.6% of the loans were at fixed rates.

In addition to the cash yields received on our loans, our loans generally include one or more of the following: exit fees, balloon payment fees, commitment fees, success fees or prepayment fees. In some cases our loans also include contractual PIK interest arrangements. The increases in loan balances as a result of contractual PIK arrangements are included in income for the period in which such PIK interest was accrued, which is often in advance of receiving cash payment, and are separately identified on our statements of cash flows. We also may be required to include in income for tax purposes certain other amounts prior to receiving the related cash.

In addition, the majority of our investments in the structured debt of venture capital-backed companies generally have equity enhancement features, typically in the form of warrants or other equity-related securities that are considered OID to our loans and are designed to provide us with an opportunity for potential capital appreciation. The warrants typically will be immediately exercisable upon issuance and generally will remain exercisable for the lesser of five to ten years or three to five years after completion of an IPO. The exercise prices for the warrants varies from nominal exercise prices to exercise prices that are at or above the current fair market value of the equity for which we receive warrants. We may structure warrants to provide minority rights provisions or on a very select basis put rights upon the occurrence of certain events. We generally target a total annualized return (including interest, fees and value of warrants) of 12% to 25% for our debt investments.

Typically, our structured debt and equity investments take one of the following forms:

*Structured Debt with Warrants.* We seek to invest a majority of our assets in structured debt with warrants of prospective portfolio companies. Our investments in structured debt with warrants may be the only debt capital on the balance sheet of our portfolio companies, and in many cases we have a first priority security interest in all of our portfolio company's assets, or in certain investments we may have a negative pledge on intellectual property. Our structured debt with warrants typically has a maturity of between two and seven years, and they may provide for full amortization after an interest only period. Our structured debt with

warrants generally carries a contractual interest rate up to 13.0% and may include an additional exit fee payment or contractual PIK interest arrangements. We may structure our structured debt with warrants with restrictive affirmative and negative covenants, default penalties, prepayment penalties, lien protection, equity calls, change-in-control provisions or board observation rights.

*Senior Debt.* We seek to invest a limited portion of our assets in senior debt. Senior debt may be collateralized by accounts receivable and/or inventory financing of prospective portfolio companies. Senior debt has a senior position with respect to a borrower's scheduled interest and principal payments

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

and holds a first priority security interest in the assets pledged as collateral. Senior debt also may impose covenants on a borrower with regard to cash flows and changes in capital structure, among other items. We generally collateralize our investments by obtaining security interests in our portfolio companies' assets, which may include their intellectual property. In other cases we may obtain a negative pledge covering a company's intellectual property. Our senior loans, in certain instances, may be tied to the financing of specific assets. In connection with a senior debt investment, we may also provide the borrower with a working capital line-of-credit that will carry an interest rate ranging from Prime or LIBOR plus a spread with a floor, generally maturing in one to three years, and typically secured by accounts receivable and/or inventory.

*Equipment Loans.* We intend to invest a limited portion of our assets in equipment-based loans to early-stage prospective portfolio companies. Equipment-based loans are secured by a first priority security interest in only the specific assets financed. These loans are generally for amounts of \$1.0 million to \$3.0 million but may be up to \$15.0 million, carry a contractual interest rate between Prime and Prime plus 9.0%, and have an average term between three and four years. Equipment loans may also include exit fee payments.

*Equity-Related Securities.* The equity-related securities we hold consist primarily of warrants or other equity interests generally obtained in connection with our structured debt investments. In addition to the warrants received as a part of a structured debt financing, we typically receive the right to make equity investments in a portfolio company in connection with that company's next round of equity financing. We may also hold certain debt investments that have the right to convert a portion of the debt investment into equity. These rights will provide us with the opportunity to further enhance our returns over time through opportunistic equity investments in our portfolio companies. These equity-related investments are typically in the form of preferred or common equity and may be structured with a dividend yield, providing us with a current return, and with customary anti-dilution protection and preemptive rights. We may achieve liquidity through a merger or acquisition of a portfolio company, a public offering of a portfolio company's stock or by exercising our right, if any, to require a portfolio company to buy back the equity-related securities we hold. We may also make stand-alone direct equity investments into portfolio companies in which we may not have any debt investment in the company. As of December 31, 2017, we held warrant and equity-related securities in 163 portfolio companies.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

A comparison of the typical features of our various investment alternatives is set forth in the chart below.

	<b>Structured Debt with</b>			<b>Equity-Related</b>
	<b>Warrants</b>	<b>Senior Debt</b>	<b>Equipment Loans</b>	<b>Securities</b>
<b>Typical Structure</b>	Term debt with warrants	Term or revolving debt	Term debt with warrants	Preferred stock or common stock
<b>Investment Horizon</b>	Long-term, ranging from 2 to 7 years, with an average of 3 years	Usually under 3 years	Ranging from 3 to 4 years	Ranging from 3 to 7 years
<b>Ranking/Security</b>	Senior secured, either first out or last out, or second lien	Senior / First lien	Secured only by underlying equipment	None/unsecured
<b>Covenants</b>	Less restrictive; mostly financial	Generally borrowing base and financial	None	None
<b>Risk Tolerance</b>	Medium / High	Low	High	High
<b>Coupon/Dividend</b>	Cash pay fixed and floating rate; PIK in limited cases	Cash pay fixed or floating rate	Cash pay fixed or floating rate and may include PIK	Generally none
<b>Customization or Flexibility</b>	More flexible	Little to none	Little to none	Flexible
<b>Equity Dilution</b>	Low to medium	None to low	Low	High
<b>Investment Criteria</b>				

We have identified several criteria, among others, that we believe are important in achieving our investment objective with respect to prospective portfolio companies. These criteria, while not inclusive, provide general guidelines for our investment decisions.

**Portfolio Composition.** While we generally focus our investments in venture capital-backed companies in technology-related industries, we seek to invest across various financial sponsors as well as across various stages of companies' development and various technology industry sub-sectors and geographies. As of December 31, 2017, approximately 74.9% of the fair value of our portfolio was composed of investments in five industries: 23.9% was composed of investments in the drug discovery and development industry, 23.4% was composed of investments in the software industry, 10.0% was composed of investments in the internet consumer and business services industry, 9.9% was composed of investments in the media/content/info industry and 7.7% was composed of investments in the sustainable and renewable technology industry.

**Continuing Support from One or More Financial Sponsors.** We generally invest in companies in which one or more established financial sponsors have previously invested and continue to make a contribution to the management of the business. We believe that having established financial sponsors with meaningful commitments to the business is a key characteristic of a prospective portfolio company. In addition, we look for representatives of one or more financial sponsors to maintain seats on the Board of Directors of a prospective portfolio company as an indication of such commitment.



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Company Stage of Development.*** While we invest in companies at various stages of development, we generally require that prospective portfolio companies be beyond the seed stage of development and generally have received or anticipate having commitments for their first institutional round of equity financing for early stage companies. We expect a prospective portfolio company to demonstrate progress in its product development or demonstrate a path towards revenue generation or increase its revenues and operating cash flow over time. The anticipated growth rate of a prospective portfolio company is a key factor in determining the value that we ascribe to any warrants or other equity securities that we may acquire in connection with an investment in debt securities.

***Operating Plan.*** We generally require that a prospective portfolio company, in addition to having potential access to capital to support leverage, demonstrate an operating plan capable of generating cash flows or the ability to potentially raise the additional capital necessary to cover its operating expenses and service its debt for a specific period. Specifically, we require that a prospective portfolio company demonstrate at the time of our proposed investment that in addition to having sufficient capital to support leverage, it has an operating plan capable of generating cash flows or raising the additional capital necessary to cover its operating expenses and service its debt for an additional six to twelve months subject to market conditions.

***Security Interest.*** In many instances we seek a first priority security interest in all of the portfolio companies' tangible and intangible assets as collateral for our debt investment, subject in some cases to permitted exceptions. In other cases we may obtain a negative pledge prohibiting a company from pledging or otherwise encumbering their intellectual property. Although we do not intend to operate as an asset-based lender, the estimated liquidation value of the assets, if any, collateralizing the debt securities that we hold is an important factor in our credit analysis and subject to assumptions that may change over the life of the investment especially when attempting to estimate the value of intellectual property. We generally evaluate both tangible assets, such as accounts receivable, inventory and equipment, and intangible assets, such as intellectual property, customer lists, networks and databases.

***Covenants.*** Our investments may include one or more of the following covenants: cross-default; material adverse change provisions; requirements that the portfolio company provide periodic financial reports and operating metrics; and limitations on the portfolio company's ability to incur additional debt, sell assets, dividend recapture, engage in transactions with affiliates and consummate an extraordinary transaction, such as a merger or recapitalization without our consent. In addition, we may require other performance or financial based covenants, as we deem appropriate.

***Exit Strategy.*** Prior to making a debt investment that is accompanied by an equity-related security in a prospective portfolio company, we analyze the potential for that company to increase the liquidity of its equity through a future event that would enable us to realize appreciation in the value of our equity interest. Liquidity events may include an IPO, a private sale of our equity interest to a third party, a merger or an acquisition of the company or a purchase of our equity position by the company or one of its stockholders.

**Investment Process**

We have organized our management team around the four key elements of our investment process:

Origination;

Underwriting;

Documentation; and

Loan and Compliance Administration.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Our investment process is summarized in the following chart:

***Origination***

The origination process for our investments includes sourcing, screening, preliminary due diligence and deal structuring and negotiation, all leading to an executed non-binding term sheet. As of December 31, 2017, our investment origination team, which consists of approximately 35 investment professionals, is headed by our Chief Investment Officer and our Chief Executive Officer. The origination team is responsible for sourcing potential investment opportunities and members of the investment origination team use their extensive relationships with various leading financial sponsors, management contacts within technology-related companies, trade sources, technology conferences and various publications to source prospective portfolio companies. Our investment origination team is divided into life sciences, technology, sustainable and renewable technology, and special situation sub-teams to better source potential portfolio companies.

In addition, we have developed a proprietary and comprehensive SQL-based database system to track various aspects of our investment process including sourcing, originations, transaction monitoring and post-investment performance. This proprietary SQL system allows our origination team to maintain, cultivate and grow our industry relationships while providing our origination team with comprehensive details on companies in the technology-related industries and their financial sponsors.

If a prospective portfolio company generally meets certain underwriting criteria, we perform preliminary due diligence, which may include high level company and technology assessments, evaluation of its financial sponsors support, market analysis, competitive analysis, identifying key management, risk analysis and transaction size, pricing, return analysis and structure analysis. If the preliminary due diligence is satisfactory, and the origination team recommends moving forward, we then structure, negotiate and execute a non-binding term sheet with the potential portfolio company. Upon execution of a term sheet, the investment opportunity moves to the underwriting process to complete formal due diligence review and approval.



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Underwriting***

The underwriting review includes formal due diligence and approval of the proposed investment in the portfolio company.

*Due Diligence.* Our due diligence on a prospective investment is typically completed by two or more investment professionals whom we define as the underwriting team. The underwriting team for a proposed investment consists of the deal sponsor who typically possesses general industry knowledge and is responsible for originating and managing the transaction, other investment professional(s) who perform due diligence, credit and corporate financial analyses and, as needed, our legal professionals. To ensure consistent underwriting, we generally use our standardized due diligence methodologies, which include due diligence on financial performance and credit risk as well as an analysis of the operations and the legal and applicable regulatory framework of a prospective portfolio company. The members of the underwriting team work together to conduct due diligence and understand the relationships among the prospective portfolio company's business plan, operations and financial performance.

As part of our evaluation of a proposed investment, the underwriting team prepares an investment memorandum for presentation to the investment committee. In preparing the investment memorandum, the underwriting team typically interviews select key management of the company and select financial sponsors and assembles information necessary to the investment decision. If and when appropriate, the investment professionals may also contact industry experts and customers, vendors or, in some cases, competitors of the company.

*Approval Process.* The sponsoring managing director or principal presents the investment memorandum to our investment committee for consideration. The approval of a majority of our investment committee and an affirmative vote by our Chief Executive Officer is required before we proceed with any investment. The members of our investment committee are our Chief Executive Officer, our Chief Financial Officer, and our Chief Investment Officer. The investment committee generally meets weekly and more frequently on an as-needed basis.

***Documentation***

Our legal department administers the documentation process for our investments. This department is responsible for documenting the transactions approved by our investment committee with a prospective portfolio company. This department negotiates loan documentation and, subject to appropriate approvals, final documents are prepared for execution by all parties. The legal department generally uses the services of external law firms to complete the necessary documentation.

***Loan and Compliance Administration***

Our investment committee, supported by our investment team, credit team, and finance department, administers loans and track covenant compliance, if applicable, of our investments and oversees periodic reviews of our critical functions to ensure adherence with our internal policies and procedures. After funding of a loan in accordance with the investment committee's approval, the loan is recorded in our loan administration software and our SQL-based database system. The investment team, credit team, and finance department are responsible for ensuring timely interest and principal payments and collateral management as well as advising the investment committee on the financial performance and trends of each portfolio company, including any covenant violations that occur, to aid us in assessing the appropriate course of action for each portfolio company and evaluating overall portfolio quality. In addition, the investment team and credit team advise the investment committee and the Audit Committee of our Board of Directors,

accordingly, regarding the credit and investment grading for each portfolio company as well as changes in the value of collateral that may occur.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

The investment team and credit team monitor our portfolio companies in order to determine whether the companies are meeting our financing criteria and their respective business plans and also monitors the financial trends of each portfolio company from its monthly or quarterly financial statements to assess the appropriate course of action for each company and to evaluate overall portfolio quality. In addition, our management team closely monitors the status and performance of each individual company through our SQL-based database system and periodic contact with our portfolio companies' management teams and their respective financial sponsors.

*Credit and Investment Grading System.* Our investment team and credit team use an investment grading system to characterize and monitor our outstanding loans. Our investment team and credit team monitors and, when appropriate, recommends changes to investment grading. Our investment committee reviews the recommendations and/or changes to the investment grading, which are submitted on a quarterly basis to the Audit Committee and our Board of Directors for approval.

From time to time, we will identify investments that require closer monitoring or become workout assets. We develop a workout strategy for workout assets and our investment committee monitors the progress against the strategy. We may incur losses from our investing activities, however, we work with our troubled portfolio companies in order to recover as much of our investments as is practicable, including possibly taking control of the portfolio company. There can be no assurance that principal will be recovered.

We use the following investment grading system approved by our Board of Directors:

- Grade 1. Loans involve the least amount of risk in our portfolio. The borrower is performing above expectations, and the trends and risk profile is generally favorable.
- Grade 2. The borrower is performing as expected and the risk profile is neutral to favorable. All new loans are initially graded 2.
- Grade 3. The borrower may be performing below expectations, and the loan's risk has increased materially since origination. We increase procedures to monitor a borrower that may have limited amounts of cash remaining on the balance sheet, is approaching its next equity capital raise within the next three to six months, or if the estimated fair value of the enterprise may be lower than when the loan was originated. We will generally lower the loan grade to a grade 3 even if the company is performing in accordance to plan as it approaches the need to raise additional cash to fund its operations. Once the borrower closes its new equity capital raise, we may increase the loan grade back to grade 2 or maintain it at a grade 3 as the company continues to pursue its business plan.
- Grade 4. The borrower is performing materially below expectations, and the loan risk has substantially increased since origination. Loans graded 4 may experience some partial loss or full return of principal but are expected to realize some loss of interest which is not anticipated to be repaid in full, which, to the extent not already reflected, may require the fair value of the loan to be reduced to the amount we anticipate will be recovered. Grade 4 investments are closely monitored.

Grade 5. The borrower is in workout, materially performing below expectations and a significant risk of principal loss is probable. Loans graded 5 will experience some partial principal loss or full loss of remaining principal outstanding is expected. Grade 5 loans will require the fair value of the loans be reduced to the amount, if any, we anticipate will be recovered.

At December 31, 2017, our investments had a weighted average investment grading of 2.17.

***Managerial Assistance***

As a business development company, we are required to offer, and provide upon request, managerial assistance to our portfolio companies. This assistance could involve, among other things, monitoring the operations of our portfolio companies, participating in board and management meetings, consulting with and advising officers of portfolio companies and providing other organizational and financial guidance. We may,

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

from time to time, receive fees for these services. In the event that such fees are received, they are incorporated into our operating income and are passed through to our stockholders, given the nature of our structure as an internally managed business development company. See [Regulation Significant Managerial Assistance](#) for additional information.

**COMPETITION**

Our primary competitors provide financing to prospective portfolio companies and include non-bank financial institutions, federally or state chartered banks, venture debt funds, financial institutions, venture capital funds, private equity funds, investment funds and investment banks. Many of these entities have greater financial and managerial resources than we have, and the 1940 Act imposes certain regulatory restrictions on us as a business development company to which many of our competitors are not subject. Additionally, competition is especially intense from commercial venture banks. However, we believe that few of our competitors possess the expertise to properly structure and price debt investments to venture capital-backed companies in technology-related industries. We believe that our specialization in financing technology-related companies will enable us to determine a range of potential values of intellectual property assets, evaluate the business prospects and operating characteristics of prospective portfolio companies and, as a result, identify investment opportunities that produce attractive risk-adjusted returns. For additional information concerning the competitive risks we face, see [Risk Factors Risks Related to our Business Structure](#). We operate in a highly competitive market for investment opportunities, and we may not be able to compete effectively.

**BROKERAGE ALLOCATIONS AND OTHER PRACTICES**

Because we generally acquire and dispose of our investments in privately negotiated transactions, we typically do not use brokers in the normal course of business. However, from time to time, we may work with brokers to sell positions we have acquired in the securities of publicly listed companies or to acquire positions (principally equity) in companies where we see a market opportunity to acquire such securities at attractive valuations. In cases where we do use a broker, we do not execute transactions through any particular broker or dealer, but will seek to obtain the best net results for the Company, taking into account such factors as price (including the applicable brokerage commission or dealer spread), size of order, difficulty of execution, and operational facilities of the firm and the firm's risk and skill in positioning blocks of securities. While we generally seek reasonably competitive execution costs, we may not necessarily pay the lowest spread or commission available. Subject to applicable legal requirements, we may select a broker based partly upon brokerage or research services provided to us. In return for such services, we may pay a higher commission than other brokers would charge if we determine in good faith that such commission is reasonable in relation to the services provided.

**EMPLOYEES**

As of December 31, 2017, we had 67 employees, including approximately 35 investment and portfolio management professionals, all of whom have extensive experience working on financing transactions for technology-related companies.

**LEGAL PROCEEDINGS**

We may, from time to time, be involved in litigation arising out of our operations in the normal course of business or otherwise. Furthermore, third parties may try to seek to impose liability on us in connection with the activities of our

portfolio companies. While the outcome of any current legal proceedings cannot at this time be predicted with certainty, we do not expect any current matters will materially affect our financial condition or results of operations; however, there can be no assurance whether any pending legal proceedings will have a material adverse effect on our financial condition or results of operations in any future reporting period.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**PORTFOLIO COMPANIES****(dollars in thousands)**

The following tables set forth certain information as of December 31, 2017 regarding each portfolio company in which we had a debt or equity investment. The general terms of our loans and other investments are described in Business Our Investments and Operations. Other than these investments, our only formal relationship with our portfolio companies is the offer to make available significant managerial assistance. In addition, we may receive rights to observe the Board of Directors meetings of our portfolio companies. Amounts are presented in thousands.

**(dollars in thousands)**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Maturity Date</b>	<b>Interest Rate and Floor<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(4)</sup></b>
<b>Debt Investments</b>							
<b>Biotechnology Tools</b>							
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
Excicure, Inc. <sup>(12)</sup> 8045 Lamon Avenue, Suite 410 Skokie, IL 60077	Biotechnology Tools	Senior Secured	September 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.45%  or Floor rate of 9.95%, 3.85% Exit Fee	\$ 4,999	\$ 5,115	\$ 5,146
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						5,115	5,146
<b>Subtotal: Biotechnology Tools (0.61%)*</b>						5,115	5,146
<b>Communications &amp; Networking</b>							
<b>Under 1 Year Maturity</b>							
OpenPeak, Inc. <sup>(8)</sup> One Riverfront Plaza, 1037 Raymond Boulevard, Sixteenth Floor Newark, NJ 07102	Communications & Networking	Senior Secured	April 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 8.75%  or Floor rate of 12.00%	\$ 11,464	8,228	

**Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity** 8,228

**Subtotal: Communications & Networking (0.00%)\*** 8,228

**Consumer &  
Business Products**

**Under 1 Year  
Maturity**

Antenna79 (p.k.a. Pong Research Corporation) <sup>(15)</sup>	Consumer & Business Products	Senior Secured	December 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 9.50%	\$ 1,000	1,000	1,000
--	------------------------------	----------------	---------------	---	----------	-------	-------

709N 400 W #3

North Salt Lake, UT  
84054

**Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity** 1,000 1,000

**1-5 Years Maturity**

Antenna79 (p.k.a. Pong Research Corporation) <sup>(15)</sup>	Consumer & Business Products	Senior Secured	December 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 7.45% or Floor rate of 10.95%, 2.95% Exit Fee	\$ 18,440	18,580	18,571
--	------------------------------	----------------	---------------	---	-----------	--------	--------

709N 400 W #3

North Salt Lake, UT  
84054

Second Time Around (Simplify Holdings, LLC) <sup>(7)(8)(15)</sup>	Consumer & Business Products	Senior Secured	February 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 7.25% or Floor rate of 10.75%, 4.75% Exit Fee	\$ 1,746	1,781	
---	------------------------------	----------------	---------------	---	----------	-------	--

560 Harrison Ave.,  
Suite 501  
Boston, MA 02118

**Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity** 20,361 18,571

**Subtotal: Consumer & Business Products (2.33%)\*** 21,361 19,571

**Drug Delivery  
Under 1 Year  
Maturity**

Agile Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(11)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	December 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75%	\$ 10,888	11,292	11,292
--	---------------	----------------	---------------	-----------------------------	-----------	--------	--------

101 Poor Farm Road



Princeton, NJ 08540

or Floor rate of 9.00%,  
3.70% Exit Fee

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements(dollars in  
thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
Pulmatrix Inc. <sup>(9)(11)</sup> 99 Hayden Avenue, Suite 390 Lexington, MA 02421	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	July 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 6.25% or Floor rate of 9.50%, 3.50% Exit Fee	\$ 3,259	\$ 3,455	\$ 3,455
ZP Opco, Inc (p.k.a. Zosano Pharma) <sup>(11)</sup> 34790 Ardentech Court Fremont, CA 94555	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	December 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 2.70% or Floor rate of 7.95%, 2.87% Exit Fee	\$ 6,316	6,609	6,609
<b>Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity</b>						21,356	21,356
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
AcelRx Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(10)(11)(15)</sup> 351 Galveston Drive Redwood City, CA 94063	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	March 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.05% or Floor rate of 9.55%, 11.69% Exit Fee	\$ 18,653	18,925	18,875
Antares Pharma Inc. <sup>(10)(15)</sup> 100 Princeton South, Suite 300 Ewing, NJ 08628	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	July 2022	Interest rate PRIME + 4.50% or Floor rate of 9.00%, 4.25% Exit Fee	\$ 25,000	25,006	24,958
Edge Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(12)</sup> 300 Connell Dr., Suite 4000 Berkeley Heights, NJ 07922	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	February 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.65% or Floor rate of 9.15%, 4.95% Exit Fee	\$ 20,000	20,377	20,331

<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>					64,308	64,164
-------------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--------	--------

<b>Subtotal: Drug Delivery (10.17%)*</b>					85,664	85,520
--	--	--	--	--	--------	--------

**Drug Discovery &  
Development  
Under 1 Year  
Maturity**

CytRx Corporation <sup>(11)(15)</sup> 11726 San Vicente Blvd., Suite 650 Los Angeles, CA 90049	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	August 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 9.50%, 7.09% Exit Fee	\$ 9,986	11,172	11,172
--	------------------------------	----------------	-------------	--	----------	--------	--------

Epirus Biopharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(8)</sup> 99 High Street Boston, MA 02110-2320	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	April 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 4.70% or Floor rate of 7.95%, 3.00% Exit Fee	\$ 3,027	3,310	340
---	------------------------------	----------------	------------	--	----------	-------	-----

<b>Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity</b>					14,482	11,512
--	--	--	--	--	--------	--------

**1-5 Years Maturity**

Auris Medical Holding, AG <sup>(5)(10)</sup> Dornacherstrasse 210 CH-4053, Basel Switzerland	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	January 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.05% or Floor rate of 9.55%, 5.75% Exit Fee	\$ 10,341	10,610	10,563
--	------------------------------	----------------	--------------	--	-----------	--------	--------

Aveo Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(10)(13)</sup> One Broadway, 9th Floor Cambridge, MA 02142	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	July 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.70% or Floor rate of 9.45%, 5.40% Exit Fee	\$ 10,000	10,345	10,344
	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	July 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.70% or Floor rate of 9.45%, 3.00% Exit Fee	\$ 10,000	9,918	9,915

<b>Total Aveo Pharmaceuticals, Inc.</b>					\$ 20,000	20,263	20,259
---	--	--	--	--	-----------	--------	--------

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Axovant Sciences Ltd. <sup>(5)(10)</sup> 11 Times Square 33rd Floor New York, NY 10036	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	March 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 6.80% or Floor rate of 10.55%	\$ 55,000	53,631	53,448
Brickell Biotech, Inc. <sup>(12)</sup> 5777 Central Ave, Suite 102 Boulder, CO 80301	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	September 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.70% or Floor rate of 9.20%, 6.75% Exit Fee	\$ 6,090	6,380	6,361
Chemocentryx, Inc. <sup>(10)(15)(17)</sup> 850 Maude Avenue. Mountain View, CA 94043	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	December 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 3.30% or Floor rate of 8.05%, 6.25% Exit Fee	\$ 5,000	4,947	4,947

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**(dollars in  
thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
Genocea Biosciences, Inc. <sup>(11)</sup> 100 Acorn Park Drive, 5th Floor Cambridge, MA 02140	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	January 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 2.25%  or Floor rate of 7.25%, 4.95% Exit Fee	\$ 13,851	\$ 14,482	\$ 14,385
Insmed, Incorporated <sup>(11)</sup> 10 FINDERNE Avenue, Building 10 Bridgewater, NJ 08807	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	October 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75%  or Floor rate of 9.25%, 4.86% Exit Fee	\$ 55,000	55,425	54,963
Metuchen Pharmaceuticals LLC <sup>(12)(14)</sup> 11 Commerce Drive, First Floor Cranford, NJ 07016	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	October 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 7.25%  or Floor rate of 10.75%,  PIK Interest 1.35%, 2.25% Exit Fee	\$ 25,561	25,721	25,643
Motif BioSciences Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 125 Park Avenue., 25th Floor New York, NY 10017	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	September 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50%  or Floor rate of 10.00%, 2.15% Exit Fee	\$ 15,000	14,651	14,651
Myovant Sciences, Ltd. <sup>(5)(10)(13)(17)</sup> 2000 Sierra Point Parkway, 9th Floor Brisbane, CA 94005	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	May 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.00%  or Floor rate of 8.25%, 6.55% Exit Fee	\$ 25,000	24,704	24,704

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Paratek Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (p.k.a. Transcept Pharmaceuticals, Inc.) <sup>(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	September 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 2.75% or Floor rate of 8.50%, 4.50%	\$ 40,000	40,144	39,829
75 Park Plaza, 4th Floor Boston, MA 02116	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	September 2020	Exit Fee Interest rate PRIME + 2.75% or Floor rate of 8.50%, 4.50%	\$ 10,000	10,040	9,958
	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	September 2020	Exit Fee Interest rate PRIME + 2.75% or Floor rate of 8.50%, 2.25% Exit Fee	\$ 10,000	9,964	9,895
Total Paratek Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (p.k.a. Transcept Pharmaceuticals, Inc.)					\$ 60,000	60,148	59,682
PhaseRx, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	December 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.75% or Floor rate of 9.25%, 5.85% Exit Fee	\$ 4,694	4,842	1,917
410 West Harrison Street, Suite 300 Seattle, WA 98119							
Stealth Bio Therapeutics Corp. <sup>(5)(10)(12)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	January 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50% or Floor rate of 9.50%, 5.00% Exit Fee	\$ 15,000	14,898	14,847
275 Grove Street, Suite 3-107 Newton, MA 02466							
uniQure B.V. <sup>(5)(10)(11)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	May 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 3.00% or Floor rate of 8.25%, 5.48% Exit Fee	\$ 20,000	20,579	20,543
Paasheувelweg 25A Amsterdam, The Netherlands 1105 BP							
Verastem, Inc. <sup>(12)(17)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 10.50%, 4.50% Exit Fee	\$ 5,000	4,957	4,910
117 Kendrick Street, Suite 500 Needham, MA 02494							
	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 10.50%, 4.50% Exit Fee	\$ 5,000	4,996	4,949
					\$ 5,000	4,953	4,907

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 10.50%, 4.50% Exit Fee			
Total Verastem, Inc.					\$ 15,000	14,906	14,766
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						346,187	341,679
<b>Subtotal: Drug Discovery &amp; Development (42.00%)*</b>						360,669	353,191

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements(dollars in  
thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
<b>Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware</b>							
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
908 DEVICES INC. <sup>(15)</sup>	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Senior Secured	September 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.00%	\$ 10,000	\$ 10,014	\$ 9,887
27 Drydock Avenue, 7th Floor				or Floor rate of 8.25%, 4.25% Exit Fee			
Boston, MA 02210							
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						10,014	9,887
<b>Subtotal: Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware (1.18%)*</b>						10,014	9,887
<b>Healthcare Services, Other</b>							
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
Medsphere Systems Corporation <sup>(14)(15)</sup>	Healthcare Services, Other	Senior Secured	February 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75%	\$ 17,607	17,437	17,437
632 Commercial St.				or Floor rate of 9.00%,			
San Francisco, CA 94111				PIK Interest 1.75%			
	Healthcare Services, Other	Senior Secured	February 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75% or Floor rate of 9.00%, PIK Interest 1.75%	\$ 5,009	4,963	4,963
Total Medsphere Systems Coporation						\$ 22,616	22,400
Oak Street Health <sup>(12)</sup>	Healthcare Services, Other	Senior Secured	September 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 5.00%	\$ 20,000	19,965	19,965
327 West Belden Ave., Suite 3				or Floor rate of 9.75%, 5.95% Exit Fee			
Chicago, IL 60614							



Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

PH Group Holdings <sup>(13)</sup>	Healthcare Services, Other	Senior Secured	September 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 7.45%	\$ 20,000	19,878	19,803
950 N Glebe Rd., Suite 4000				or Floor rate of 10.95%			
Arlington, VA 22203	Healthcare Services, Other	Senior Secured	September 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 7.45% or Floor rate of 10.95%	\$ 10,000	9,922	9,840
Total PH Group Holdings					\$ 30,000	29,800	29,643
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						72,165	72,165
<b>Subtotal: Healthcare Services, Other (8.56%)*</b>						72,165	72,008

**Information Services**

**1-5 Years Maturity**

MDX Medical, Inc. <sup>(14)(15)(17)</sup>	Information Services	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.25%	\$ 7,568	7,369	7,327
160 Chubb Avenue, Suite 301				or Floor rate of 8.25%,			
Lyndhurst, NJ 07071				PIK Interest 1.70%			
Netbase Solutions, Inc. <sup>(13)(14)</sup>	Information Services	Senior Secured	August 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00%	\$ 9,051	8,730	8,730
3960 Freedom Circle, Suite 200				or Floor rate of 10.00%,			
Santa Clara, CA 95054				PIK Interest 2.00%, 3.00% Exit Fee			
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						16,099	16,057
<b>Subtotal: Information Services (1.91%)*</b>						16,099	16,057

**Internet Consumer & Business Services**

**1-5 Years Maturity**

AppDirect, Inc.	Internet Consumer &	Senior Secured	January 2022	Interest rate PRIME + 5.70%	\$ 10,000	9,885	9,885
-----------------	---------------------	----------------	--------------	-----------------------------	-----------	-------	-------

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

650 California Street, Fl 25	Business Services			or Floor rate of 9.95%, 3.45% Exit Fee			
San Francisco, CA 94108							
Aria Systems, Inc. <sup>(11)(14)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 3.20%	\$ 2,103	2,104	1,803
575 Market Street, 32nd Floor				or Floor rate of 6.95%, PIK Interest 1.95%, 1.50%			
San Francisco, CA 94105	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.20%	\$ 18,832	18,839	16,144
				or Floor rate of 8.95%, PIK Interest 1.95%, 1.50%			
				Exit Fee			
Total Aria Systems, Inc.					\$ 20,935	20,943	17,947

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

(dollars in thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
Greenphire Inc. 630 Allendale Road., Suite 250	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	January 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 8.00% or Floor rate of 9.00%	\$ 3,883	\$ 3,883	\$ 3,883
King of Prussia, PA 19406	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	January 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 3.75%  or Floor rate of 7.00%	\$ 1,000	1,000	1,000
Total Greenphire Inc.					\$ 4,883	4,883	4,883
Intent Media, Inc. <sup>(14)(15)</sup>  315 Hudson St., 9th Floor  New York, NY 10013	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	May  2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.25%  or Floor rate of 8.75%,  PIK Interest 1.00%, 2.00% Exit Fee	\$ 5,050	5,011	5,027
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	May  2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50%  or Floor rate of 9.00%,  PIK Interest 2.35%, 2.00% Exit Fee	\$ 2,020	1,987	1,991
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	May  2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50%  or Floor rate of 9.00%,  PIK Interest 2.50%, 2.00% Exit Fee	\$ 2,022	1,988	1,992
Total Intent Media, Inc.					\$ 9,092	8,986	9,010
Interactions Corporation	Internet Consumer & Business	Senior Secured	March	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 8.60% or Floor	\$ 25,000	25,013	25,013

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

31 Hayward Street, Suite E  Franklin, MA 02038	Services		2021	rate of 9.85%, 1.75% Exit Fee			
LogicSource <sup>(15)</sup>  20 Marshall Street  Sourth Norwalk, CT 06854	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	October  2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.25%  or Floor rate of 9.75%, 5.00% Exit Fee	\$ 6,452	6,701	6,726
Snagajob.com, Inc. <sup>(13)(14)</sup>  1919 N Lynn Street, 7th Floor  Arlington, VA 22209	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	July 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 5.15%  or Floor rate of 9.15%,  PIK Interest 1.95%, 2.55% Exit Fee	\$ 41,023	40,633	41,036
Tectura Corporation <sup>(7)(8)(9)(14)</sup>  951 Old County Road, Suite 2-317  Belmont, CA 94002	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	June 2021	Interest rate FIXED 6.00%,  PIK Interest 3.00%	\$ 20,298	20,298	19,219
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	June 2021	PIK Interest 8.00%	\$ 11,015	240	
Total Tectura Corporation					\$ 31,313	20,538	19,219
The Faction Group  1660 Lincoln St., Floor 16  Denver, CO 80264	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	January 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 9.25% or Floor rate of 10.25%	\$ 8,000	8,000	8,000
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	January 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75%  or Floor rate of 8.25%	\$ 2,000	2,000	2,000
Total The Faction Group					\$ 10,000	10,000	10,000
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						147,582	143,719
<b>Subtotal: Internet Consumer &amp; Business Services (17.09%)*</b>						147,582	143,719
<b>Media/Content/Info Under 1 Year Maturity</b>							
Machine Zone, Inc. <sup>(14)(16)</sup>	Media/Content/Info	Senior Secured	May 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 2.50%	\$ 106,986	106,641	106,641

1050 Page Mill Road

or Floor rate of 6.75%,

Palo Alto, CA 94304

PIK Interest 3.00%

<b>Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity</b>	106,641	106,641
--	---------	---------

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**(dollars in  
thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
Bustle <sup>(14)(15)</sup>	Media/Content/Info	Senior Secured	June 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.10%	\$ 15,016	\$ 14,935	\$ 14,935
315 Park Avenue South Floor 11				or Floor rate of 8.35%,			
New York, NY 10010				PIK Interest 1.95%, 1.95% Exit Fee			
FanDuel, Inc. <sup>(9)(12)(14)</sup>	Media/Content/Info	Senior Secured	November 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 7.25%	\$ 19,354	19,762	19,695
300 Park Avenue South, 14th Floor				or Floor rate of 10.75%, 10.41% Exit Fee			
New York, NY 10005	Media/Content/Info	Convertible Debt	September 2020	PIK Interest 25.00%	\$ 1,000	1,000	1,000
Total FanDuel, Inc.					\$ 20,354	20,762	20,695
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						35,697	35,630
<b>Subtotal: Media/Content/Info (16.92%)*</b>						142,338	142,271
<b>Medical Devices &amp; Equipment Under 1 Year Maturity</b>							
Amedica Corporation <sup>(9)(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	January 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 7.70%	\$ 605	2,255	2,255
1885 West 2100 South				or Floor rate of 10.95%, 8.25% Exit Fee			
Salt Lake City, UT 84119							
Aspire Bariatrics, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	October 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 4.00%	\$ 2,527	2,848	2,848

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

3200 Horizon Drive, Suite 100			or Floor rate of 9.25%, 5.42% Exit Fee				
King of Prussia, PA 19406							
<b>Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity</b>						5,103	5,103
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
IntegenX, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.05%	\$ 12,500	13,042	12,991
5720 Stoneridge Drive, Suite 300			or Floor rate of 10.05%, 6.75% Exit Fee				
Pleasanton, CA 94588							
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.05%	\$ 2,500	2,599	2,598
			or Floor rate of 10.05%, 6.75% Exit Fee				
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.05%	\$ 2,500	2,618	2,601
			or Floor rate of 10.05%, 9.75% Exit Fee				
Total IntegenX, Inc.					\$ 17,500	18,259	18,190
Intuity Medical, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	June 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 5.00% or Floor rate of 9.25%, 4.95% Exit Fee	\$ 17,500	17,013	17,013
3500 West Warren Avenue.							
Fremont, CA 94538							
Micell Technologies, Inc. <sup>(12)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	August 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 7.25% or Floor rate of 10.50%, 5.00% Exit Fee	\$ 5,469	5,744	5,708
801 Capitola Drive, Suite 1							
Durham, NC 27713							
Quanta Fluid Solutions <sup>(5)(10)(11)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	April 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 8.05% or Floor rate of 11.55%, 5.00% Exit Fee	\$ 10,117	10,432	10,386
Tything Road							

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Alcester, UK B49 6EU							
Quanterix Corporation <sup>(11)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	March 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 2.75% or Floor rate of 8.00%, 4.00% Exit Fee	\$ 9,043	9,477	9,477
113 Hartwell Avenue  Lexington, MA 02421							
Sebacia, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	July 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.35% or Floor rate of 8.85%, 6.05% Exit Fee	\$ 8,000	7,927	7,919
2905 Premiere Parkway, Suite 150  Duluth, GA 30097							
Tela Bio, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.95% or Floor rate of 9.45%, 3.15% Exit Fee	\$ 5,000	4,991	4,973
One Great Valley Pkwy, Suite 24  Malvern, PA 19355							
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						73,843	73,666
<b>Subtotal: Medical Devices &amp; Equipment (9.37%)*</b>						78,946	78,769



**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**(dollars in  
thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
<b>Semiconductors</b>							
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
Achronix Semiconductor Corporation <sup>(15)(17)</sup>	Semiconductors	Senior Secured	August 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 7.00% or Floor rate of 11.00%, 12.50% Exit Fee	\$ 5,000	\$ 5,084	\$ 5,100
2953 Bunker Hill Lane, Suite 101 Santa Clara, CA 95054	Semiconductors	Senior Secured	February 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 10.00%	\$ 4,274	4,274	4,273
Total Achronix Semiconductor Corporation					\$ 9,274	9,358	9,373
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						9,358	9,373
<b>Subtotal: Semiconductors (1.11%)*</b>						9,358	9,373
<b>Software</b>							
<b>Under 1 Year Maturity</b>							
Clickfox, Inc. <sup>(13)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	May 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 8.00% or Floor rate of 11.50%, 12.01% Exit Fee	\$ 6,378	7,671	7,671
3445 Peachtree Road, Suite 450 Atlanta, GA 30326							
Digital Train Limited (p.k.a. Jumpstart Games, Inc.) <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	July 2018	Interest rate 12-month LIBOR + 2.50%	\$ 5,671	5,671	4,073
21250 Hawthorne Boulevard, Suite 380 Torrance, CA 90503							
<b>Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity</b>						13,342	11,744
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Clarabridge, Inc. <sup>(12)(14)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	April 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.80% or Floor rate of 8.55%, PIK Interest 3.25%	\$ 40,893	40,870	41,063
11400 Commerce Park Drive., Suite 500 Reston, VA 20191							
Emma, Inc.	Software	Senior Secured	September 2022	Interest rate daily LIBOR + 7.75% or Floor rate of 8.75%	\$ 50,000	48,565	48,565
9 Lea Avenue Nashville, TN 37210							
Evernote Corporation <sup>(14)(15)(17)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	October 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 5.45% or Floor rate of 8.95%	\$ 6,000	5,974	6,100
305 Walnut Street Redwood City, CA 94063							
	Software	Senior Secured	July 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 9.50%, PIK Interest 1.25%	\$ 4,023	3,999	3,992
Total Evernote Corporation					\$ 10,023	9,973	10,092
Fuze, Inc. <sup>(13)(14)(15)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	July 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 3.70% or Floor rate of 7.95%, PIK Interest 1.55%, 3.55% Exit Fee	\$ 50,332	50,464	50,420
2 Copley Place, Floor 7 Boston, MA 02116							
Impact Radius Holdings, Inc. <sup>(14)(17)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.25% or Floor rate of 8.75%, PIK Interest 1.55%, 1.75% Exit Fee	\$ 7,544	7,552	7,498
223 East De La Guerra Street Santa Barbara, CA 93101							
Lithium Technologies, Inc. <sup>(17)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	October 2022	Interest rate 1-month LIBOR + 8.00% or Floor rate of 9.00%	\$ 12,000	11,740	11,740
225 Bush St. San Francisco, CA 94104							
Microsystems Holding Company,	Software	Senior Secured	July	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 8.25% or Floor	\$ 12,000	11,821	11,821

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

LLC			2022	rate of 9.25%			
535 Madison Ave., Fl 4  New York, NY 10022							
OneLogin, Inc. <sup>(14)(15)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	August  2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.45%  or Floor rate of 9.95%,  PIK Interest 3.25%	\$ 15,883	15,811	16,071
150 Spear Street, Suite 1400  San Francisco, CA 94105							
PerfectServe, Inc.	Software	Senior Secured	April  2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 9.00% or Floor rate of 10.00%, 2.50% Exit Fee	\$ 16,000	16,023	16,023
10024 Investment Drive  Knoxville, TN 37932							

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**(dollars in  
thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
	Software	Senior Secured	April 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 9.00% or Floor rate of 10.00%, 2.50% Exit Fee	\$ 4,000	\$ 4,005	\$ 4,005
Total PerfectServe, Inc.					\$ 20,000	20,028	20,028
Pollen, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	April 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 4.25% or Floor rate of 8.50%, 4.00% Exit Fee	\$ 7,000	6,964	6,964
2000 Shawnee Mission Parkway, Suite 200 Mission Woods, KS 66205							
Poplicus, Inc. <sup>(8)(14)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	May 2022	Interest rate FIXED 6.00%, PIK Interest 3.00%	\$ 1,250	1,250	
19 South Park St. San Francisco, CA 94107							
Quid, Inc. <sup>(14)(15)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	October 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75% or Floor rate of 8.25%, PIK Interest 2.25%, 3.00% Exit Fee	\$ 8,303	8,397	8,430
600 Harrison Street, Suite 400 San Francisco, CA 94107							
RapidMiner, Inc. <sup>(14)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50% or Floor rate of 9.75%, PIK Interest 1.65%	\$ 7,001	6,971	6,971
10 Milk Street., 11th Floor Boston, MA 02108							
Regent Education <sup>(14)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	January 2021	Interest rate FIXED 10.00%, PIK Interest 2.00%, 6.35% Exit Fee	\$ 3,285	3,291	3,291
340 East Patrick Street, Suite 210							

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Frederick, MD 21701							
Signpost, Inc. <sup>(14)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	February 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.15% or Floor rate of 8.15%, PIK Interest 1.75%, 3.75% Exit Fee	\$ 15,510	15,603	15,685
127 W 26th St., Floor 2  New York, NY 10001							
Vela Trading Technologies	Software	Senior Secured	July 2022	Interest rate daily LIBOR + 9.50% or Floor rate of 10.50%	\$ 20,000	19,495	19,557
211 East 43rd Street, 5th Floor  New York, NY 10017							
Wrike, Inc. <sup>(14)(17)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	February 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 9.50%, PIK Interest 2.00%, 3.00% Exit Fee	\$ 10,165	9,971	10,007
10 Almaden Blvd, Suite 1000  San Jose, CA 95113							
ZocDoc	Software	Senior Secured	April 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 9.50% or Floor rate of 10.50%, 1.00% Exit Fee	\$ 20,000	20,011	20,011
568 Broadway Floor 9  New York, NY 10012							
	Software	Senior Secured	November 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 9.50% or Floor rate of 10.50%, 1.00% Exit Fee	\$ 10,000	10,005	10,005
Total ZocDoc					\$ 30,000	30,016	30,016
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						318,782	318,219
<b>Subtotal: Software (39.24%)*</b>						332,124	329,963

**Specialty  
Pharmaceuticals**

**Under 1 Year  
Maturity**

Jaguar Animal Health, Inc. <sup>(11)</sup>	Specialty Pharmaceuticals	Senior Secured	August 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 5.65%	\$ 1,089	1,496	1,496
--	---------------------------	----------------	-------------	-----------------------------	----------	-------	-------

201 Mission Street,  
Suite 2375

or Floor rate of 9.90%,  
7.00% Exit Fee

San Francisco, CA  
94105

<b>Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity</b>	1,496	1,496
--	-------	-------

**1-5 Years Maturity**

Alimera Sciences, Inc. <sup>(11)(14)</sup>	Specialty Pharmaceuticals	Senior Secured	November 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 7.50%	\$ 35,398	35,517	35,517
--	---------------------------	----------------	---------------	-----------------------------	-----------	--------	--------

6120 Windward  
Parkway, Suite 290

or Floor rate of 11.00%,

Alpharetta, GA  
30005

PIK Interest 1.00%, 4.00%  
Exit Fee

<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>	35,517	35,517
-------------------------------------	--------	--------

<b>Subtotal: Specialty Pharmaceuticals (4.40%)*</b>	37,013	37,013
---	--------	--------

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements(dollars in  
thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
<b>Surgical Devices</b>							
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
Transmedics, Inc. <sup>(13)</sup>	Surgical Devices	Senior Secured	February 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 5.30%	\$ 8,500	\$ 8,756	\$ 8,757
200 Minuteman Road, Suite 302 Andover, MA 01810				or Floor rate of 9.55%, 6.70% Exit Fee			
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						8,756	8,757
<b>Subtotal: Surgical Devices (1.04%)*</b>						8,756	8,757
<b>Sustainable and Renewable Technology</b>							
<b>Under 1 Year Maturity</b>							
FuelCell Energy, Inc. <sup>(12)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	October 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50%	\$ 16,806	18,190	18,190
3 Great Pasture Road Danbury, CT 06810				or Floor rate of 9.50%, 8.50% Exit Fee			
Kinestral Technologies Inc.	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	October 2018	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 7.75% or Floor rate of 8.75%, 3.23% Exit Fee	\$ 3,867	3,882	3,882
3955 Trust Way Hayward, CA 94545							
<b>Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity</b>						22,072	22,072
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
ChargePoint Inc.	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	August 2020	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 8.75% or Floor rate of 9.75%, 2.00% Exit Fee	\$ 19,394	19,416	19,416
254 East Hacienda Avenue							

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Campbell, CA  
95008

Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC (p.k.a. Sungevity, Inc.) <sup>(6)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	August 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 8.70% or Floor rate of 12.95%, 4.50% Exit Fee	\$ 14,000	13,604	13,604
66 Franklin Street, Suite 310 Oakland, CA 94607							

Proterra, Inc. <sup>(11)(14)(17)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	November 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 3.70% or Floor rate of 7.95%, PIK Interest 1.75%, 5.95% Exit Fee	\$ 25,036	25,997	26,097
1 Whitlee Ct. Greenville, SC 29607							

	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	November 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 3.70% or Floor rate of 7.95%, PIK Interest 1.75%, 7.00% Exit Fee	\$ 5,007	5,173	5,190
--	--------------------------------------	----------------	---------------	---	----------	-------	-------

Total Proterra, Inc.					\$ 30,043	31,170	31,287
----------------------	--	--	--	--	-----------	--------	--------

Rive Technology, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	January 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.20% or Floor rate of 9.45%, 4.00% Exit Fee	\$ 4,258	4,498	4,515
1 Deer Park Drive, Suite A Monmouth Junction, NJ 08852							

Tendril Networks <sup>(12)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate FIXED 9.25%, 8.50% Exit Fee	\$ 13,156	13,863	13,845
2580 55th Street, Suite 100 Boulder, CO 80301							

<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						82,551	82,667
-------------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--------	--------

<b>Subtotal: Sustainable and Renewable Technology (12.45%)*</b>						104,623	104,739
---	--	--	--	--	--	---------	---------



<b>Total: Debt Investments (168.38%)*</b>	<b>1,440,055</b>	<b>1,415,984</b>
---	------------------	------------------

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

(in thousands)

Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Percentage Ownership	Series	Shares	Cost <sup>(2)</sup>
<b>Investments</b>						
<b>Technology Tools</b>						
Technologies, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> Industrial Road, Suite 310 Folsom, CA 94070	Biotechnology Tools	Equity	0.69%	Common Stock	55,780	\$ 500
<b>Total: Biotechnology Tools (0.00%)*</b>						500
<b>Communications &amp; Networking</b>						
Technology Management Co II, Inc. <sup>(7)(15)</sup> Lightbridge Drive Plymouth, PA 19422	Communications & Networking	Equity	100.00%	Common Stock	100	3,100
nt, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> Colon Street, 13th Floor Denver, CO 80203	Communications & Networking	Equity	0.26%	Common Stock	114,192	102
Network Holdings, Inc. 100 North Riverside Plaza, Suite 2730 Chicago, IL 60606	Communications & Networking	Equity	3.01%	Preferred Series A	1,000,000	1,000
<b>Total: Communications &amp; Networking (0.73%)*</b>						4,202
<b>Diagnostic</b>						
nt, Inc. Harbor Way Parkway, Suite 200 Folsom, CA 94502	Diagnostic	Equity	0.36%	Common Stock	937,998	750
<b>Total: Diagnostic (0.09%)*</b>						750
<b>Drug Delivery</b>						
Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(10)</sup> Weston Drive Berkeley, CA 94063	Drug Delivery	Equity	0.11%	Common Stock	54,240	108
arma Incorporated <sup>(15)</sup> 1000 Broadway St., Ste 160 San Francisco, CA 94103	Drug Delivery	Equity	0.47%	Preferred Series D	165,000	500

San Francisco, CA 94107

Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> 1000 Bell Dr., Suite 4000 Riverside Heights, NJ 07922	Drug Delivery	Equity	0.16%	Common Stock	49,965	309
--	---------------	--------	-------	--------------	--------	-----

Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup> 1000 Highway 360, Suite 400 Marshall, TX 75050	Drug Delivery	Equity	0.43%	Common Stock	125,000	1,500
---	---------------	--------	-------	--------------	---------	-------

<b>Total: Drug Delivery (0.32%)*</b>						2,417
--------------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	-------

### Drug Discovery & Development

Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(10)(15)</sup> 1000 Broadway, 9th Floor Boston, MA 02142	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	1.61%	Common Stock	1,901,791	1,715
--	------------------------------	--------	-------	--------------	-----------	-------

Pharmaceuticals Ltd. <sup>(4)(5)(10)</sup> 1000 Park Square 33rd Floor New York, NY 10036	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	0.12%	Common Stock	129,827	1,270
---	------------------------------	--------	-------	--------------	---------	-------

Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> 1000 Pratt Street, Suite 606 Baltimore, MD 21202	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	0.38%	Common Stock	119,087	1,000
---	------------------------------	--------	-------	--------------	---------	-------

Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (p.k.a. Cerulean Pharma, 1000 House Drive Boston, MA 02451	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	0.22%	Common Stock	13,550	1,000
--	------------------------------	--------	-------	--------------	--------	-------

Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup> 1000 Cambridge Park Dr Boston, MA 02140	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	0.28%	Common Stock	142,858	1,000
--	------------------------------	--------	-------	--------------	---------	-------

Technologies <sup>(4)(10)</sup> 1000 South Street, Suite 100 San Francisco, CA 94710	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	0.03%	Common Stock	20,000	550
--	------------------------------	--------	-------	--------------	--------	-----

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**(dollars in  
thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Percentage		Series	Shares	Cost <sup>(2)</sup>	Value <sup>(3)</sup>
		Investment	Ownership				
Epirus Biopharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>  99 High Street  Boston, MA 02110-2320	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	0.76%	Common Stock	200,000	\$ 1,000	\$
Genocea Biosciences, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>  100 Acorn Park Drive, 5th Floor  Cambridge, MA 02140	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	0.78%	Common Stock	223,463	2,000	259
Inotek Pharmaceuticals Corporation <sup>(4)</sup>  131 Hartwell Ave., Suite 105  Lexington, MA 02421	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	4.24%	Common Stock	3,778	1,500	10
Insmed, Incorporated <sup>(4)</sup>  10 Finderne Avenue, Building 10  Bridgewater, NJ 08807	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	0.09%	Common Stock	70,771	1,000	2,154
Melinta Therapeutics <sup>(4)</sup>  300 TriState International, Suite 272	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	0.20%	Common Stock	43,840	2,000	693

Lincolnshire, IL 60069							
Paratek Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (p.k.a.	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	0.27%	Common Stock	76,362	2,743	1,367
Transcept Pharmaceuticals, Inc.) <sup>(4)</sup>							
75 Park Plaza, 4th Floor							
Boston, MA 02116							
<b>Subtotal: Drug Discovery &amp; Development (1.50%)*</b>						16,778	12,579
<b>Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware</b>							
Identiv, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Equity	0.05%	Common Stock	6,700	34	22
2201 Walnut Avenue Suite 100							
Fremont, CA 94538							
<b>Subtotal: Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware (0.00%)*</b>						34	22
<b>Information Services</b>							
DocuSign, Inc.	Information Services	Equity	0.24%	Common Stock	385,000	6,081	8,011
221 Main St., Suite 1000 San Francisco, CA 94105							
<b>Subtotal: Information Services (0.95%)*</b>						6,081	8,011
<b>Internet Consumer &amp; Business Services</b>							
Blurb, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	0.38%	Preferred Series B	220,653	\$ 175	\$ 46
580 California St., Suite 300							
San Francisco, CA 94104							
Brigade Group, Inc. (p.k.a. Philotic, Inc.)	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	0.05%	Common Stock	9,023	93	
548 4th Street							

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

San Francisco, CA  
94107

Lightspeed POS, Inc. <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	0.08%	Preferred Series C	230,030	250	233
700 St-Antoine Est, Suite 300							
Montreal, Canada H2Y1A6							

	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	0.07%	Preferred Series D	198,677	250	213
--	---------------------------------------	--------	-------	--------------------	---------	-----	-----

Total Lightspeed POS, Inc. 428,707 500 446

OfferUp, Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	0.15%	Preferred Series A	286,080	1,663	2,236
701 5th Avenue, Suite 5100							
Seattle, WA 98104							
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	0.06%	Preferred Series A-1	108,710	632	850

Total OfferUp, Inc. 394,790 2,295 3,086

Oportun (p.k.a. Progress Financial)	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	0.08%	Preferred Series G	218,351	250	451
1600 Seaport Blvd., Suite 250							
Redwood City, CA 94063							

	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	0.03%	Preferred Series H	87,802	250	255
--	---------------------------------------	--------	-------	--------------------	--------	-----	-----

Total Oportun (p.k.a. Progress Financial) 306,153 500 706

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****(dollars in thousands)**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Percentage</b>		<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
		<b>Investment</b>	<b>Ownership</b>				
RazorGator Interactive Group, Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	0.10%	Preferred Series AA	34,783	\$ 15	\$ 49
4216 3/4 Glencoe Ave  Marina Del Rey, CA 90292							
Tectura Corporation <sup>(7)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	0.12%	Preferred Series BB	1,000,000		
951 Old County Road, Suite 2-317  Belmont, CA 94002							
<b>Subtotal: Internet Consumer &amp; Business Services (0.52%)*</b>						3,578	4,333
<b>Media/Content/Info</b>							
Pinterest, Inc.	Media/Content/Info	Equity	0.04%	Preferred Series Seed	620,000	4,085	5,055
777 South Figueroa Street, Suite 3200 Los Angeles, CA 90017-5855							
<b>Subtotal: Media/Content/Info (0.60%)*</b>						4,085	5,055
<b>Medical Devices &amp; Equipment</b>							
AtriCure, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	0.02%	Common Stock	7,536	266	138
7555 Innovation Way  Mason, Ohio 45040							
Flowonix Medical Incorporated	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	1.08%	Preferred Series AA	221,893	1,500	
500 International Drive, Suite 200							

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Mount Olive, NJ  
07828

Gelesis, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	1.21%	Common Stock	198,202		879
500 Boylston Street, Suite 1600	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	1.16%	Preferred Series A-1	191,210	425	939
Boston, MA 02116	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	1.17%	Preferred Series A-2	191,626	500	894

Total Gelesis, Inc.					581,038	925	2,712
---------------------	--	--	--	--	---------	-----	-------

Medrobotics Corporation <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	0.12%	Preferred Series E	136,798	250	302
475 Paramount Drive	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	0.07%	Preferred Series F	73,971	155	225
Raynham, MA 02767	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	0.14%	Preferred Series G	163,934	500	532

Total Medrobotics Corporation					374,703	905	1,059
-------------------------------	--	--	--	--	---------	-----	-------

Optiscan Biomedical, Corp. <sup>(6)(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	0.36%	Preferred Series B	6,185,567	3,000	402
24590 Clawiter Road	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	0.11%	Preferred Series C	1,927,309	655	114
Hayward, CA 94545	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	3.21%	Preferred Series D	55,103,923	5,257	4,232
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	0.91%	Preferred Series E	15,638,888	1,307	1,457

Total Optiscan Biomedical, Corp.					78,855,687	10,219	6,205
----------------------------------	--	--	--	--	------------	--------	-------

Outset Medical, Inc. (p.k.a. Home Dialysis Plus, Inc.)	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	0.18%	Preferred Series B	232,061	527	596
--	-----------------------------	--------	-------	--------------------	---------	-----	-----

1830 Bering Drive

San Jose, CA 95112

Quanterix Corporation <sup>(4)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	0.39%	Common Stock	84,778	1,000	1,820
113 Hartwell Avenue							
Lexington, MA 02421							

<b>Subtotal: Medical Devices &amp; Equipment (1.49%)*</b>						15,342	12,530
---	--	--	--	--	--	--------	--------





**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**(dollars in  
thousands)

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment</b>	<b>Percentage Ownership</b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
<b>Software</b>							
CapLinked, Inc. 2015 Manhattan Beach Blvd, #108 Redondo Beach, CA 90278	Software	Equity	0.33%	Preferred Series A-3	53,614	\$ 51	\$ 90
Druva, Inc. 150 Mathilda Place, Suite 450 Sunnyvale, CA 94041	Software	Equity	0.30%	Preferred Series 2	458,841	1,000	1,044
	Software	Equity	0.06%	Preferred Series 3	93,620	300	312
<b>Total Druva, Inc.</b>					<b>552,461</b>	<b>1,300</b>	<b>1,356</b>
ForeScout Technologies, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>  900 E. Hamilton Avenue, Suite 300  Campbell, CA 95008	Software	Equity	0.52%	Common Stock	199,844	529	6,373
HighRoads, Inc. 3 Burlington Woods Dr Burlington, MA 01803	Software	Equity	0.00%	Common Stock	190	307	
NewVoiceMedia Limited <sup>(5)(10)</sup> Viables Business Park, Jays Close Basingstoke, UK RG22 4BS	Software	Equity	0.30%	Preferred Series E	669,173	963	1,544
Palantir Technologies 100 Hamilton Avenue Palo Alto, CA 94301	Software	Equity	0.04%	Preferred Series E	727,696	5,431	4,923
	Software	Equity	0.02%	Preferred Series G	326,797	2,211	2,211

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Total Palantir Technologies					1,054,493	7,642	7,134
Sprinklr, Inc. 29 West 35th Street, 7th Floor New York, NY 10001	Software	Equity	0.35%	Common Stock	700,000	3,749	4,600
WildTangent, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 18578 NE 67th Court, Building 5 Redmond, WA 98052	Software	Equity	0.16%	Preferred Series 3	100,000	402	179
<b>Subtotal: Software (2.53%)*</b>						14,943	21,276
<b>Surgical Devices</b>							
Gynesonics, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 301 Galveston Drive  Redwood City, CA 94063	Surgical Devices	Equity	0.04%	Preferred Series B	219,298	250	44
	Surgical Devices	Equity	0.12%	Preferred Series C	656,538	282	60
	Surgical Devices	Equity	0.38%	Preferred Series D	1,991,157	712	795
	Surgical Devices	Equity	0.53%	Preferred Series E	2,786,367	429	521
Total Gynesonics, Inc.					5,653,360	1,673	1,420
Transmedics, Inc. 200 Minuteman Road, Suite 302  Andover, MA 01810	Surgical Devices	Equity	0.16%	Preferred Series B	88,961	1,100	376
	Surgical Devices	Equity	0.21%	Preferred Series C	119,999	300	309
	Surgical Devices	Equity	0.46%	Preferred Series D	260,000	650	957
	Surgical Devices	Equity	0.18%	Preferred Series F	100,200	500	531
Total Transmedics, Inc.					569,160	2,550	2,173
<b>Subtotal: Surgical Devices (0.43%)*</b>						4,223	3,593
<b>Sustainable and Renewable Technology</b>							
Flywheel Building Intelligence, Inc. (p.k.a. SCIEnergy, Inc.)  4100 Alpha Road, Suite 900  Dallas, TX 75244	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Equity	0.00%	Common Stock	19,250	761	
Modumetal, Inc.	Sustainable and Renewable	Equity	0.72%	Preferred Series C	3,107,520	500	477

Northlake R&D  
Center, 1443 N.  
Northlake Way  
  
Seattle, WA 98103

Technology

Proterra, Inc.

Sustainable and  
Renewable  
Technology

Equity

0.09%

Preferred Series 5

99,280

500

539

1 Whitlee Ct.

Greenville, SC  
29607

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**(dollars in  
thousands)

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment</b>	<b>Percentage Ownership</b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC (p.k.a. Sungevity, Inc.) <sup>(6)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Equity	20.11%	Common Stock	288	\$ 61,502	\$ 11,400
66 Franklin Street, Suite 310  Oakland, CA 94607							
<b>Subtotal: Sustainable and Renewable Technology (1.48%)*</b>						63,263	12,416
<b>Total: Equity Investments (10.63%)*</b>						<b>136,196</b>	<b>89,361</b>

**Warrant****Investments****Biotechnology****Tools**

Labcyte, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Biotechnology Tools	Warrant	0.84%	Preferred Series C	1,127,624	\$ 323	\$ 458
1190 Borregas Avenue Sunnyvale, CA 94089							
<b>Subtotal: Biotechnology Tools (0.05%)*</b>						323	458

**Communications & Networking**

PeerApp, Inc.	Communications & Networking	Warrant	0.39%	Preferred Series B	298,779	61	
29 Crafts Street, Suite 260 Newton, MA 02458							
Peerless Network Holdings, Inc.	Communications & Networking	Warrant	0.41%	Preferred Series A	135,000	95	501
222 South Riverside Plaza, Suite 2730 Chicago, IL 60606							
Spring Mobile Solutions, Inc.	Communications & Networking	Warrant	0.62%	Common Stock	2,834,375	418	

11710 Plaza  
America  
Drive, Suite 2000

Reston, VA 20190

**Subtotal: Communications & Networking (0.06%)\*** 574 501

**Consumer & Business Products**

Antenna79 (p.k.a. Consumer & Warrant 0.51% Common Stock 1,662,441 228  
Pong Research Business Products  
Corporation)<sup>(15)</sup>

709N 400 W #3  
North Salt Lake, UT  
84054

Intelligent Beauty, Consumer & Warrant 0.35% Preferred Series B 190,234 230 221  
Inc.<sup>(15)</sup> Business Products

2301 Rosecrans  
Ave, Suite 4100  
El Segundo, CA  
90245

The Neat Consumer & Warrant 0.01% Preferred Series C-1 540,540 365  
Company<sup>(15)</sup> Business Products

1601 Market St.,  
Suite 3500  
Philadelphia, PA  
19103

**Subtotal: Consumer & Business Products (0.03%)\*** 823 221

**Drug Delivery**

AcelRx Drug Delivery Warrant 0.35% Common Stock 176,730 786 61  
Pharmaceuticals,  
Inc.<sup>(4)(10)(15)</sup>

351Galveston Drive  
Redwood City, CA  
94063

Agile Therapeutics, Drug Delivery Warrant 0.53% Common Stock 180,274 730 65  
Inc.<sup>(4)</sup>

101 Poor Farm Road  
Princeton, NJ 08540

BioQ Pharma Drug Delivery Warrant 1.30% Common Stock 459,183 1 968  
Incorporated

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

185 Berry St., Ste  
160  
San Francisco, CA  
94107

Celsion Corporation <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Warrant	0.08%	Common Stock	13,927	428	
997 Lenox Drive, Suite 100 Lawrenceville, NJ 08648							

Dance Biopharm, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Warrant	0.40%	Common Stock	110,882	74	
150 North Hill Drive, Suite 24 Brisbane, CA 94005							

Edge Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Warrant	0.25%	Common Stock	78,595	390	230
300 Connell Dr., Suite 4000 Berkeley Heights, NJ 07922							

Kaleo, Inc. (p.k.a. Intelliject, Inc.)	Drug Delivery	Warrant	0.46%	Preferred Series B	82,500	594	1,540
111 Virginia St., Ste 300 Richmond, VA 23219							

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

(dollars in thousands)

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment</b>	<b>Percentage Ownership</b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Neos Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup> 2940 N. Highway 360, Suite 400 Grand Prairie, TX 75050	Drug Delivery	Warrant	0.24%	Common Stock	70,833	\$ 285	\$ 148
Pulmatrix Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> 99 Hayden Avenue, Suite 390 Lexington, MA 02421	Drug Delivery	Warrant	0.12%	Common Stock	25,150	116	4
ZP Opco, Inc (p.k.a. Zosano Pharma) <sup>(4)</sup> 34790 Ardentech Court Fremont, CA 94555	Drug Delivery	Warrant	3.67%	Common Stock	72,379	266	
<b>Subtotal: Drug Delivery (0.36%)*</b>						3,670	3,016
<b>Drug Discovery &amp; Development</b>							
ADMA Biologics, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup> 465 Route 17 South Ramsey, NJ 07446	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.20%	Common Stock	89,750	295	12
Anthera Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup> 25801 Industrial Blvd., Suite B Hayward, CA 94545	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.04%	Common Stock	5,022	984	
Audentes Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(4)(10)(15)</sup> 600 California Street, 17th Floor San Francisco CA 94108	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.03%	Common Stock	9,914	62	147



Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Auris Medical Holding, AG <sup>(4)(5)(10)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	3.24%	Common Stock	156,726	249	19
Dornacherstrasse 210 CH-4053, Basel Switzerland							
Brickell Biotech, Inc.	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.38%	Preferred Series C	26,086	119	93
5777 Central Ave, Suite 102 Boulder, CO 80301							
Cerecor, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.07%	Common Stock	22,328	70	15
400 East Pratt Street, Suite 606 Baltimore, MD 21202							
Chroma Therapeutics, Ltd. <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.61%	Preferred Series D	325,261	490	
93 Innovation Drive, Milton Park  Abingdon Oxon, UK OX14 4RZ							
Cleveland BioLabs, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.07%	Common Stock	7,813	105	3
73 High Street Buffalo,  NY 14203							
Concert Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.57%	Common Stock	132,069	545	1,344
99 Hayden Avenue, Suite 500  Lexington, MA 02421-7966							
CTI BioPharma Corp. (p.k.a. Cell Therapeutics, Inc.) <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.07%	Common Stock	29,239	165	2
3101 Western Avenue, Suite 600  Seattle, WA 98121							

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

CytRx Corporation <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.38%	Common Stock	105,694	160	58
--------------------------------------	------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	---------	-----	----

11726 San Vicente Blvd., Suite 650

Los Angeles, CA 90049

Dare Biosciences, Inc. (p.k.a. Cerulean Pharma, Inc.) <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.28%	Common Stock	17,190	369	
--	------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	--------	-----	--

35 Gatehouse Drive

Waltham, MA 02451

Dicerna Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.00%	Common Stock	200	28	
--	------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	-----	----	--

87 Cambridge Park Dr

Cambridge, MA 02140

Epirus Biopharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.25%	Common Stock	64,194	276	
--	------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	--------	-----	--

99 High Street

Boston, MA 02110-2320

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

(dollars in thousands)

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment</b>	<b>Percentage Ownership</b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Fortress Biotech, Inc. (p.k.a. Coronado Biosciences, Inc.) <sup>(4)</sup>  2 Gansevoort Street, 9th Floor  New York, NY 10014	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.14%	Common Stock	73,009	\$ 142	\$ 29
Genocea Biosciences, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>  100 Acorn Park Drive, 5th Floor  Cambridge, MA 02140	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.26%	Common Stock	73,725	266	4
Immune Pharmaceuticals <sup>(4)</sup>  430 East 29th St., Suite 940  New York, NY 10016	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.05%	Common Stock	10,742	164	
Melinta Therapeutics <sup>(4)</sup>  300 TriState International, Suite 272  Lincolnshire, IL 60069	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.14%	Common Stock	31,655	626	12
Motif BioSciences Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>  125 Park Avenue., 25th Floor  New York, NY 10017	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.03%	Common Stock	73,452	282	414
Myovant Sciences, Ltd. <sup>(4)(5)(10)</sup>  2000 Sierra Point Parkway, 9th Floor	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.08%	Common Stock	49,800	283	128

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Brisbane, CA 94005

Neothetics, Inc. (p.k.a. Lithera, Inc) <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.06%	Common Stock	46,838	266	53
---	------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	--------	-----	----

9171 Towne Centre Drive, Suite 270

San Diego, CA 92122

Neuralstem, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.04%	Common Stock	5,783	77	
-------------------------------------	------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	-------	----	--

20271 Goldenrod Lane, 2nd floor

Germantown, MD 20876

Ology Bioservices, Inc. (p.k.a. Nanotherapeutics, Inc.) <sup>(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	2.67%	Common Stock	171,389	838	
---	------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	---------	-----	--

13200 NW Nano Court

Alachua, FL 32615

Paratek Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (p.k.a. Transcept Pharmaceuticals, Inc.) <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.27%	Common Stock	75,214	178	212
---	------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	--------	-----	-----

75 Park Plaza, 4th Floor

Boston, MA 02116

PhaseRx, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.54%	Common Stock	63,000	125	
----------------------------------	------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	--------	-----	--

410 West Harrison Street, Suite 300

Seattle, WA 98119

Savara Inc. (p.k.a. Mast Therapeutics, Inc.) <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.11%	Common Stock	32,467	203	8
---	------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	--------	-----	---

900 S. Capital of Texas Highway, Suite 150

Austin, TX 78746

Sorrento Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(4)(10)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.41%	Common Stock	306,748	889	453
--	------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	---------	-----	-----

9380 Judicial Dr

San Diego, CA 92121

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Stealth Bio Therapeutics Corp. <sup>(5)(10)</sup> 275 Grove Street, Suite 3-107 Newton, MA 02466	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.08%	Preferred Series A	487,500	116	107
uniQure B.V. <sup>(4)(5)(10)</sup> Paasheувelweg 25A Amsterdam, The Netherlands 1105 BP	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.12%	Common Stock	37,174	218	240
XOMA Corporation <sup>(4)(10)(15)</sup> 2910 Seventh Street Berkeley, CA 94710	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	0.11%	Common Stock	9,063	279	50
<b>Subtotal: Drug Discovery &amp; Development (0.40%)*</b>						<b>8,869</b>	<b>3,403</b>

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

(dollars in thousands)

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment</b>	<b>Percentage Ownership</b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
<b>Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware</b>							
908 DEVICES INC. <sup>(15)</sup> 27 Drydock Avenue, 7th Floor Boston, MA 02210	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Warrant	0.25%	Preferred Series D	79,856	\$ 100	\$ 73
Clustrix, Inc. 201 Mission Street, Suite 800 San Francisco, CA 94105	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Warrant	0.23%	Common Stock	50,000	12	
<b>Subtotal: Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware (0.01%)*</b>						112	73
<b>Healthcare Services, Other</b>							
Chromadex Corporation <sup>(4)(15)</sup> 10005 Muirlands Boulevard, Suite G, First Floor Irvine, CA 92618	Healthcare Services, Other	Warrant	0.26%	Common Stock	139,673	157	329
<b>Subtotal: Healthcare Services, Other (0.04%)*</b>						157	329
<b>Information Services</b>							
INMOBI Inc. <sup>(5)(10)</sup> 475 Brannan St., Suite 420 San Francisco, CA 94107	Information Services	Warrant	0.16%	Common Stock	65,587	82	
InXpo, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 770 N Halsted Street, Suite 6s	Information Services	Warrant	0.58%	Preferred Series C	648,400	98	21
	Information Services	Warrant	1.05%	Preferred Series C-1	1,165,183	74	37
Table of Contents							310

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Chicago, IL 60642

Total InXpo, Inc.					1,813,583	172	58
-------------------	--	--	--	--	-----------	-----	----

MDX Medical, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Information Services	Warrant	0.70%	Common Stock	2,250,000	246	129
-----------------------------------	----------------------	---------	-------	--------------	-----------	-----	-----

160 Chubb Avenue, Suite 301

Lyndhurst, NJ 07071

Netbase Solutions, Inc.	Information Services	Warrant	0.02%	Preferred Series 1	60,000	356	363
-------------------------	----------------------	---------	-------	--------------------	--------	-----	-----

3960 Freedom Circle, Suite 200

Santa Clara, CA 95054

RichRelevance, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Information Services	Warrant	0.13%	Preferred Series E	112,612	98	
-------------------------------------	----------------------	---------	-------	--------------------	---------	----	--

303 Second Street Suite 350 South

San Francisco, CA 94107

<b>Subtotal: Information Services (0.07%)*</b>						954	550
--	--	--	--	--	--	-----	-----

**Internet Consumer & Business Services**

Aria Systems, Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.11%	Preferred Series G	231,535	73	
--------------------	---------------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------------	---------	----	--

575 Market Street, 32nd Floor

San Francisco, CA 94105

Blurb, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.40%	Preferred Series C	234,280	636	9
-----------------------------	---------------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------------	---------	-----	---

580 California St., Suite 300

San Francisco, CA 94104

ClearObject, Inc. (p.k.a. CloudOne, Inc.)	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.60%	Preferred Series E	968,992	18	154
---	---------------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------------	---------	----	-----

8626 E 116th Street, Suite 300

Fishers, IN 46038

The Faction Group	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	1.85%	Preferred Series A	8,703	234	234
-------------------	---------------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------------	-------	-----	-----

1660 Lincoln St., Floor 16

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Denver, CO 80264

Intent Media, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 315 Hudson St., 9th Floor	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.47%	Common Stock	140,077	168	207
---	---	---------	-------	-----------------	---------	-----	-----

New York, NY 10013

Interactions Corporation 31 Hayward Street., Suite E	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.07%	Preferred Series G-3	68,187	204	204
--	---	---------	-------	----------------------------	--------	-----	-----

Franklin, MA 02038

Just Fabulous, Inc. 2301 Rosecrans Avenue, Suite 5000	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.35%	Preferred Series B	206,184	1,102	2,627
---	---	---------	-------	-----------------------	---------	-------	-------

El Segundo, CA 90245



**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

(dollars in thousands)

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment</b>	<b>Percentage Ownership</b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Lightspeed POS, Inc. <sup>(5)(10)</sup> 700 St-Antoine Est, Suite 300 Montreal, Canada H2Y1A6	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.09%	Preferred Series C	245,610	\$ 20	\$ 93
LogicSource <sup>(15)</sup> 20 Marshall Street South Norwalk, CT 06854	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.39%	Preferred Series C	79,625	30	36
Oportun (p.k.a. Progress Financial) 1600 Seaport Blvd., Suite 250 Redwood City, CA 94063	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.06%	Preferred Series G	174,562	78	196
ShareThis, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 4005 Miranda Avenue, Suite 100 Palo Alto, CA 94304	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.91%	Preferred Series C	493,502	547	
Snagajob.com, Inc. 1919 N Lynn Street, 7th Floor Arlington, VA 22209	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.89%	Preferred Series A	1,800,000	782	1,257
Tapjoy, Inc. 111 Sutter Street, 12th Floor San Francisco, CA 94104	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	0.40%	Preferred Series D	748,670	316	7
TraceLink, Inc.	Internet Consumer &	Warrant	0.86%	Preferred Series	283,353	1,833	1,833

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

400 Riverpark Dr. Suite 200	Business Services			A-2			
North Reading, MA 1864							

**Subtotal: Internet Consumer & Business Services (0.82%)\*** 6,041 6,857

**Media/Content/Info**

FanDuel, Inc.				Common			
	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	0.15%	Stock	15,570		
300 Park Avenue South, 14th Floor							
	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	0.04%	Preferred	4,648	730	1,875
New York, NY 10005				Series A			
Total FanDuel, Inc.					20,218	730	1,875

Machine Zone, Inc. <sup>(16)</sup>	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	0.12%	Common	1,552,710	1,958	3,743
				Stock			
1050 Page Mill Road							
Palo Alto, CA 94304							

Rhapsody International, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	0.44%	Common	715,755	385	4
				Stock			
701 5th Ave., Suite 3100							
Seattle, WA 98104							

WP Technology, Inc. (Wattpad, Inc.) <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	0.10%	Common	255,818	4	17
				Stock			
4950 Yonge Street, Suite 208							
Toronto, ON M2M 3V5							

Zoom Media Group, Inc.	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	0.44%	Preferred	1,204	348	33
				Series A			
345 7th Avenue, Suite 1501							
New York, NY 10001							

**Subtotal: Media/Content/Info (0.67%)\*** 3,425 5,672

**Medical Devices & Equipment**

Amedica Corporation <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.28%	Common	8,603	459	1
				Stock			
1885 West 2100 South							

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Salt Lake City, UT 84119							
Aspire Bariatrics, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	1.03%	Preferred Series B-1	112,858	455	65
3200 Horizon Drive, Suite 100							
King of Prussia, PA 19406							
Avedro, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.56%	Preferred Series AA	300,000	401	275
201 Jones Rd., 5th Floor							
Waltham, MA 02451							
Flowonix Medical Incorporated	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.76%	Preferred Series AA	155,325	362	
500 International Drive, Suite 200							
Mount Olive, NJ 07828							

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**(dollars in  
thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Percentage		Series	Shares	Cost <sup>(2)</sup>	Value <sup>(3)</sup>
		Investment	Ownership				
Gelesis, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 500 Boylston Street, Suite 1600 Boston, MA 02116	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.46%	Preferred Series A-1	74,784	\$ 78	\$ 216
InspireMD, Inc. <sup>(4)(5)(10)</sup> 4 Menorat Hamaor Street, 3rd Floor Tel Aviv, Israel 67448	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	2.65%	Common Stock	39,364	242	
IntegenX, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 5720 Stoneridge Drive, Suite 300 Pleasanton, CA 94588	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.74%	Preferred Series C	547,752	15	
Intuity Medical, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 3500 West Warren Avenue. Fremont, CA 94538	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.74%	Preferred Series 4	1,819,078	294	294
Medrobotics Corporation <sup>(15)</sup> 475 Paramount Drive Raynham, MA 02767	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.40%	Preferred Series E	455,539	370	411
Micell Technologies, Inc.	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.37%	Preferred Series D-2	84,955	262	150

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

801 Capitola Drive,  
Suite 1

Durham, NC 27713

NetBio, Inc. 266 Second Avenue Waltham, MA 02451	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.75%	Preferred Series A	7,841	408	56
---	--------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------------	-------	-----	----

NinePoint Medical, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 2 Oak Park Dr. Bedford, MA 01730	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.30%	Preferred Series A-1	587,840	170	82
--	--------------------------------	---------	-------	----------------------	---------	-----	----

Optiscan Biomedical, Corp. <sup>(6)(15)</sup> 24590 Clawiter Road Hayward, CA 94545	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.61%	Preferred Series D	10,535,275	1,252	86
---	--------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------------	------------	-------	----

Outset Medical, Inc. (p.k.a. Home Dialysis Plus, Inc.) 1830 Bering Drive San Jose, CA 95112	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.38%	Preferred Series A	500,000	402	430
---	--------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------------	---------	-----	-----

Quanterix Corporation <sup>(4)</sup> 113 Hartwell Avenue Lexington, MA 02421	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.30%	Common Stock	66,039	205	536
---	--------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------	--------	-----	-----

Sebacia, Inc. (15) 2905 Premiere Parkway, Suite 150 Duluth, GA 30097	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.45%	Preferred Series D	778,301	133	127
--	--------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------------	---------	-----	-----

SonaCare Medical, LLC (p.k.a. US	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.02%	Preferred Series A	6,464	188	
----------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------	-------	--------------------	-------	-----	--

HIFU, LLC)							
10130 Perimeter Parkway, Suite 250							
Charlotte, NC 28216							
Strata Skin Sciences, Inc. (p.k.a. MELA Sciences, Inc.) <sup>(4)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.32%	Common Stock	13,864	401	
100 Lakeside Drive, Suite 100							
Horsham, PA 19044							
Tela Bio, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.39%	Preferred Series B	387,930	62	153
One Great Valley Pkwy, Suite 24							
Malvern, PA 19355							
ViewRay, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	0.19%	Common Stock	128,231	333	414
2 Thermo Fisher Way							
Oakwood Village, OH 44146							
<b>Subtotal: Medical Devices &amp; Equipment (0.39%)*</b>						6,492	3,296
<b>Semiconductors</b>							
Achronix Semiconductor Corporation <sup>(15)</sup>	Semiconductors	Warrant	0.11%	Preferred Series C	360,000	160	308
2953 Bunker Hill Lane, Suite 101							
	Semiconductors	Warrant	0.23%	Preferred Series D-2	750,000	99	519
Santa Clara, CA 95054							
Total Achronix Semiconductor Corporation					1,110,000	259	827

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**(dollars in  
thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment	Percentage Ownership	Series	Shares	Cost <sup>(2)</sup>	Value <sup>(3)</sup>
Aquantia Corp. <sup>(4)</sup> 105 E. Tasman Drive San Jose, CA 95134	Semiconductors	Warrant	0.06%	Common Stock	19,683	\$ 4	\$ 11
Avnera Corporation 1600 NW Compton Drive, Ste 300. Beaverton, OR 97006	Semiconductors	Warrant	0.28%	Preferred Series E	141,567	46	195
<b>Subtotal: Semiconductors (0.12%)*</b>						309	1,033
<b>Software</b>							
Actifio, Inc. 333 Wyman Street, Waltham Waltham, MA 02451	Software	Warrant	0.08%	Common Stock	73,584	249	84
	Software	Warrant	0.03%	Preferred Series F	31,673	343	79
Total Actifio, Inc.					105,257	592	163
Braxton Technologies, LLC 6 North Tejon Street, Suite 220 Colorado Springs, CO 80903	Software	Warrant	0.63%	Preferred Series A	168,750	188	
CareCloud Corporation <sup>(15)</sup> 5200 Blue Lagoon Drive, Suite 900 Miami, FL 33126	Software	Warrant	0.43%	Preferred Series B	413,433	258	113
Clickfox, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	1.29%	Preferred Series B	1,038,563	330	129

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

3445 Peachtree Road, Suite 450	Software	Warrant	0.73%	Preferred Series C	592,019	730	179
Atlanta, GA 30326	Software	Warrant	2.75%	Preferred Series C-A	2,218,214	230	4,458
Total Clickfox, Inc.					3,848,796	1,290	4,766
DNAexus, Inc. 1975 W El Camino Real #101 Mountain View, CA 94040	Software	Warrant	0.24%	Preferred Series C	909,091	97	97
Evernote Corporation <sup>(15)</sup> 305 Walnut Street Redwood City, CA 94063	Software	Warrant	0.06%	Common Stock	62,500	106	175
Fuze, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 2 Copley Place, Floor 7 Boston, MA 02116	Software	Warrant	0.17%	Preferred Series F	256,158	89	53
Mattersight Corporation <sup>(4)</sup> 200 W. Madison, Suite 3100 Chicago, IL 60606	Software	Warrant	1.08%	Common Stock	357,143	538	168
Message Systems, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 9130 Guilford Road Columbia, MD 21046	Software	Warrant	1.05%	Preferred Series C	503,718	334	639
Mobile Posse, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 1010 N. Glebe Road, Suite 200 Arlington, VA 22201	Software	Warrant	1.04%	Preferred Series C	396,430	130	353
Neos, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	0.10%	Common Stock	221,150	22	



6210 Stoneridge  
Mall, Suite 450

Pleasanton, CA  
94588

NewVoiceMedia Limited <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Software	Warrant	0.10%	Preferred Series E	225,586	33	190
---	----------	---------	-------	--------------------	---------	----	-----

Viables Business  
Park, Jays Close

Basingstoke, UK  
RG22 4BS

OneLogin, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	0.34%	Common Stock	228,972	150	227
--------------------------------	----------	---------	-------	--------------	---------	-----	-----

150 Spear Street,  
Suite 1400

San Francisco, CA  
94105

PerfectServe, Inc.	Software	Warrant	2.24%	Preferred Series C	129,073	720	720
--------------------	----------	---------	-------	--------------------	---------	-----	-----

10024 Investment  
Drive

Knoxville, TN 37932

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**(dollars in  
thousands)

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment</b>	<b>Percentage Ownership</b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
Poplicus, Inc. 19 South Park St. San Francisco, CA 94107	Software	Warrant	0.03%	Common Stock	132,168	\$	\$
Quid, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 600 Harrison Street, Suite 400 San Francisco, CA 94107	Software	Warrant	0.06%	Preferred Series D	71,576	1	7
RapidMiner, Inc. 10 Milk Street., 11th Floor Boston, MA 02108	Software	Warrant	0.32%	Preferred Series C-1	4,982	23	23
RedSeal Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 940 Stewart Drive, Sunnyvale, CA 94085	Software	Warrant	0.13%	Preferred Series C-Prime	640,603	66	44
Signpost, Inc. 127 W 26th St., Floor 2 New York, NY 10001	Software	Warrant	0.78%	Preferred Series C	324,005	314	106
Wrike, Inc. 10 Almaden Blvd, Suite 1000 San Jose, CA 95113	Software	Warrant	0.87%	Common Stock	698,760	462	1,040
<b>Subtotal: Software (1.06%)*</b>						5,413	8,884
<b>Specialty Pharmaceuticals</b>							
Alimera Sciences, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Specialty Pharmaceuticals	Warrant	2.48%	Common Stock	1,717,709	861	488

6120 Windward Parkway, Suite 290 Alpharetta, GA 30005								
<b>Subtotal: Specialty Pharmaceuticals (0.06%)*</b>							861	488
<b>Surgical Devices</b>								
Gynesonics, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Surgical Devices	Warrant	0.03%	Preferred Series C	180,480	75	15	
	Surgical Devices	Warrant		Preferred Series D	1,575,965	320	291	
301 Galveston Drive Redwood City, CA 94063			0.30%					
Total Gynesonics, Inc.					1,756,445	395	306	
Transmedics, Inc.	Surgical Devices	Warrant	0.07%	Preferred Series B	40,436	225	16	
	Surgical Devices	Warrant		Preferred Series D	175,000			
200 Minuteman Road, Suite 302 Andover, MA 01810			0.31%	Preferred Series F	50,544	100	429	
			0.09%			38	60	
Total Transmedics, Inc.					265,980	363	505	
<b>Subtotal: Surgical Devices (0.10%)*</b>							758	811
<b>Sustainable and Renewable Technology</b>								
Agrivida, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.40%	Preferred Series D	471,327	120	88	
200 Boston Avenue Medford, MA 02155								
Alphabet Energy, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.05%	Preferred Series 1B	13,667	82		
26225 Eden Landing Road, Suite D Hayward, CA 94545								
American Superconductor Corporation <sup>(4)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.28%	Common Stock	58,823	39	7	
64 Jackson Rd. Devens, MA 01434								
Brightsource Energy, Inc.	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.22%	Preferred Series 1	116,666	104		

1999 Harrison Street,  
Suite 2150  
Oakland, CA 94612

Calera, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.17%	Preferred Series C	44,529	\$	513	\$
485 Alberto Way, #210 Los Gatos, CA 95032								

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

(dollars in thousands)

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage Ownership</b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(3)</sup></b>
EcoMotors, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 17000 Federal Dr., Suite 200 Allen Park, MI 48101	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.68%	Preferred Series B	437,500	308	
Fluidic, Inc. 8455 North 90th Street, Suite 4 Scottsdale, AZ 85258	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.11%	Preferred Series D	61,804	102	
Flywheel Building Intelligence, Inc. (p.k.a. SCIEnergy, Inc.) 4100 Alpha Road, Suite 900 Dallas, TX 75244	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.05%	Common Stock	530,811	181	
	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.00%	Preferred Series 2-A	6,229	50	
Total Flywheel Building Intelligence, Inc. (p.k.a. SCIEnergy, Inc.)					537,040	231	
Fulcrum Bioenergy, Inc. 4900 Hopyard Road, Suite 220 Pleasanton, CA 94588	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.20%	Preferred Series C-1	280,897	275	357
GreatPoint Energy, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 2215 W. Harrison St. Chicago, IL 60612	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.12%	Preferred Series D-1	393,212	548	
Kinestral Technologies, Inc. 3955 Trust Way Hayward, CA 94545	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.26%	Preferred Series A	325,000	155	155
	Sustainable and	Warrant	0.10%	Preferred Series B	131,883	63	63

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Total Kinestral Technologies, Inc.	Renewable Technology				456,883	218	218
Polyera Corporation <sup>(15)</sup> 8045 Lamon Avenue, #140 Skokie, IL 60077	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.97%	Preferred Series C	311,609	338	
Proterra, Inc. 1 Whitlee Ct. Greenville, SC 29607	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.42%	Preferred Series 4	477,517	41	599
Rive Technology, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup> 1 Deer Park Drive, Suite A Monmouth Junction, NJ 08852	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.34%	Preferred Series E	234,477	12	8
Stion Corporation <sup>(6)</sup> 6321 San Ignacio Avenue San Jose, CA 95119	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	7.89%	Preferred Series Seed	2,154	1,378	
TAS Energy, Inc. 6110 Cullen Blvd. Houston, TX 77021	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.10%	Preferred Series AA	428,571	299	
Tendril Networks 2580 55th Street, Suite 100 Boulder, CO 80301	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	0.42%	Preferred Series 3-A	1,019,793	189	
<b>Subtotal: Sustainable and Renewable Technology (0.15%)*</b>						4,797	1,277
<b>Total: Warrant Investments (4.38%)*</b>						<b>43,578</b>	<b>36,869</b>
<b>Total Investments in Securities (183.39%)*</b>						<b>\$ 1,619,829</b>	<b>\$ 1,542,214</b>

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****SENIOR SECURITIES**

Information about our senior securities is shown in the following table for the periods as of December 31, 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014, 2013, 2012, 2011, 2010, 2009, and 2008. The information as of December 31, 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014, 2013, 2012, 2011 and 2010 has been derived from our audited financial statements for these periods, which have been audited by PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, our independent registered public accounting firm. The report of PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP on the senior securities table as of December 31, 2017 is attached as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. The N/A indicates information that the SEC expressly does not require to be disclosed for certain types of senior securities.

<b>Class and Year</b>	<b>Total Amount Outstanding Exclusive of Treasury Securities<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Asset Coverage per Unit<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Average Market Value per Unit<sup>(3)</sup></b>
<b>Securitized Credit Facility with Wells Fargo Capital Finance</b>			
December 31, 2008	\$ 89,582,000	\$ 6,689	N/A
December 31, 2009 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2010 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2011	\$ 10,186,830	\$ 73,369	N/A
December 31, 2012 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2013 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2014 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2015	\$ 50,000,000	\$ 26,352	N/A
December 31, 2016	\$ 5,015,620	\$ 290,234	N/A
December 31, 2017 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
<b>Securitized Credit Facility with Union Bank, NA</b>			
December 31, 2009 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2010 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2011 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2012 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2013 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2014 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2015 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2016 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
December 31, 2017 <sup>(6)</sup>			N/A
<b>Small Business Administration Debentures (HT II)<sup>(4)</sup></b>			
December 31, 2008	\$ 127,200,000	\$ 4,711	N/A
December 31, 2009	\$ 130,600,000	\$ 3,806	N/A
December 31, 2010	\$ 150,000,000	\$ 3,942	N/A
December 31, 2011	\$ 125,000,000	\$ 5,979	N/A
December 31, 2012	\$ 76,000,000	\$ 14,786	N/A
December 31, 2013	\$ 76,000,000	\$ 16,075	N/A

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

December 31, 2014	\$ 41,200,000	\$ 31,535	N/A
December 31, 2015	\$ 41,200,000	\$ 31,981	N/A
December 31, 2016	\$ 41,200,000	\$ 35,333	N/A
December 31, 2017	\$ 41,200,000	\$ 39,814	N/A
<b>Small Business Administration Debentures (HT III)<sup>(5)</sup></b>			
December 31, 2010	\$ 20,000,000	\$ 29,564	N/A
December 31, 2011	\$ 100,000,000	\$ 7,474	N/A
December 31, 2012	\$ 149,000,000	\$ 7,542	N/A
December 31, 2013	\$ 149,000,000	\$ 8,199	N/A
December 31, 2014	\$ 149,000,000	\$ 8,720	N/A
December 31, 2015	\$ 149,000,000	\$ 8,843	N/A
December 31, 2016	\$ 149,000,000	\$ 9,770	N/A
December 31, 2017	\$ 149,000,000	\$ 11,009	N/A
<b>2016 Convertible Notes</b>			
December 31, 2011	\$ 75,000,000	\$ 10,623	\$ 885
December 31, 2012	\$ 75,000,000	\$ 15,731	\$ 1,038
December 31, 2013	\$ 75,000,000	\$ 16,847	\$ 1,403
December 31, 2014	\$ 17,674,000	\$ 74,905	\$ 1,290
December 31, 2015	\$ 17,604,000	\$ 74,847	\$ 1,110
December 31, 2016			



**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

<b>Class and Year</b>	<b>Total Amount Outstanding Exclusive of Treasury Securities<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Asset Coverage per Unit<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Average Market Value per Unit<sup>(3)</sup></b>
<b>April 2019 Notes</b>			
December 31, 2012	\$ 84,489,500	\$ 13,300	\$ 986
December 31, 2013	\$ 84,489,500	\$ 14,460	\$ 1,021
December 31, 2014	\$ 84,489,500	\$ 15,377	\$ 1,023
December 31, 2015	\$ 64,489,500	\$ 20,431	\$ 1,017
December 31, 2016	\$ 64,489,500	\$ 22,573	\$ 1,022
December 31, 2017			
<b>September 2019 Notes</b>			
December 31, 2012	\$ 85,875,000	\$ 13,086	\$ 1,003
December 31, 2013	\$ 85,875,000	\$ 14,227	\$ 1,016
December 31, 2014	\$ 85,875,000	\$ 15,129	\$ 1,026
December 31, 2015	\$ 45,875,000	\$ 28,722	\$ 1,009
December 31, 2016	\$ 45,875,000	\$ 31,732	\$ 1,023
December 31, 2017			
<b>2024 Notes</b>			
December 31, 2014	\$ 103,000,000	\$ 12,614	\$ 1,010
December 31, 2015	\$ 103,000,000	\$ 12,792	\$ 1,014
December 31, 2016	\$ 252,873,175	\$ 5,757	\$ 1,016
December 31, 2017	\$ 183,509,600	\$ 8,939	\$ 1,025
<b>2017 Asset-Backed Notes</b>			
December 31, 2012	\$ 129,300,000	\$ 8,691	\$ 1,000
December 31, 2013	\$ 89,556,972	\$ 13,642	\$ 1,004
December 31, 2014	\$ 16,049,144	\$ 80,953	\$ 1,375
December 31, 2015			
<b>2021 Asset-Backed Notes</b>			
December 31, 2014	\$ 129,300,000	\$ 10,048	\$ 1,000
December 31, 2015	\$ 129,300,000	\$ 10,190	\$ 996
December 31, 2016	\$ 109,205,263	\$ 13,330	\$ 1,002
December 31, 2017	\$ 49,152,504	\$ 33,372	\$ 1,001
<b>2022 Convertible Notes</b>			
December 31, 2017	\$ 230,000,000	\$ 7,132	\$ 1,028
<b>2022 Notes</b>			
December 31, 2017	\$ 150,000,000	\$ 10,935	\$ 1,014
<b>Total Senior Securities<sup>(7)</sup></b>			
December 31, 2008	\$ 216,782,000	\$ 2,764	N/A
December 31, 2009	\$ 130,600,000	\$ 3,806	N/A
December 31, 2010	\$ 170,000,000	\$ 3,478	N/A
December 31, 2011	\$ 310,186,830	\$ 2,409	N/A
December 31, 2012	\$ 599,664,500	\$ 1,874	N/A
December 31, 2013	\$ 559,921,472	\$ 2,182	N/A
December 31, 2014	\$ 626,587,644	\$ 2,073	N/A
December 31, 2015	\$ 600,468,500	\$ 2,194	N/A

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

December 31, 2016	\$	667,658,558	\$	2,180	N/A
December 31, 2017	\$	802,862,104	\$	2,043	N/A

- (1) Total amount of each class of senior securities outstanding at the end of the period presented.
- (2) The asset coverage ratio for a class of senior securities representing indebtedness is calculated as our consolidated total assets, less all liabilities and indebtedness not represented by senior securities, including senior securities not subject to asset coverage requirements under the 1940 Act due to exemptive relief from the SEC, divided by senior securities representing indebtedness. This asset coverage ratio is multiplied by \$1,000 to determine the Asset Coverage per Unit.
- (3) Not applicable because senior securities are not registered for public trading.
- (4) Issued by HT II, one of our SBIC subsidiaries, to the SBA. These categories of senior securities were not subject to the asset coverage requirements of the 1940 Act as a result of exemptive relief granted to us by the SEC.
- (5) Issued by HT III, one of our SBIC subsidiaries, to the SBA. These categories of senior securities were not subject to the asset coverage requirements of the 1940 Act as a result of exemptive relief granted to us by the SEC.
- (6) The Company's Wells Facility and Union Bank Facility had no borrowings outstanding during the periods noted above.
- (7) The total senior securities and Asset Coverage per Unit shown for those securities do not represent the asset coverage ratio requirement under the 1940 Act because the presentation includes senior securities not subject to the asset coverage requirements of the 1940 Act as a result of exemptive relief granted to us by the SEC. As of December 31, 2017, our asset coverage ratio under our regulatory requirements as a business development company was 236.7% excluding our SBA debentures as a result of our exemptive order from the SEC which allows us to exclude all SBA leverage from our asset coverage ratio.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****MANAGEMENT**

Our business and affairs are managed under the direction of our Board of Directors. Our Board of Directors elects our officers who serve at the discretion of the Board of Directors. Our Board of Directors currently consists of eight members, one who is an interested person of the Company as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act and seven who are not interested persons and who we refer to as our independent directors.

**Directors, Executive Officers and Key Employees**

Our executive officers, directors and key employees and their positions are set forth below. Information regarding our current Board of Directors is set forth below as of December 31, 2017. The address for each executive officer, director and key employee is c/o Hercules Capital, Inc., 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301.

<b>Name</b>	<b>Age</b>	<b>Positions</b>
<b><i>Interested Director:</i></b>		
Manuel A. Henriquez <sup>(1)</sup>	54	Chairman of the Board of Directors, President and Chief Executive Officer
<b><i>Independent Directors:</i></b>		
Robert P. Badavas	65	Director
Jorge Titinger	56	Director
Allyn C. Woodward, Jr.	77	Director
Thomas J. Fallon	56	Director
Brad Koenig	59	Director
Joseph F. Hoffman	69	Director
Doreen Woo Ho	70	Director
<b><i>Executive Officers:</i></b>		
David Lund	64	Interim Chief Financial Officer
Melanie Grace	49	General Counsel and Chief Compliance Officer
Scott Bluestein	39	Chief Investment Officer
Gerard R. Waldt, Jr.	33	Interim Chief Accounting Officer

(1) Mr. Henriquez is an interested person, as defined in section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act, of the Company due to his position as an executive officer of the Company.

Set forth below is information regarding our current directors, including each director's (i) name and age; (ii) a brief description of their recent business experience, including present occupations and employment during at least the past five years; (iii) directorships, if any, that each director holds and has held during the past five years; and (iv) the year in which each person became a director of the Company. As the information that follows indicates, the nominee and each continuing director brings strong and unique experience, qualifications, attributes, and skills to the Board of Directors. This provides the Board of Directors, collectively, with competence, experience, and perspective in a variety of areas, including: (i) corporate governance and Board service; (ii) executive management, finance, and accounting; (iii) venture capital financing with a technology-related focus; (iv) business acumen; and (v) an ability to exercise sound judgment.

Moreover, the nominating and corporate governance committee believes that it is important to seek a broad diversity of experience, professions, skills, geographic representation and backgrounds. The nominating and corporate governance committee does not assign specific weights to particular criteria and no particular criterion is necessarily applicable to all prospective nominees. We believe that the backgrounds and qualifications of the directors, considered as a group, should provide a significant composite mix of experience, knowledge and abilities that will allow the Board of Directors to fulfill its responsibilities. Our Board of Directors does not have a specific diversity policy, but considers diversity of race, religion, national origin, gender, sexual orientation, disability, cultural background and professional experiences in evaluating candidates for Board membership.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

For each director, we have highlighted certain key areas of experience that qualify him or her to serve on the Board of Directors in each of their respective biographies below.

<b>Name, Address, and Age<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Position(s) held with Company</b>	<b>Term of Office and Length of Time Served</b>	<b>Principal Occupation(s) During Past 5 Years</b>	<b>Other Directorships Held by Director or Nominee for Director During the past 5 years<sup>(2)</sup></b>
<b>Independent Directors</b>				
Robert P. Badavas (65)	Director	Class I Director since 2006	Retired. Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of PlumChoice, provider of remote technical services and support, from 2011-2016.	Constant Contract, Inc., an online marketing company, from 2007-2016.
Jorge Titinger (56)	Director	Class I Director since 2017	President and Founder of Titinger Consulting, a private consulting and advisory service provider, since 2016, and President and Chief Executive Officer of Silicon Graphics International, a leader in high-performance computing, from 2012-2016, which was acquired by Hewlett Packard Enterprise in 2016.	Xcerra, supplies products and services to the semiconductor and electronics manufacturing industry, since 2012, and CalAmp, a pure-play pioneer in the connected vehicle and broader Industrial Internet of Things marketplace, since 2015.
Thomas J. Fallon (56)	Director	Class II Director since 2014	Chief Executive Officer of Infinera Corporation, manufacturer of high capacity optical transmission equipment, since 2010.	Infinera Corporation since 2014.
Brad Koenig (59)	Director	Class II Director since 2017	Founder and Chief Executive Officer of FoodyDirect.com, an online marketplace that features foods from the top restaurants, bakeries and artisan purveyors around the country, since 2011. Head of Global Technology Investment Banking at	GSV Capital Corporation, from 2015-2017.

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

			Goldman Sachs, from 2011-2015.	
Allyn C. Woodward, Jr. (77)	Director	Class II Director since 2004	Retired. Vice Chairman and Director of Adams Harkness Financial Group, an institutional investment bank, from 2001-2006.	None.
Joseph F. Hoffman (69)	Director	Class III Director since 2015	Retired. SEC Reviewing Partner and Silicon Valley Professional for KPMG from 1998-2009.	None.
Doreen Woo Ho (70)	Director	Class III Director since 2016	Commissioner of the San Francisco Port Commission since May, 2011 and served as President from 2012 to 2014.	U.S. Bank since 2012.
<b>Interested Director</b>				
Manuel A. Henriquez (54) <sup>(3)</sup>	Director, Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of the Board of Directors	Class III Director since 2004	Hercules Capital, Inc. since 2004.	None.

(1) The address for each officer and director is c/o Hercules Capital, Inc., 400 Hamilton Avenue., Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301.

(2) No director otherwise serves as a director of an investment company subject to the 1940 Act.

(3) Mr. Henriquez is an interested director due to his position as an officer of the Company.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Interested Director**

**Manuel A. Henriquez**

**Board Committee:**

**Independent:**

N/A

No

Mr. Henriquez, age 54, is a co-founder of Hercules and has been our Chairman and Chief Executive Officer since 2004 and our President (since 2005) and his term expires in 2019.

**Prior Business Experience:**

Partner, VantagePoint Venture Partners, a \$2.5 billion multi-stage technology venture fund (2000-2003)

President and Chief Investment Officer, Comdisco Ventures, a division of Comdisco, Inc., a leading technology and financial services company (1999-2000)

Managing Director, Comdisco Ventures (1997-1999)

Senior Member, Investment Team, Comdisco Ventures (1997-2000)

**Private Directorships/ Memberships:**

Northeastern University, a global, experiential research university;

Member of the Northeastern Corporation (since 2011)

Member of the NU Governing Board Long-Range Planning Committee (since 2011)

Member of the Academic Affairs and Student Experience Committee (since 2012)

Member of the West Coast Counsel (since 2012)

Member of the Huntington Society (since 2014)

Vice Chairman of the board of directors of Lucile Packard Foundation for Children's Health, the sole fundraising entity for Lucile Packard Children's Hospital and the child health programs at Stanford University School of Medicine, and Chairman of the Compensation Committee, Member of the Investment Committee, and Member of the Executive Committee of the board of directors

Children's Health Council, a diagnostic and treatment center for children and adolescents facing developmental and behavioral challenges, Chairman of the Finance Committee and Chairman of the Investment Committee, and Corporate Treasurer and Member of the Executive Committee of the board of directors

**Education:**

Bachelor's degree in Business Administration from Northeastern University

**Skills/**

In particular, Mr. Henriquez's key areas of skills/qualifications include, but are not limited to:

**Qualifications:**

**Client Industries** vast array of knowledge in venture capital financing, including software, life sciences and clean tech

**Banking/Financial Services** extensive experience with equity and debt financings as well SEC rules and regulations and business development companies

**Leadership/Strategy** current role as chairman and CEO as well as officer and director experience in several private and public companies and knowledge of financial risk assessment

**Finance/IT and Other Business Processes** extensive experience in IT and supervising IT internal control and procedures



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Independent Directors**

**Joseph F. Hoffman**

**Board Committee:**

**Independent:**

Audit, *Chair*

Yes

Nominating

Mr. Hoffman, age 69, is retired from KPMG LLP after 26 years as a partner and senior executive with that firm. He has served as a director on our Board of Directors since April 2015 and his term expires in 2019.

**Prior Business Experience:** SEC Reviewing Partner and Silicon Valley Professional Practice Partner, KPMG LLP (1998-2009)

Audit Partner and Business Unit Partner in Charge, KPMG LLP (1983-1998)

**Private Directorships:**

LiveOps, Inc., a cloud based contact center (since 2013)

KPMG LLP, an audit, tax, and advisory professional services firm. (2005-2009)

**Audit Committees:**

LiveOps, Inc. (since 2013)

KPMG LLP (2005-2009)

Willamette University (since 2014)

**Non-Profit Leadership:**

Board of Trustees, Willamette University (since 2011)

**Memberships:**

California Society of Certified Public Accountants

National Association of Corporate Directors

American College of Corporate Directors

Association of Governing Boards of Universities and Colleges

**Education:**

Bachelor's degree in Mathematics and Economics, Willamette University

Master's degree in Business Administration, Stanford Graduate School of Business

Certified public accountant, State of California

In particular, Mr. Hoffman's key areas of skill/qualifications include, but are not limited to:

**Skills/  
Qualifications:**

**Client Industries** extensive experience in the technology, manufacturing, and financial services industries

**Finance and Enterprise Risk Management** extensive experience as an advisor to senior management and audit committees on complex accounting, financial reporting, internal controls, and enterprise risk management

**Leadership/Strategy** significant experience as a business executive and director

**Governance** experience as the chairman of the governance committee with corporate governance issues, particularly in a publicly-traded company

**Banking/Financial Services** experience with banking, mutual funds, or other financial services industries, including regulatory experience and specific knowledge of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

<b>Brad Koenig</b>	<b>Board Committee:</b> Audit	<b>Independent:</b> Yes
--------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------

Nominating

Mr. Koenig, age 59, currently serves as Founder and CEO of FoodyDirect.com, (since 2011), an online marketplace that features foods from the top restaurants, bakeries and artisan purveyors around the country. He has served as a director on our Board of Directors since October 2017 and his term expires in 2018.

**Business Experience:** Head of Global Technology Investment Banking at Goldman Sachs, a leading global investment banking, securities and investment management firm (1990-2005)

Co-Head of Global Technology, Media and Telecommunications at Goldman Sachs (2002-2005)

**Private Directorships:** Theragenics Corporation, medical device company serving the surgical products and prostate cancer treatment markets

NGP/VAN Software, the leading technology provider to Democratic and progressive campaigns and organizations, offering clients an integrated platform of the best fundraising, compliance, field, organizing, digital, and social networking products

**Prior Directorships:** GSV Capital Corporation (2015-2017)

**Other Experience:** Adviser to Oak Hill Capital Management, a private equity firm

Dartmouth President's Leadership Council

**Education:** Bachelor's degree in Economics from Dartmouth College

Master's degree from Harvard Business School

**Skills/Qualifications:** In particular, Mr. Koenig's key areas of skill/qualifications include, but are not limited to:

**Client Industries** significant experience in venture capital and technology

**Leadership/Strategy** extensive experience as a director and executive in both public and private companies

**Finance, IT and Other Business Processes** extensive experience as a manager and CEO related to finance, accounting, IT, treasury, human resources, or other key business processes

**Enterprise Risk Management** experience in managing enterprise risk

**Governance** experienced in both corporate governance and executive compensation for both public and private companies

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Jorge Titinger**

**Board Committee:**

**Independent:**

Compensation, *Chair*

Yes

Mr. Titinger, age 56, currently serves as Principal and Founder of Titinger Consulting (since 2016), a private consulting and advisory service provider focusing on strategy development and execution, board governance, operational transformations, and culture changes. He has served as a director on our Board of Directors since December 2017 and his term expires in 2020.

**Business**

President and Chief Executive Officer of Silicon Graphics International, leader in high performance computing (2012-2016)

**Experience:**

President and Chief Executive Officer of Verigy, Inc., provider of advanced automated test systems and solutions to the semiconductor industry (2008-2011)

Senior Vice President and General Manager, Product Business Groups of FormFactor, Inc., the leading provider of essential test and measurement technologies along the full IC life cycle from characterization, modeling, reliability, and design de-bug, to qualification and production test (2007-2008)

Senior Vice President, Global Operations & Corporate Support Groups of KLA-Tencor Corporation, a provider of process control and yield management solutions (2002-2007)

Vice President, Global Operations, Silicon Business Sector (SBS) Products of Applied Materials, Inc., a leader in materials engineering solutions used to produce virtually every new chip and advanced display in the world (1998 - 2002)

President and Chief Operating Officer of Insync Systems, Inc., a gas delivery systems manufacturer (1995-1998)

Vice President, Operations/Co-Founder of NeTpower, Inc., a high-performance computer workstations and servers manufacturer (1992-1995)

Director, Manufacturing Engineering of MIPS Computer Systems, Inc./Silicon Graphics, Inc., a Graphics Computing Company (1989-1992)

Test Engineering Manager, Networked Computers Manufacturing Operations of Hewlett-Packard Company, a Graphics Computing Company (1985-1989)

**Public**

Xcerra, parent company of four brands that have been supplying innovative products and services to the semiconductor and electronics manufacturing industry

**Directorships:**

CalAmp, a pure-play pioneer in the connected vehicle and broader Industrial Internet of Things marketplace with its extensive portfolio of intelligent communications devices, robust and capable cloud platform, and targeted software applications

**Private** Transtech Glass Investment Ltd., a specialty glass company for the transportation market

**Directorships:**

**Prior** Semiconductor Equipment & Material International (Semi), North America, global industry association serving the manufacturing supply chain for the micro- and nano-electronics industries

**Directorships:**

Silicon Graphics International

Verigy, Inc.

Electroglas, Inc., provides advanced wafer probers, device handlers, test floor management software and services

Thermawave acquired and integrated into Kla-Tencor Corporation

**Other** Board Member, Unidad de Negocios Transaccionales (Grupo El Comercio)

**Experience:** Chairman of the Board, Hispanic Foundation of Silicon Valley (HFSV)

Board Member, Information Technology & Audit Committees, Stanford Children's Hospital

Advisory Board Member, Hispanic IT Executive Council (HITEC), Silicon Valley Education Foundation

**Education:** Bachelor's degree in Electrical Engineering from Stanford University

Master's degree in Electrical Engineering and Engineering Management and Business from Stanford University

**Skills/** In particular, Mr. Titinger's key areas of skill/qualifications include, but are not limited to:

**Qualifications:** **Client Industries** significant experience in venture capital and technology

**Leadership/Strategy** extensive experience as a director and executive in both public and private companies

**Finance, IT and Other Business Processes** extensive experience as a manager and CEO related to finance, accounting, IT, treasury, human resources, or other key business processes

**Enterprise Risk Management** experience in managing enterprise risk

**Governance** experienced in both corporate governance and executive compensation for both public and private companies

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Allyn C. Woodward, Jr.**

**Board Committee:**

**Independent:**

Audit

Yes Lead Director

Compensation

Mr. Woodward, age 77, has extensive experience and qualifications in banking and financial services. He has served as a director on our Board of Directors since February 2004 and his term expires in 2018.

**Business Experience:**

Vice Chairman and Director, Adams Harkness Financial Group (formerly Adams, Harkness & Hill), an independent institutional research, brokerage and investment banking firm (2001-2006)

President and Director, Adams Harkness Financial Group (1995-2001)

Silicon Valley Bank

Vice President, Founder, Wellesley, Massachusetts office

Senior Vice President (1990-1992)

Chief Operating Officer (California) (1992-1995)

Senior Vice President and Group Manager of Technology Group, Bank of New England (1963-1990)

**Private Directorships:**

Union Specialties, manufacturer of water-based polyurethane dispersions and specialty products (1990-present)

**Current Advisory Board Directorships:**

Fletcher Spaght Venture Capital (2005-present)

Boston Millennia Partners (2000-present)

Ampersand Venture Capital (2013-present)

**Prior Directorships:**

AH&H Venture Capital

Square 1 Bank

Lecroy Corporation, Chairman

Viewlogic Systems

Cayenne Software, Inc.

**Non-Profit  
Leadership:**

Member of Finance Committee and Board of Overseers, Newton Wellesley Hospital  
(2000-present)

Babson College, Member of:

Investment Committee

Finance Committee

Private Equity Committee (co-founder) (2000-present)

**Education:**

Bachelor's degree in Finance and Accounting from Babson College

Banking degree, Stonier Graduate School of Banking at Rutgers University

**Memberships:**

National Association of Corporate Directors

Board Leaders Group

**Certifications:**

Executive Masters Professional Director Certification, American College of Corporate  
Directors

**Skills/**

In particular, Mr. Woodward's key areas of skill/qualifications include, but are not limited  
to:

**Qualifications:**

**Client Industries and Banking/Financial Services** extensive leadership, management and  
director experience in financial services, banking and technology-related companies

**Leadership/Strategy** significant executive and board experience for both private and public  
companies in business, finance and investments with a special emphasis on best policies  
regarding compensation and governance and service as Lead Independent Director

**Finance, IT and Other Business Processes** extensive experience related to finance,  
accounting, IT, treasury, human resources or other key business processes

**Governance** as lead director extensive experience with corporate governance issues,  
particularly in a publicly-traded company



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Robert P. Badavas**

**Board Committee:**

**Independent:**

Audit

Yes

Mr. Badavas, aged 65, retired in August 2016 as Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of PlumChoice, a venture-backed technology, software and services company (since December 2011). He has served as a director on our Board of Directors since March 2006 and his term expires in 2020.

**Business Experience:** President, Petros Ventures, Inc., a management and advisory services firm (2009-2011 and 2016-present)

President and Chief Executive Officer of TAC Worldwide, a multi-national technical workforce management and business services company (2005-2009)

Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer, TAC Worldwide (2003-2005)

Senior Partner and Chief Operating Officer, Atlas Venture, an international venture capital firm (2001-2003)

Chief Executive Officer at Cerulean Technology, Inc., a venture capital backed wireless application software company (1995-2001)

Certified Public Accountant, PwC (1974-1983)

**Public Directorships:** Constant Contact, Inc., including chairman of the audit committee, a provider of email and other engagement marketing products and services for small and medium sized organizations, acquired by Endurance International Group Holdings, Inc., (2007-2016)

**Prior Directorships:** PlumChoice

Arivana, Inc.; a telecommunications infrastructure company publicly traded until its acquisition by SAC Capital

RSA Security; an IT security company publicly traded until its acquisition by EMC

On Technology; an IT software infrastructure company publicly traded until its acquisition by Symantec

Renaissance Worldwide; an IT services and solutions company publicly traded until its acquisition by Aquent

**Other Experience:** Vice-Chairman, Board of Trustees. Bentley University (since 2005)

Board of Trustees Executive Committee and Corporate Treasurer, Hellenic College/Holy Cross School of Theology, including positions on the executive committee and corporate treasurer (since 2002)

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Chairman Emeritus, The Learning Center for the Deaf (1995-2005)

Master Professional Director Certification, American College of Corporate Directors

National Association of Corporate Directors

Annunciation Greek Orthodox Cathedral of New England, Parish Council President (since 2016)

**Education:** Bachelor's degree in Accounting and Finance from Bentley University

**Skills/** In particular, Mr. Badavas' key areas of skill/qualifications include, but are not limited to:

**Qualifications:**

**Client Industries** extensive experience in software, business and technology enabled services and venture capital

**Leadership/Strategy** significant experience as a senior corporate executive in private and public companies, including tenure as chief executive officer, chief financial officer and chief operating officer

**Finance, IT and Other Business Strategy and Enterprise Risk Management** prior experience as a CEO directing business strategy and as a CFO directing IT, financing and accounting, strategic alliances and human resources and evaluation of enterprise risk in such areas

**Governance** extensive experience as an executive and director of private and public companies with governance matters

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Thomas J. Fallon**

**Board Committee:**  
Nominating

**Independent:**  
Yes

Mr. Fallon, aged 56, currently serves as Chief Executive Officer of Infinera Corporation (since 2010) and a member of Infinera's board of directors (since 2009). He has served as a director on our Board of Directors since July 2014 and his term expires in 2018.

**Infinera** President and Chief Executive Officer, Infinera Corporation (2010-Current)

**Corporation** Chief Operating Officer, Infinera Corporation (2006-2009)

**Experience:** Vice President of Engineering and Operations, Infinera Corporation (2004-2006)

**Other Business** Vice President, Corporate Quality and Development Operations of Cisco Systems, Inc.  
(2003-2004)

**Experience** General Manager of Cisco Systems Optical Transport Business Unit, VP Operations, VP Supply, various executive positions (1991-2003)

**Prior** Piccaro, a leading provider of solutions to measure greenhouse gas concentrations, trace gases and stable isotopes (2010-2016)

**Directorships:**

**Other** Member, Engineering Advisory Board of the University of Texas at Austin

**Experience:** Member, President's Development Board University of Texas

**Education:** Bachelor's degree in Mechanical Engineering from the University of Texas at Austin  
Master's degree in Business Administration from the University of Texas at Austin

**Skills/** In particular, Mr. Fallon's key areas of skill/qualifications include, but are not limited to:

**Qualifications:**

**Client Industries** significant experience in venture capital and technology

**Leadership/Strategy** extensive experience as a director and executive in both public and private companies

**Finance, IT and Other Business Processes** extensive experience as a manager and CEO related to finance, accounting, IT, treasury, human resources, or other key business processes.

**Enterprise Risk Management** experience in managing enterprise risk

**Governance** experienced in both corporate governance and executive compensation for both public and private companies

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Doreen Woo Ho**

**Board Committee:**

**Independent:**

Nominating, *Chair*

Compensation

Yes

Ms. Woo Ho, aged 70, is a retired senior executive who has held top management roles at some of the largest commercial banks in America, including Wells Fargo Bank, Citibank and United Commercial Bank. She has served as a director on our Board of Directors since October 2016 and her term expires in 2019.

**Business**

President and Chief Executive Officer of United Commercial Bank (2009)

**Experience:**

Executive Vice President, Student Loans and Corporate Trust, Wells Fargo & Company (2008)

President of the Consumer Credit Group, Wells Fargo Bank (1998-2007)

Senior Vice President of National Business Banking, US Consumer Bank, Citibank (1974-1998)

**Public**

U.S. Bank (since 2012)

**Directorships:**

**Prior**

United Commercial Bank (2009)

**Directorships:**

**Private**

San Francisco Opera (since 1992)

**Directorships:**

**Other**

Commissioner of the Port of San Francisco (since 2011)

**Experience:**

Wells Fargo Management Committee member (1999-2008)

**Education:**

Bachelor's in History from Smith College

Masters in East Asian Studies from the School of International and Public Affairs at Columbia University

**Skills/**

In particular, Ms. Woo Ho's key areas of skill/qualifications include, but are not limited to:

**Qualifications:**

**Banking/Financial Services** held a variety of key executive and management positions at large global financial institutions

**Leadership/Strategy** extensive experience as a director and executive with broad operational experience in investments and finance

**Finance, IT and other Business Processes** extensive experience in commercial lending, sales marketing as well as other key business processes

**Enterprise Risk Management** extensive experience in risk management and regulatory compliance in banking services

**Governance** gained extensive experience as CEO of a banking institution in corporate governance and executive management

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****Executives**

Our executive officers perform policy-making functions for us within the meaning of applicable SEC rules. They may also serve as officers of our other subsidiaries. There are no family relationships among our directors or executive officers.

The following information, as of December 31, 2017 outlines the name and age of our executive officers (as of the date of this prospectus) and his or her principal occupation with the Company, followed by the biographical information of each of such executive officer:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Age</b>	<b>Principal Occupation</b>
Manuel A. Henriquez	54	Chairman and Chief Executive Officer
David Lund	64	Interim Chief Financial Officer
Scott Bluestein	39	Chief Investment Officer
Melanie Grace	49	General Counsel, Chief Compliance Officer and Secretary
Gerard Waldt, Jr.	33	Interim Chief Accounting Officer

**Executive Biographies**

**Manuel A. Henriquez** biography can be found under Interested Director above.

**David Lund** joined us in 2017 as Interim Chief Financial Officer. Mr. Lund has over 30 years of experience in finance and accounting serving companies in the technology sector. Mr. Lund oversees the financial and accounting functions of the Company.

**Other Prior Experience**

Partner, Ravix Group Inc. (since 2016)

Chief Financial Officer and Consultant, White Oak Global Advisors LLC (2011-2015)

Chief Financial Officer, Hercules Capital, Inc. (2005-2011)

Corporate Controller, Rainmaker Systems, Inc. (2005-2005)

Corporate Controller, Centillium Communications, Inc. (2003-2005)

Chief Financial Officer and Consultant, APT Technologies, Inc. (2002-2003)

Chief Financial Officer and Vice President, Scion Photonics, Inc. (2001-2002)

Vice President and Senior Corporate Controller, Urban Media Communications (2000-2001)

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Vice President and Corporate Controller, InterTrust Technologies Corporation  
(1996-2000)

Senior Manager, Murdock & Associates Inc. (1996-1996)

Audit Senior Manager, Ernst & Young (1987-1996)

Audit Manager, Grant Thornton, LLP (1983-1987)

**Education/Other:**

Bachelor's in Business Administration with an emphasis in Accounting from San Jose State University

Bachelor's in Business Administration with an emphasis in Marketing from California State University, Chico



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Scott Bluestein** joined us in 2010 as Chief Credit Officer. He was promoted to Chief Investment Officer in 2014. Mr. Bluestein is responsible for managing the investment teams and investments made by the Company.

**Other Prior Experience** Founder and Partner, Century Tree Capital Management (2009-2010)

Managing Director, Laurus-Valens Capital Management, an investment firm specializing in financing small and microcap growth-oriented businesses through debt and equity securities (2003-2009)

Member of Financial Institutions Coverage Group focused on Financial Technology, UBS Investment Bank (2000-2003)

**Education/Other:** Bachelor's in Business Administration from Emory University

**Melanie Grace** joined us in 2015 as General Counsel, Chief Compliance Officer and Secretary. She has over 18 years of experience representing public and private companies in securities, compliance and transactional matters. Ms. Grace oversees the legal and compliance function for the Company and serves as secretary for the Company and select subsidiaries.

**Other Prior Experience** Chief Legal Officer and Corporate Secretary, WHV Investments, Inc. where she also served as interim Chief Compliance Officer (2011-2015)

Member, Management, Operations and Proxy Committees, WHV Investments, Inc. (2013-2015)

Chair, Ethics Committee, WHV Investments, Inc. (2013-2015)

Chief Counsel, Corporate, NYSE Euronext (2005-2008)

Associate, Fenwick & West LLP (2000-2005)

**Education/Other:** Bachelor's and Master's in History from the University of California, Riverside

Juris Doctor from Boston University School of Law

Member, State Bar of California

Registered In-House Counsel, New York

Designated Investment Adviser Certified Compliance Professional<sup>®</sup>

**Gerard R. Waldt, Jr.** joined us in 2016 as Assistant Controller and in 2017 became Corporate Controller and Interim Chief Accounting Officer. He is responsible for the financial and regulatory reporting, financial planning and analysis, and financial systems design and implementation.

**Other Prior Experience** Senior Manager in the Financial Services practice of Ernst & Young, McLean, VA where he developed extensive experience providing audit and advisory services to both publicly-traded and private institutions (2009-2016)

**Education/Other:** Bachelor of Business Administration Accounting from James Madison University

Active Certified Public Accountant in Maryland

**Board of Directors**

The number of directors is currently fixed at eight directors.

Our Board of Directors is divided into three classes. Class I directors hold office for a term expiring at the annual meeting of stockholders to be held in 2020, Class II directors hold office for a term expiring at the annual meeting of stockholders to be held in 2018 and Class III directors hold office for a term expiring at the annual meeting of stockholders to be held in 2019. Each director holds office for the term to which he or she is elected and until his or her successor is duly elected and qualifies. Messrs. Woodward, Koenig and Fallon's terms expire in 2018, Messrs. Henriquez and Hoffman and Ms. Woo Ho's terms expire in 2019 and Messrs. Badavas and Titingers terms expire in 2020. At each annual meeting of our stockholders, the successors to the class of directors whose terms expire at such meeting will be elected to hold office for a term expiring at the annual meeting of stockholders held in the third year following the year of their election and until their successors are duly elected and qualify.

Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**CORPORATE GOVERNANCE**

Our business, property and affairs are managed under the direction of our Board of Directors. Members of our Board of Directors are kept informed of our business through discussions with our chairman and chief executive officer, our chief financial officer, our chief investment officer, our general counsel, and our other officers and employees, and by reviewing materials provided to them and participating in meetings of our Board of Directors and its committees.

Because our Board of Directors is committed to strong and effective corporate governance, it regularly monitors our corporate governance policies and practices to ensure we meet or exceed the requirements of applicable laws, regulations and rules, and the NYSE's listing standards. The Board of Directors has approved corporate governance guidelines that provide a framework for the operation of the Board of Directors and address key governance practices. The Board of Directors has adopted a number of policies to support our values and good corporate governance, including corporate governance guidelines, Board of Directors' committee charters, insider trading policy, code of ethics, code of business conduct and ethics, and related person transaction approval policy.

During 2017, as part of its on-going review of our corporate governance policies, our Board of Directors undertook the following relating to our corporate governance practices:

reviewed our compliance manual and made changes, where required, with the approval of our Board of Directors; and

as a result of the ongoing plan to integrate our comprehensive compliance program, conducted training sessions in 2017 to remind employees of their obligations as employees and officers of a business development company and the specific policies and procedures that have been designed by us to reasonably ensure that our employees are in compliance with federal securities laws and other laws.

Our Board of Directors will continue to review and update the corporate governance guidelines, corporate governance practices, and our corporate governance framework, including the potential expansion of the size of our Board of Directors.

**Board Leadership Structure**

***Chairman and Chief Executive Officer***

Our Board of Directors currently combines the role of chairman of the Board of Directors with the role of chief executive officer, coupled with a lead independent director position to further strengthen our governance structure. Our Board of Directors believes this provides an efficient and effective leadership model for our company. Combining the chairman and chief executive officer roles fosters clear accountability, effective decision-making, and alignment on corporate strategy. Since 2004, Mr. Henriquez has served as both chairman of the Board of Directors and as our chief executive officer. Mr. Henriquez is an interested director.

No single leadership model is right for all companies at all times. Our Board of Directors recognizes that depending on the circumstances, other leadership models, such as a separate independent chairman of the Board of Directors, might be appropriate. Accordingly, our Board of Directors periodically reviews its leadership structure.

Moreover, our Board of Directors believes that its governance practices provide adequate safeguards against any potential risks that might be associated with having a combined chairman and chief executive officer. Specifically:

seven of our eight current directors are independent directors;

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

all of the members of our Audit Committee, Compensation Committee, and NCG Committee are independent directors;

our Board of Directors and its committees regularly conduct scheduled meetings in executive session, out of the presence of Mr. Henriquez and other members of management;

our Board of Directors and its committees regularly conduct meetings which specifically include Mr. Henriquez;

our Board of Directors and its committees remain in close contact with, and receive reports on various aspects of Hercules' management and enterprise risk directly from our senior management and independent auditors.

***Lead Independent Director***

Our Board of Directors has instituted the lead independent director position to provide an additional measure of balance, ensure our Board of Directors' independence, and enhance its ability to fulfill its management oversight responsibilities. Allyn C. Woodward, Jr. currently serves as our lead independent director. The lead independent director:

presides over all meetings of the independent directors at which our chairman is not present, including executive sessions of the independent directors;

has the authority to call meetings of the independent directors;

frequently consults with our chairman and chief executive officer about strategic policies;

provides our chairman and chief executive officer with input regarding Board of Directors meetings;

serves as a liaison between the chairman and chief executive officer and the independent directors; and

otherwise assumes such responsibilities as may be assigned to him by the independent directors. Having a combined chairman and chief executive officer, coupled with a substantial majority of independent, experienced directors, including a lead independent director with specified responsibilities on behalf of the independent directors, provides the right leadership structure for our company and is best for us and our stockholders at this time.

### **Board Oversight of Risk**

While day-to-day risk management is primarily the responsibility of our management team, our Board of Directors, as a whole and through its committees, is responsible for oversight of the risk management process.

Our Audit Committee has oversight responsibility not only for financial reporting with respect to our major financial exposures and the steps management has taken to monitor and control such exposures, but also for the effectiveness of management's enterprise risk management process that monitors and manages key business risks facing our company. In addition to our Audit Committee, the other committees of our Board of Directors consider the risks within their areas of responsibility. For example, our Compensation Committee considers the risks that may be posed by our executive compensation program.

Management provides regular updates throughout the year to our Board of Directors regarding the management of the risks they oversee at each regular meeting of our Board of Directors. Also, our Board of Directors receives presentations throughout the year from various department and business group heads that include discussion of significant risks as necessary. Additionally, our full Board of Directors reviews our short and long-term strategies, including consideration of significant risks facing our business and their potential impact.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

During 2017, in addition to unanimous written consents, the Board of Directors held the following meetings:

<b>Type of Meeting</b>	<b>Number</b>
<i>Regular Meetings to address regular, quarterly business matters</i>	4
<i>Other Meetings to address business matters that arise between quarters, such as fair valuing the portfolio investments, quarterly audit committee presentations and review and approval of earnings reports, among other matters</i>	12

Each director makes a diligent effort to attend all Board of Directors and committee meetings, as well as our annual meeting of stockholders. All directors attended at least 75% of the aggregate number of meetings of the Board of Directors and of the respective committees on which they served. Each of our then-serving directors attended our 2017 annual meeting of stockholders in person.

**Board Committees**

Our Board of Directors has established an Audit Committee, a Compensation Committee, and a NCG Committee. A brief description of each committee is included in this prospectus and the charters of the Audit, Compensation, and NCG Committees are available on the Investor Relations section of our website at <http://investor.htgc.com/corporate-governance.cfm>.

As of the date of this prospectus, the members of each of our Board of Directors committees are as follows (the names of the respective committee chairperson are bolded):

<b>Audit</b>	<b>Compensation</b>	<b>Nominating and Governance</b>
<b>Joseph Hoffman</b>	<b>Jorge Titinger</b>	<b>Doreen Woo Ho</b>
Robert Badavas	Allyn Woodward, Jr.	Thomas Fallon
Brad Koenig	Doreen Woo Ho	Joseph Hoffman
Allyn Woodward, Jr.		Brad Koenig

Each of our directors who sits on a committee satisfies the independence requirements for purposes of the rules promulgated by the NYSE and the requirements to be a non-interested director as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act. Mr. Badavas, Chairman of the Audit Committee and Messrs. Hoffman and Koenig, members of the Audit Committee, are each an audit committee financial expert as defined by applicable SEC rules.

**Committee Governance**

Each committee is governed by a charter that is approved by the Board of Directors, which sets forth each committee's purpose and responsibilities. The Board of Directors reviews the committees' charters, and each committee reviews its own charter, on at least an annual basis, to assess the charters' content and sufficiency, with final approval of any proposed changes required by the full Board of Directors.

**Committee Responsibilities and Meetings**

The key oversight responsibilities of the Board of Directors committees, and the number of meetings held by each committee during 2017, are as follows:

*Audit Committee*

*Number of meetings held in 2017: 4*

Appointing, overseeing and replacing, if necessary, our independent auditor.

Overseeing the accounting and financial reporting processes and the integrity of the financial statements.



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Establishing procedures for complaints relating to accounting, internal accounting controls or auditing matters.

Examining the independence qualifications of our auditors.

Assisting our Board of Directors oversight of our compliance with legal and regulatory requirements and enterprise risk management.

Assisting our Board of Directors in fulfilling its oversight responsibilities related to the systems of internal controls and disclosure controls which management has established regarding finance, accounting, and regulatory compliance.

Reviewing and recommending to the Board of Directors the valuation of the Company's portfolio.

*Compensation Committee*

*Number of meetings held in 2017: 5*

Oversees our overall compensation strategies, plans, policies and programs.

The approval of director and executive compensation.

The assessment of compensation-related risks.

*Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee*

*Number of meetings held in 2017: 3*

Discharging our Board of Director's responsibilities related to general corporate governance practices, including developing, reviewing and recommending to our Board of Directors a set of principles to be adopted as the Company's Corporate Governance Guidelines.

Conducting an annual performance evaluation of our Board of Directors, its committees, and its members.

Reviewing board composition, size, and refreshment and identifying and recommending to our Board of Directors qualified director candidates.

Overseeing succession planning for CEO and NEOs of the Company.

Making recommendations to our Board of Directors regarding any shareholder proposals received on corporate governance.

Criteria considered by the NCG Committee in evaluating qualifications of individuals for election as members of the Board of Directors consist of the independence and other applicable NYSE corporate governance requirements; the 1940 Act and all other applicable laws, rules, regulations and listing standards; and the criteria, policies and principles set forth in the NCG Committee charter.

Considers nominees properly recommended by a stockholder. Nominations for directors may be made by stockholders if notice is timely given and if the notice contains the information required in our Bylaws. Except as noted below, to be timely, proposals and nominations of stockholders must be delivered to our secretary no earlier than June 12, 2018 and not later than 5:00 p.m., Eastern Time, on July 12, 2018. Proposals must comply with the other requirements contained in our Bylaws, including supporting documentation and other information.

The NCG Committee regularly considers the composition of our Board to ensure there is a proper combination of skills and viewpoints. In 2017, the NCG Committee conducted a search to identify new director nominee candidates who would enhance the mix of leadership skills and qualifications on our Board. On October 25, 2017, the Board increased its size by one to eight and filled the vacancy by appointing Mr. Koenig to serve on the Board until such time as his successor is duly elected and qualified or until her earlier resignation or removal. On October 25, 2017, the Board also appointed Mr. Titinger to the Board until such time as his successor is duly elected and qualified or until his earlier resignation or removal. Mr. Titinger's appointment became effective at the time of the Annual Meeting, and he filled the position vacated by Susanne Lyons, who stepped down at the Annual Meeting.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Director Independence**

The NYSE's listing standards and Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act require that a majority of our Board of Directors and every member of our Audit, Compensation, and NCG Committees are independent. Under the NYSE's listing standards and our corporate governance guidelines, no director will be considered to be independent unless and until our Board of Directors affirmatively determines that such director has no direct or indirect material relationship with our company or our management. Our Board of Directors reviews the independence of its members annually.

In determining that Ms. Woo Ho and Messrs. Badavas, Woodward, Fallon, Hoffman, Koenig and Titingner are independent, our Board of Directors, through the NCG Committee, considered the financial services, commercial, family and other relationships between each director and his or her immediate family members or affiliated entities, on the one hand, and Hercules and its subsidiaries, on the other hand.

**Communication with the Board**

We believe that communications between our Board of Directors, our stockholders and other interested parties are an important part of our corporate governance process. Stockholders with questions about Hercules are encouraged to contact Michael Hara, Investor Relations at (650) 433-5578. However, if stockholders believe that their questions have not been addressed, they may communicate with our Board of Directors by sending their communications to Hercules Capital, Inc., c/o Melanie Grace, Secretary, 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301. All stockholder communications received in this manner will be delivered to one or more members of our Board of Directors.

Mr. Woodward currently serves as the lead independent director, and he presides over executive sessions of the independent directors. Parties may communicate directly with Mr. Woodward by sending their communications to Hercules Capital, Inc., c/o Melanie Grace, Secretary at the above address. All communications received in this manner will be delivered to Mr. Woodward.

All communications involving accounting, internal accounting controls and auditing matters, possible violations of, or non-compliance with, applicable legal and regulatory requirements or our code of ethics, or retaliatory acts against anyone who makes such a complaint or assists in the investigation of such a complaint, will be referred to Melanie Grace, Secretary. The communication will be forwarded to the chair of our Audit Committee if our secretary determines that the matter has been submitted in conformity with our whistleblower procedures or otherwise determines that the communication should be so directed.

The acceptance and forwarding of a communication to any director does not imply that the director owes or assumes any fiduciary duty to the person submitting the communication, all such duties being only as prescribed by applicable law.

**Code of Business Conduct and Ethics**

Our code of business conduct and ethics requires that our directors and executive officers avoid any conflict, or the appearance of a conflict, between an individual's personal interests and the interests of Hercules. Pursuant to our code of business conduct and ethics, which is available on our website at <http://investor.htgc.com/corporate-governance.cfm>, each director and executive officer must disclose any conflicts of interest, or actions or relationships that might give rise to a conflict, to our Audit Committee. Certain actions or

relationships that might give rise to a conflict of interest are reviewed and approved by our Board of Directors.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Availability of Corporate Governance Documents**

To learn more about our corporate governance and to view our corporate governance guidelines, code of business conduct and ethics, and the charters of our Audit Committee, Compensation Committee, and NCG Committee, please visit the Investor Relations page of our website at <http://investor.htgc.com/corporate-governance.cfm>, under Corporate Governance. Copies of these documents are also available in print free of charge by writing to Hercules Capital, Inc., c/o Melanie Grace, secretary, 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301.

**Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation**

All members of our Compensation Committee are independent directors and none of the members are present or past employees of the Company. No member of our Compensation Committee: (i) has had any relationship with the Company requiring disclosure under Item 404 of Regulation S-K under the Exchange Act; or (ii) is an executive officer of another entity, at which one of our executive officers serves on our Board of Directors.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION**

**Compensation Discussion and Analysis**

The Compensation Discussion and Analysis discusses our 2016 executive compensation program, as it relates to the following executive officers:

Manuel A. Henriquez	Chairman of the Board of Directors and Chief Executive Officer
Mark R. Harris <sup>(1)</sup>	Chief Financial Officer and Chief Accounting Officer
Scott Bluestein	Chief Investment Officer
Melanie Grace	General Counsel, Chief Compliance Officer and Secretary
Andrew Olson <sup>(2)</sup>	Vice President of Finance and Senior Controller

(1) Effective November 2, 2017, the Company and Mr. Harris mutually agreed that Mr. Harris would separate from the Company and end his tenure as Chief Financial Officer and Chief Accounting Officer. The Board appointed David Lund, the Company's former Chief Financial Officer, as Interim Chief Financial Officer and Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Controller, as Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

(2) Mr. Olson announced his resignation, effective July 21, 2017, from his position as Vice President of Finance and Senior Controller. Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Assistant Controller, assumed the position of Controller. Subsequently, the Board appointed Mr. Waldt as the Company's Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

We refer to Messrs. Henriquez, Harris, Bluestein and Olson and Ms. Grace as our named executive officers, or NEOs.

**Executive Summary**

Under the oversight of our Compensation Committee, the Company's executive compensation program is designed to attract, incent and retain talented individuals who are critical to our continued success and our corporate growth and who will deliver sustained strong performance over the longer term. Our executive compensation program is designed to motivate the Company's executive officers to maintain the financial strength of the Company while avoiding any inappropriate focus on short-term profits that would impede the Company's long-term growth and encourage excessive risk-taking.

In 2016, the Company continued to review and enhance our compensation practices in accordance with our executive compensation philosophy. The review considered both compensation levels and company performance over a one-, three-, and five-year period from 2012 to 2016 (the Performance Periods). (See *Compensation Philosophy and Objectives* below). The Company believes that compensation paid to our NEOs for 2016 was commensurate with the Company's overall absolute performance as well as our performance relative to peers during the relevant Performance Periods. The 2016 compensation decisions made by the Compensation Committee considered the fact that our performance relative to a peer group of companies was above the median, and in most cases above the 75<sup>th</sup> percentile, measured using Return on Average Assets ( ROAA ), Return on Equity ( ROE ), Return on Investment Capital ( ROIC ), and Total Shareholder Return ( TSR ) during the trailing one-, three-, and five-years.

The Company's incentive compensation practices are significantly limited by the requirements imposed on us as an internally managed business development company pursuant to the 1940 Act. (See *Limitations Imposed by the 1940*

*Act Relating to Implementation of Non-Equity Incentive Plans* below). These are regulatory limitations related to our corporate structure that are relatively unique and do not apply to most other publicly-traded companies. As discussed further below, our NEOs were compensated to reflect the Company's performance during the relevant Performance Periods (See *Performance Highlights and Assessment of Company Performance* below) as well as individual performance.

In addition to key factors involved in the 2016 decisions made by the Compensation Committee, we continue to maintain the enhancements to our executive officer compensation program that we adopted in 2016,

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

such as our clawback policy for all Section 16 officers and consideration of a mix of corporate and individual performance factors for our NEOs. In addition, the Compensation Committee did not grant restricted stock awards in 2017. Rather, the Compensation Committee granted restricted stock units with an additional one-year deferral period following the last vesting date. We believe these restricted stock unit awards assist the Company in retaining NEOs. In 2017, the Company entered into retention awards with Messrs. Henriquez, Harris and Bluestein which provide for certain benefits upon certain terminations of employment.

**Compensation Philosophy and Objectives**

The primary principle of our compensation program is to engage and align a substantial portion of executive compensation to the financial strength, long-term profitability, and risk management of the Company and to the creation of long-term stockholder value.

As an internally managed business development company, the Company's compensation program is designed to encourage the NEOs to think and act like stockholders. The structure of the NEOs' compensation program is designed to encourage and reward the following factors, among other things:

sourcing and pursuing attractively priced investment opportunities to venture-backed and selected publicly-listed companies;

maintaining credit quality, monitoring financial performance and ultimately managing a successful exit of the Company's investment portfolio;

achieving the Company's dividend objectives (which focus on stability and potential growth);

providing compensation and incentives necessary to attract, motivate and retain key executives critical to our continued success and growth;

focusing management behavior and decision-making on goals that are consistent with the overall strategy of the business;

ensuring a linkage between NEO compensation and individual contributions to our performance; and

creation of compensation principles and processes that are designed to balance risk and reward in a way that does not encourage unnecessary risk taking.

We believe that our continued success during 2016, despite strong competition for top-quality executive talent in the commercial and venture lending industry, was attributable to our ability to attract, motivate and retain the Company's outstanding executive team using both short- and long-term incentive compensation programs.



The Company's compensation objectives are achieved through its executive compensation program, which for 2016 consisted of the following:

**Annual Base Salary:** Cash paid on a regular basis throughout the year. This provides a level of fixed income that is market competitive to allow the Company to retain and attract executive talent.

**Annual Cash Bonus Awards:** Cash awards paid on an annual basis following year-end. This rewards NEOs who contribute to our financial performance and strategic success during the year, and rewards individual achievements.

**Long-Term Equity Incentive Awards:** Equity incentive awards vest 1/3 on a one-year cliff with remaining 2/3 vesting quarterly over two years based on continued employment with the Company. This rewards NEOs who contribute to our success through the alignment and creation of shareholder value, provides meaningful retention incentives, and rewards individual achievements.

The compensation program is designed to reflect best practices in executive compensation:

No employment agreements for NEOs.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

No guaranteed retirement benefits.

Clawback policy for all Section 16 officers.

No pension.

Maintenance of stock ownership guidelines for NEOs to own at least two times his or her salary

No executive perquisite allowances beyond the benefit programs offered to all employees.

No repricing of stock options without stockholder approval, as required under applicable NYSE rules (and subject to other requirements under the 1940 Act).

Routine engagement of an independent compensation consultant to review NEO compensation.

**Executive Compensation Governance**

The Company's executive compensation program is supported by strong corporate governance and Board-level oversight. The Compensation Committee provides primary oversight of our compensation programs, including the design and administration of executive compensation plans, assessment and setting of corporate performance goals, as well as individual performance metrics, and the approval of executive compensation. In addition, the Compensation Committee retains an independent compensation consultant, and where appropriate, discusses compensation-related matters with our CEO, as it relates to the other NEOs. The Compensation Committee developed our 2016 compensation program, and the compensation paid to our NEOs during and in respect of 2016 was approved by the Compensation Committee as well as all of our independent directors.

***Role of Compensation Committee:*** The Compensation Committee is comprised entirely of independent directors who are also non-employee directors as defined in Rule 16b-3 under the Exchange Act, independent directors as defined by the NYSE rules, and are not interested persons of the Company, as defined by Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act. For 2016, Ms. Lyons, Ms. Woo Ho and Mr. Woodward comprised the Compensation Committee, and Ms. Lyons chaired the Compensation Committee.

The Compensation Committee operates pursuant to a charter that sets forth its mission, specific goals and responsibilities. A key component of the Compensation Committee's goals and responsibilities is to evaluate, approve and/or make recommendations to our Board of Directors regarding the compensation of our NEOs, and to review their performance relative to their compensation to assure that they are compensated in a manner consistent with the compensation philosophy discussed above.

The Compensation Committee has not established a policy or target for the allocation between cash and non-cash or short-term and long-term compensation. Rather, the Compensation Committee undertakes a subjective analysis in

light of the principles described herein and, in connection with its analysis, reviews and considers information provided by independent compensation consultants and surveys to which the Company subscribes to determine the appropriate level and mix of base compensation, performance-based pay, and other elements of compensation.

In addition, the Compensation Committee evaluates and makes recommendations to our Board of Directors regarding the compensation of the directors for their services. Annually, the Compensation Committee:

evaluates our CEO's performance,

reviews our CEO's evaluation of the other NEOs' performance,

determines and approves the compensation paid to our CEO, and

with input from our CEO, reviews and approves the compensation of the other NEOs.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

The Compensation Committee periodically reviews our compensation programs and equity incentive plans to ensure that such programs and plans are consistent with our corporate objectives and appropriately align our NEOs' interests with those of our stockholders. The Compensation Committee also administers our stock incentive program. The Compensation Committee may not delegate its responsibilities discussed above.

***Role of Compensation Consultant:*** The Compensation Committee has engaged Frederic W. Cook & Co., Inc., or F.W. Cook, as an independent outside compensation consultant to assist the Compensation Committee and provide advice on a incorporating variety of compensation matters relating to CEO and NEOs compensation, peer group selection, compensation program design best practices, market and industry compensation trends, improved program designs, market competitive director compensation levels and regulatory developments. F.W. Cook was hired by and reports directly to the Compensation Committee. Our compensation consultant does not provide any other services to the Company. The Compensation Committee has assessed the independence of F.W. Cook pursuant to the NYSE rules, and it has been concluded that the consultant's work for the Compensation Committee does not raise any conflict of interest.

Subsequently, the Compensation Committee engaged Frederic W. Cook & Co. to provide the following services to the Committee:

Provide information, research, market analysis and recommendations with respect to our 2016 executive and non-employee director compensation programs, including evaluating the components of our executive and non-employee director compensation programs;

In connection with its research with respect to executive and non-employee director compensation programs, update the Compensation Committee on market trends, changing practices, and legislation pertaining to compensation programs;

Advise on the design of the executive and non-employee director compensation programs and the reasonableness of individual compensation targets and awards;

Provide advice and recommendations that incorporated both market data and Company-specific factors; and

Assist the Compensation Committee in making pay recommendations for the NEOs after the evaluation of, among other things, Company and individual performance, market pay level, and management recommendations.

The Compensation Committee's executive compensation determinations are subjective and the result of the Compensation Committee's business judgment. Its determinations are informed by the experiences of its members and the peer group data provided by its independent compensation consultant. Accordingly, the Compensation Committee does not target a percentile within its peer group. Instead, it uses the data as a reference point in determining the types and amounts of compensation provided by the Company.

***Role of Chief Executive Officer:*** From time to time and at the Compensation Committee's request, our CEO will attend the Compensation Committee's meetings to discuss the Company's performance and compensation-related matters. Our CEO does not attend executive sessions of the Compensation Committee, unless invited by the Compensation Committee. While our CEO does not participate in any deliberations relating to his own compensation, our CEO reviews on at least an annual basis the performance of each of the other NEOs and other executive officers. Based on these performance reviews and the Company's overall absolute and relative performance, our CEO makes recommendations to the Compensation Committee on any changes to base salaries, annual bonuses and equity awards. The Compensation Committee considers the recommendations submitted by our CEO, as well as data and analysis provided by management and F.W. Cook, but retains full discretion to approve and/or recommend for the Board of Directors' approval all executive and director compensation.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****Competitive Benchmarking Against Peers**

To determine the competitiveness of executive compensation levels, the Compensation Committee analyzes a group of internally managed business development companies, financial services companies and real estate investment trusts ( REITs ) as set forth below (the Peer Group ). The Peer Group is viewed as reflecting the labor market for our officer and employee talent, has a similar investor base, and, like the Company, the business development companies and REITs are pass-through entities with the majority of earnings required to be distributed to shareholders as a dividend. The Compensation Committee does not specifically benchmark the compensation of our NEOs against that paid by other companies. During 2016, the Compensation Committee, based on the advice of F.W. Cook, reviewed the peer group used in connection with prior compensation decisions. Based on this review, and the advice of F.W. Cook, the Compensation Committee updated our Peer Group to better align it to our business. Our Peer Group was used as a factor in determining the annual cash bonus awards made with respect to 2016 (but paid in 2017), along with the various performance metrics outlined below under *Performance Highlights and Assessment of Company Performance*, as well as the further considerations further described below under *Annual Cash Bonus Awards*. The Peer Group data used in such determination was for the period January 1, 2016 through October 31, 2016 and the other performance metrics referred to below are presented as of the fiscal year ended 2016.

Our current Peer Group includes:

***Internally Managed Business Development Companies:*** American Capital Corp<sup>(1)</sup> KCAP Financial, Main Street Capital and Triangle Capital

***Financial Services:*** Alliance Bernstein, BGC Partners, Cowen Group, Evercore Partners, Fortress Investment Group, Greenhill & Co., Houlihan Lokey, LPL Financial Holdings, On Deck Capital and WisdomTree Investments

***Real Estate Investment Trusts:*** Capstead Mortgage, CYS Investments, Hannon Armstrong, iStar Inc., Ladder Capital, MFA Financial, Redwood Trust, Sabra Health Care and Seritage Growth.

As of October 31 2016, which is the period the Compensation Committee reviewed our Peer Group, the Company outperformed most of its Peer Group over the one-, three- and five-years ( Peer Group Performance ) as follows\*:

Performance Period	Return on Average Assets (excl. cash)		Return on Equity		Return on Invested Capital		Total Shareholder Returns	
	HTGC	% Rank of Peer Group	HTGC	% Rank of Peer Group	HTGC	% Rank of Peer Group	HTGC	% Rank of Peer Group
1-year	6.1%	100%	10.5%	93%	6.2%	93%	36.2%	100%
3-year	6.2%	99%	10.2%	89%	6.3%	89%	5.3%	64%
5-year	6.3%	96%	10.3%	86%	6.4%	87%	17.2%	88%

\* Data source: S&P Capital IQ and reflects the most recent four quarters and TSR available as of 10/31/16.

The Company believes that compensation paid to our NEOs for 2016 was commensurate with the Company's overall absolute performance as well as our performance relative to the Peer Group during the relevant Performance Periods. The 2016 compensation decisions made by the Compensation Committee considered the fact that our performance relative to the Peer Group was above the median, and in most cases above the 75th percentile, measured using Return on Average Assets, Return on Equity, Return on Investment Capital and Total Shareholder Return during the trailing one-, three-, and five-years as indicated in the chart above.

(1) American Capital is no longer included in the 2017 peer group since it was acquired by Ares Capital Corporation.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Our Regulatory Status and Limitations Imposed by the 1940 Act**

We are an internally-managed, non-diversified, closed-end investment company that has elected to be regulated as a business development company under the 1940 Act. As a business development company, we are required to comply with certain regulatory requirements, including the 1940 Act, rules promulgated under the 1940 Act, and exemptive orders issued to us by the SEC. We refer to these requirements, rules, and exemptive orders as the 1940 Act Requirements. Among other things, these 1940 Act Requirements:

Limit the Company's ability to implement non-equity incentive plans (i.e., cash incentive plans) that would restrict the discretion and decision-making authority of the Compensation Committee. The 1940 Act Requirements provide that the Company may maintain either an equity incentive plan or a cash incentive plan. A profit sharing plan as defined under the 1940 Act is any written or oral plan, contract, authorization or arrangement, or any practice, understanding or undertaking whereby amounts payable under the compensation plan are dependent upon or related to the profits of the company. The SEC has stated that compensation plans possess profit-sharing characteristics if an investment company is obligated to make payments under such a plan based on the level of income, realized gains or loss on investments or unrealized appreciation or depreciation of assets of such investment company.

The Company believes that equity incentives strongly align the interests of our stockholders with our executive officers and other employees, and, accordingly, the Company implemented an equity incentive plan in 2004. Given our 2004 Equity Incentive Plan (the Equity Plan), the 1940 Act Requirements prohibit us from also implementing a cash incentive plan that restricts the Compensation Committee's discretion in the final determination of cash incentive awards.

Limit the terms the Company may include in the Equity Plan, and limit our ability to implement certain changes to the Equity Plan without the SEC's approval. The Equity Plan is administered pursuant to specific exemptive orders granted by the SEC. The Company believes the current structure of the Equity Plan reflects the terms and plan provisions currently permitted for an internally-managed business development company.

Why is this important to the Company's executive compensation? The 1940 Act Requirements that restrict the Company to sponsoring either an equity incentive plan or a profit sharing plan limit the Company's use of formulas or non-discretionary objective performance goals or criteria in its incentive plans. This means that the Compensation Committee is not permitted to use a nondiscretionary formulaic application of any performance criteria for corporate and individual goals to determine compensation. Rather, the Compensation Committee must take into consideration all factors and use its discretion to determine the appropriate amount of compensation for our NEOs. The Compensation Committee's objective is to work within this regulatory framework to maintain and motivate pay-for-performance alignment, to establish appropriate compensation levels relative to our Peer Group and to implement compensation best practices.

**2016 Advisory Vote on Executive Compensation**

At our 2016 annual meeting of stockholders, our advisory vote on say-on-pay received support from our stockholders (89.4% of votes cast). The Company believes that the continuing dialogue with our stockholders on company



performance, compensation and other governance matters is important. In advance of our 2016 annual meeting of stockholders, management engaged in numerous direct dialogues with our largest institutional shareholders, as well as a number of other institutional shareholders, to gain broad-based and/or specific insights into the Company's overall performance, operating expenses, including executive compensation and corporate governance practices. In addition, we invited each of our institutional stockholders holding more than 1% of the Company's stock to speak directly with management specifically on executive compensation and corporate governance practices.

The Company anticipates continuing our stockholder engagement efforts following the 2017 annual meeting and in advance of our future annual meetings.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****Performance Highlights and Assessment of Company Performance**

In determining the compensation for our NEOs, the Compensation Committee evaluates our performance relative to our Peer Group (See *Competitive Benchmarking Against Peers* above), as well as Company-specific absolute performance factors over the relevant Performance Periods. In 2016, relative and company-specific factors included:

**Key Performance Indicators**

Metric	Performance Period Outcomes				
	2016	2015	2014	2013	2012
Total of New Fundings (in \$ millions)	680.7	712.3	621.3	500.7	554.9
Total Investments at Cost (in \$ millions)	1,511.5	1,252.3	1,035.3	906.3	914.3
Net Interest Margin (in \$ million)	138.0	120.2	108.1	104.6	73.8

*Total New Fundings:* Debt and equity fundings grew from \$554.9 million in 2012 to \$680.7 million in 2016 or a CAGR of 5.2%, as we continue to expand our origination team, increase our market share and organically grow our business via a record funding year for Hercules.

*Total Investments:* Total investments at cost increased to \$1,511.5 billion in 2016 from \$914.3 million in 2012, a CAGR of 13.4% due to record new fundings, combined with the monetization of our warrants and equity positions.

*Net Interest Margin:* We continue to grow our net interest margin due to strong portfolio growth and effectively managing our weighted average cost of debt.

**Execution Across Performance Metrics**

Metric	Performance Period Outcomes				
	2016	2015	2014	2013	2012
Liquidity Levels (in \$ millions)	203.0	195.2	377.1	373.4	288.0
Available Unfunded Commitments (in \$ millions)	59.7	75.4	147.7	69.1	19.3
Cumulative Net Realized Losses (in \$ millions)	2.3	6.9	12.0	32.1	47.0
Distribution Yield (%)*	8.8	10.2	8.3	6.8	8.5

\* *Distribution Yield:* Distribution Yield is a financial ratio that indicates the amount of distributions paid by the Company relative to its share price and is calculated as annual distributions per share divided by price per share as of measurement date. Distribution yield does not reflect a return of capital to the Company's stockholders nor does it reflect the total return on a stockholder's investment in the Company.

*Liquidity Levels:* The use of our credit facilities has been an integral component of our treasury management as we minimize our cash drag on our assets via the use of our warehouse facilities. These facilities have a low interest cost and allow us to build up our asset base for future offerings at competitive rates.

*Available Unfunded Commitments:* We believe that we have done an outstanding job on managing our Available Unfunded Commitments. Our Available Unfunded Commitments was 4.5% of our loan portfolio at the end of 2016, where as in 2015, it was 6.8%.

*Cumulative Net Realized Losses:* We continue to demonstrate strong credit management and nothing shows this more than our cumulative net losses, where we finished in 2016 at \$2.3 million on commitments of \$6.5 billion. In 2012, our cumulative net realized losses were \$47 million since inception, demonstrating our ability to manage our portfolio effectively over the last 5 years.

*Distribution Yield:* We saw our Distribution Yield decline to 8.8% at the end of 2016. We believe that our continued strong performance will be recognized and our Distribution Yields will reduce further to the range we believe is representative of our stock price.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****Assessment of Company Performance**

In determining annual compensation for our NEOs, the Compensation Committee analyzes and evaluates the individual achievements and performance of our NEOs as well as the overall relative and absolute operating performance and achievements of the Company. We believe that the alignment of (i) our business plan, (ii) stockholder expectations and (iii) our employee compensation is essential to long-term business success and the interests of our stockholders and employees and to our ability to attract and retain executive talent, especially in a competitive environment for top-quality executive talent in the venture debt industry.

Our business plan involves taking on credit risk over an extended period of time, and a premium is placed on our ability to maintain stability and growth of net asset values as well as continuity of earnings growth to pass through to stockholders in the form of recurring dividends over the long term. Our strategy is to generate income and capital gains from our investments in the debt with warrant securities, and to a lesser extent direct equity, of our portfolio companies. This income supports the anticipated payment of dividends to our stockholders. Therefore, a key element of our return to stockholders is current income through the payment of dividends. This recurring payout requires a methodical asset acquisition analyses as well as highly active monitoring and management of our investment portfolio over time. To accomplish these functions, our business requires implementation and oversight by management and key employees with highly specialized skills and experience in the venture debt industry. A substantial part of our employee base is dedicated to the generation of new investment opportunities to allow us to sustain dividends and to the maintenance of asset values in our portfolio. In addition to the performance factors above, the Company considered the following Company-specific performance factors over the relevant Performance Periods: overall credit performance, performance against annual gross funding goals, overall yields, efficiency ratios, total and net investment income and realized and unrealized gains and losses.

**Elements of Executive Compensation and 2016 Compensation Determinations*****Base Salary***

We believe that base salaries are a fundamental element of our compensation program. The Compensation Committee establishes base salaries for each NEO to reflect (i) the scope of the NEO's industry experience, knowledge and qualifications, (ii) the NEO's position and responsibilities and contributions to our business growth and (iii) salary levels and pay practices of those companies with whom we compete for executive talent.

The Compensation Committee considers base salary levels at least annually as part of its review of the performance of NEOs and from time to time upon a promotion or other change in job responsibilities. During its review of base salaries for our executives, the Compensation Committee primarily considers: individual performance of the executive, including leadership and execution of strategic initiatives and the accomplishment of business results for our company; market data provided by our compensation consultant; our NEOs total compensation, both individually and relative to our other NEOs; and for NEOs other than the CEO, the base salary recommendations of our CEO.

<b>NEO</b>	<b>2016 Base Salary</b>
Manuel Henriquez	\$ 803,154
Mark Harris <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 412,000

Scott Bluestein	\$ 432,600
Melanie Grace	\$ 283,250
Andrew Olson <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 211,150

(1) Effective November 2, 2017, the Company and Mr. Harris mutually agreed that Mr. Harris would separate from the Company and end his tenure as Chief Financial Officer and Chief Accounting Officer. The Board appointed David Lund, the Company's former Chief Financial Officer, as Interim Chief Financial Officer and Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Controller, as Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

(2) Mr. Olson announced his resignation, effective July 21, 2017, from his position as Vice President of Finance and Senior Controller. Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Assistant Controller, assumed the position of Controller. Subsequently, the Board appointed Mr. Waldt as the Company's Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

***Annual Cash Bonus Awards***

The Compensation Committee, together with input from our CEO, developed a specific bonus pool for the 2016 operating year to be available for our annual cash bonus program. The amount determined to be available for our annual cash program was dependent upon many factors, including those outlined previously under *Performance Highlights and Assessment of Company Performance*.

The Compensation Committee designs our annual cash bonuses to motivate our NEOs to achieve financial and non-financial objectives consistent with our operating plan. The Compensation Committee generally targets cash bonuses to 50% to 100% of an NEO's base salary; however, such bonus amounts may exceed these targets in the event of exceptional company and individual performance.

Bonuses are not formulaic to comply with the 1940 Act regulations that govern our business as an internally managed business development company and have restrictions on setting compensation to specific financial measurements. As a result, the Compensation Committee considers overall business performance factors and individual factors, including CEO feedback, when determining the size of individual NEO bonuses. Accordingly, should actual company and NEO performance exceed expectations, the Compensation Committee may adjust individual cash bonuses to take such superior performance into account. Conversely, if company and NEO performance is below expectations, the Compensation Committee will consider such performance in determining the NEO's actual cash bonus.

In evaluating the performance of our NEOs to arrive at their 2016 cash bonus awards, the Compensation Committee considered the performance factor achievements discussed above under *Performance Highlights and Assessment of Company Performance*, and the Compensation Committee specifically compared our performance and the returns of our stockholders against the performance and shareholder returns of other business development companies. In particular, the Committee considered our high relative total shareholder return and return on invested capital relative to peer group benchmarks, which was above the 75<sup>th</sup> percentile over the last year, as this shows the success for shareholders and of the core business mission of allocating equity and debt capital efficiently for a high risk-adjusted return.

When sizing our cash bonus pool and allocating bonus awards, the total compensation paid to our NEOs and other employees is evaluated against the expense ratios of other business development companies. With respect to 2016, company-wide compensation expense as a percentage of average assets among the peers in the Peer Group was considered. For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2016, the ratio of our compensation expense divided by total revenue was below the median of the Peer Group.

Based on the foregoing considerations and analysis, and after due deliberation, the Compensation Committee awarded our current NEOs the following annual cash bonuses with respect to 2016.

NEO	2016 Cash Bonus Award
Manuel Henriquez	\$ 1,200,000

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Mark Harris <sup>(1)</sup>	\$	400,000
Scott Bluestein	\$	650,000
Melanie Grace	\$	145,000
Andrew Olson <sup>(2)</sup>	\$	150,000

(1) Effective November 2, 2017, the Company and Mr. Harris mutually agreed that Mr. Harris would separate from the Company and end his tenure as Chief Financial Officer and Chief Accounting Officer. The Board appointed David Lund, the Company's former Chief Financial Officer, as Interim Chief Financial Officer and Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Controller, as Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

(2) Mr. Olson announced his resignation, effective July 21, 2017, from his position as Vice President of Finance and Senior Controller. Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Assistant Controller, assumed the position of Controller. Subsequently, the Board appointed Mr. Waldt as the Company's Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

***Long-Term Equity Incentive Compensation***

***2004 Equity Incentive Plan***

Our long-term equity incentive compensation is designed to develop a strong linkage between pay and our strategic goals and performance, as well as to align the interests of our NEOs, and other executives and key employees, with those of our stockholders by awarding long-term equity incentives in the form of stock options, restricted stock and/or restricted stock units. These awards are made pursuant to our Equity Plan, which permits options, restricted stock and restricted stock unit awards.

We believe that annual equity grants, in the form of restricted stock awards or restricted stock units, to our NEOs are a critical part of our compensation program as they allow us to:

align our business plan, stockholder interests and employee concerns,

manage dilution associated with equity-based compensation,

match the return expectations of the business more closely with our equity-based compensation plan, and

retain key management talent.

We believe that these annual equity grants motivate performance that is more consistent with the type of return expectations that we have established for our stockholders. Accordingly, the Company awards restricted stock award grants to our NEOs. These grants typically vest over three years.

***Grant Practices for Executive Officers***

Annual equity compensation grants to executive officers have typically been granted in the first quarter of the year. The Company does not grant stock options to executive officers. As a result, there were no option grants to our NEOs in 2016.



**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****Restricted Stock Units**

In 2017, the Compensation Committee did not grant restricted stock awards to NEOs. Rather, in January 2017, the Compensation Committee granted restricted stock units to the NEOs. With respect to the restricted stock units, the Compensation Committee assessed each current NEO's individual performance for 2016, our overall company performance in 2016 (including the performance factors detailed above under *Performance Highlights and Assessment of Company Performance* and *Annual Cash Bonus Awards*) and the levels of equity compensation paid by other companies with whom we compete for executive talent. Based on this assessment, the Compensation Committee determined that the following restricted stock units be granted to our current NEOs with respect to 2016, in the amounts and on the dates set forth below to reward them for services performed in 2016. These restricted stock units vest as to one-third of the shares underlying the awards on the first anniversary of the grant date, and they vest as to the remaining shares in equal quarterly installments over the next two years. Settlement of the restricted stock units is deferred following vesting and the restricted stock units will not be settled until the earliest to occur of (1) January 24, 2021, (2) the death or disability of the NEO, (3) the separation from service of the NEO, or (4) a change in control of the Company. Each restricted stock unit will entitle the holder to dividend equivalents in the form of the Company's common stock, which dividend equivalent payments will be settled on the date the related restricted stock unit is settled. We believe these restricted stock unit awards assist the Company in retaining NEOs.

NEO	Grant Date	Restricted Stock Units	Fair Value of Restricted Stock Awards <sup>(1)</sup>
Manuel Henriquez	1/24/2017	351,865	\$ 5,000,000
Scott Bluestein	1/24/2017	123,153	\$ 1,750,000
Mark Harris <sup>(2)</sup>	1/24/2017	35,187	\$ 500,000
Melanie Grace	1/24/2017	21,112	\$ 300,000
Andrew Olson <sup>(3)</sup>	1/24/2017	17,593	\$ 250,000

(1) Based on the closing price per share of our common stock of \$14.21 on January 24, 2017.

(2) Effective November 2, 2017, the Company and Mr. Harris mutually agreed that Mr. Harris would separate from the Company and end his tenure as Chief Financial Officer and Chief Accounting Officer. The Board appointed David Lund, the Company's former Chief Financial Officer, as Interim Chief Financial Officer and Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Controller, as Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

(3) Mr. Olson announced his resignation, effective July 21, 2017, from his position as Vice President of Finance and Senior Controller. Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Assistant Controller, assumed the position of Controller. Subsequently, the Board appointed Mr. Waldt as the Company's Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

**Other Elements of Compensation**

*Retention Agreements:* Messrs. Henriquez, Harris and Bluestein entered into retention agreements with the Company in October 2017 which provide for severance benefits in the event of certain terminations of employment. In November 2017, Mr. Harris and the Company mutually agreed to enter into a separation agreement, which supersedes the terms of Mr. Harris' retention agreement. Ms. Grace and Mr. Olson do not

have a written severance agreement or other arrangement providing for payments or benefits upon a termination of employment.

*Severance:* No NEO or employee of the Company has a written severance agreement or other arrangement providing for payments or benefits upon a termination of employment.

*Benefits and Perquisites:* Our NEOs receive the same benefits and perquisites as other full-time employees. Our benefits program is designed to provide competitive benefits and is not based on performance. Our NEOs and other full-time employees receive health and welfare benefits, which consist of life, long-term and short-term disability, health, dental, vision insurance benefits and the opportunity to participate in our defined contribution 401(k) plan. During 2016, our 401(k) plan provided for a match of contributions by the company for up to \$18,000 per full-time employee. Other

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

than the benefits set forth immediately above, our NEOs are not entitled to any other benefits or perquisites.

*Potential Payments Upon Termination or Change of Control:* No NEO or employee of the Company has a written employment agreement, or other agreement, providing for enhanced cash payments in connection with a change of control of the Company. Further, no NEO or any other employee is entitled to any tax gross-up payments.

**Retention Agreements**

In October 2017, Messrs. Henriquez, Harris and Bluestein entered into retention agreements with the Company pursuant to which, if (1) the Executive's employment is terminated by the Company without cause or by the Executive for good reason, or (2) the Company becomes an externally managed BDC and the new external advisor does not make a written offer of employment to the Executive or makes a written offer of employment to the Executive that is not on similar terms to the Executive's current employment with the Company (including, without limitation, authority, responsibilities, base salary, annual bonus opportunity, long term incentive opportunity and retention benefits) and the Executive does not accept such offer then, subject to the Executive's execution of a release of claims in favor of the Company, each of Mr. Henriquez and Mr. Bluestein shall be entitled to receive the following benefits:

Mr. Henriquez shall be entitled to receive (a) a lump sum payment in an amount equal to two times the sum of (i) annual base salary and (ii) an amount equal to the three-year average annual bonus actually earned by and paid to Mr. Henriquez for the three full performance periods immediately prior to the termination date; (b) any unpaid annual bonus earned with respect to a prior performance period and not yet paid as the date of termination; (c) a pro rata annual bonus with respect to the performance period in which termination of employment occurs, (d) (x) continued vesting of outstanding equity awards for two years in the case of a termination not in connection with a change in control of the Company or (y) full vesting of outstanding equity awards in the case of a termination in connection with a change in control of the Company and (e) reimbursement of the full amount of COBRA premiums for Mr. Henriquez and his eligible dependents for 18 months following termination of employment.

Mr. Bluestein shall be entitled to receive (a) a lump sum payment in an amount equal to 1.75 times the sum of (i) annual base salary and (ii) an amount equal to the three-year average annual bonus actually earned by and paid to Mr. Bluestein for the three full performance periods immediately prior to the termination date; (b) any unpaid annual bonus earned with respect to a prior performance period and not yet paid as the date of termination; (c) a pro rata annual bonus with respect to the performance period in which termination of employment occurs, (d) (x) continued vesting of outstanding equity awards for 1.75 years in the case of a termination not in connection with a change in control of the Company or (y) full vesting of outstanding equity awards in the case of a termination in connection with a change in control of the Company and (e) reimbursement of the full amount of COBRA premiums for Mr. Bluestein and his eligible dependents for 18 months following termination of employment.

In November 2017, Mr. Harris and the Company mutually agreed to enter into a separation agreement, which provides that the Company will pay Mr. Harris a monetary sum equivalent to six months gross base salary plus up to an additional six months subject to Mr. Harris certifying he is not employed and is actively seeking employment during

such time. In addition, the Company will reimburse Mr. Harris for health insurance premiums for him and his eligible dependents under COBRA for a period of up to twelve months subject to the same qualifications applicable to payments based on his gross base salary. The separation agreement also contains certain additional provisions that are customary for agreements of this type, including confidentiality, non-solicitation, and non-disparagement covenants, as well as a general release of the Company against certain claims. The separation agreement supersedes the terms of Mr. Harris' retention agreement, under which he would

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

have received (a) a lump sum payment in an amount equal to 1.5 times the sum of (i) annual base salary and (ii) an amount equal to the three-year average annual bonus actually earned by and paid to Mr. Harris for the three full performance periods immediately prior to the termination date; (b) any unpaid annual bonus earned with respect to a prior performance period and not yet paid as the date of termination; (c) a pro rata annual bonus with respect to the performance period in which termination of employment occurs, (d) (x) continued vesting of outstanding equity awards for 1.5 years in the case of a termination not in connection with a change in control of the Company or (y) full vesting of outstanding equity awards in the case of a termination in connection with a change in control of the Company and (e) reimbursement of the full amount of COBRA premiums for Mr. Harris and his eligible dependents for 18 months following termination of employment.

**Corporate Goals**

For 2016, the Compensation Committee developed corporate goals that were required to be achieved for executive officers to receive up to 50% of their incentive compensation. These goals included operational performance as well as performance relative to the Peer Group. While the criteria may not be weighted, the Compensation Committee took into consideration each of these factors to determine whether the executive officers are eligible for up to 50% of the proposed incentive compensation. The Compensation Committee believes that the corporate goals applicable to all executive officers create an alignment not only with shareholders but also to the Company's business strategy and performance goals.

**Defined Individual Goals**

For 2016, the Compensation Committee developed individual goals for the CEO. In addition, the CEO and each NEO developed individual goals for the NEOs and such goals were approved by the Compensation Committee. Each set of individual goals are unique to the executive officer's responsibilities and position within the Company. While each of the factors may not be weighted, the Compensation Committee took into consideration each of these factors to determine whether the executive officers are eligible for up to 50% of the executive officer's incentive compensation.

**Pay-for-Performance Alignment**

The Company believes that there exists an alignment between the compensation of our NEOs and our performance over the relevant Performance Periods. As noted above, a broad range of individual performance factors and company performance factors are analyzed each year, including total shareholder return relative to our Peer Group, and, in 2016, analysis of relative ROAA, ROE, and ROIC versus the compensation peers over one-, three-, and five-years to measure short-, medium-, and long-term performance. The objective in analyzing these key performance factors is to align NEO compensation to our performance relative to our Peer Group and our absolute corporate performance.

The Company's annual bonus and equity awards constitute an effective mix of short- and long-term compensation components and reflect key measures of our performance and the returns enjoyed by our stockholders. Consistent with our pay-for-performance philosophy, the Compensation Committee will make future compensation decisions taking into account our absolute and relative performance, and, if our future performance were to fall significantly below our peers, the Compensation Committee would consider adjusting NEO compensation prospectively.

**Total Compensation Expense Relative to other Internally Managed Business Development Companies**

In determining annual bonus awards, the total compensation paid to our NEOs and other employees against the expense ratios of other internally managed business development companies, as well as a comparison to total SG&A for select externally managed business development companies, was considered.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Index to Financial Statements**

### **Internal Pay Equity Analysis**

Our compensation program is designed with the goal of providing compensation to our NEOs that is fair, reasonable, and competitive. To achieve this goal, the Company believes it is important to compare compensation paid to each NEO not only with compensation in our Peer Group, as discussed above, but also with compensation paid to each of our other NEOs. Such an internal comparison is important to ensure that compensation is equitable among our NEOs.

As part of the Compensation Committee's review, we made a comparison of our CEO's total compensation paid for the period ending October 31, 2016 against that paid to our other NEOs during the same year. Upon review, the Compensation Committee determined that our CEO's compensation relative to that of our other NEOs was appropriate because of his level and scope of responsibilities, expertise and performance history, and other factors deemed relevant by the Compensation Committee. The Compensation Committee also reviewed the mix of the individual elements of compensation paid to our NEOs for this period, the individual performance of each NEO and any changes in responsibilities of the NEO.

### **Stock Ownership Guidelines**

The Company maintains stock ownership guidelines, which are outlined in our corporate governance guidelines, because we believe that material stock ownership by our executives plays a role in effectively aligning the interests of these employees with those of our stockholders and strongly motivates our executives to build long-term shareholder value. Pursuant to our stock ownership guidelines, each member of senior management is required to beneficially own at least two times the individual's annual salary in Company common stock, based on market value, within three years of joining the Company. Our Board of Directors may make exceptions to this requirement based on particular circumstances; however, no exceptions have been made for our current NEOs. Messrs. Henriquez, Bluestein and Harris<sup>(1)</sup> have met their minimum guidelines.

The Compensation Committee's review of the CEO's stock ownership in the fourth quarter of 2016 showed that he owns shares worth more than 20x his annual base salary.

### **Tax and Accounting Matters**

*Stock-Based Compensation.* We account for stock-based compensation, including options and shares of restricted stock granted pursuant to our Equity Plan and 2006 Non-Employee Director Plan in accordance with the requirements of Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification ( FASB ASC ) Topic 718. Under the ASC Topic 718, we estimate the fair value of our option awards at the date of grant using the Black-Scholes-Merton option-pricing model, which requires the use of certain subjective assumptions. The most significant of these assumptions are our estimates on the expected term, volatility and forfeiture rates of the awards. Forfeitures are not estimated due to our limited history but are reversed in the period in which forfeiture occurs. As required under the accounting rules, we review our valuation assumptions at each grant date and, as a result, are likely to change our valuation assumptions used to value stock-based awards granted in future periods. We estimate the fair value of our restricted stock awards based on the grant date market closing price.

*Deductibility of Executive Compensation.* When analyzing both total compensation and individual elements of compensation paid to our NEOs, the Company considers the income tax consequences to the Company of its compensation policies and procedures. In particular, the Company considers Section 162(m) of the Code, which limits the deductibility of non-performance-based compensation paid to certain of the NEOs to \$1,000,000 per affected

NEO. The Compensation Committee intends to balance its objective of providing compensation to our

- (1) Effective November 2, 2017, the Company and Mr. Harris mutually agreed that Mr. Harris would separate from the Company and end his tenure as Chief Financial Officer and Chief Accounting Officer. The Board appointed David Lund, the Company's former Chief Financial Officer, as Interim Chief Financial Officer and Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Controller, as Interim Chief Accounting Officer.



---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

NEOs that is fair, reasonable, and competitive with the Company's ability to claim compensation expense deductions. Our Board of Directors believes that the best interests of the Company and our stockholders are served by executive compensation programs that encourage and promote our principal compensation philosophy, enhancement of shareholder value, and permit the Compensation Committee to exercise discretion in the design and implementation of compensation packages. Accordingly, we may from time to time pay compensation to our NEOs that may not be fully tax deductible, including certain bonuses and restricted stock. Stock options granted under our stock plan are intended to qualify as performance-based compensation under Section 162(m) of the Code. Such section has been amended by recent tax legislation. The Company will continue to review its executive compensation plans periodically to determine what changes, if any, should be made as a result of any deduction limitations.

**Clawback Policy for Section 16 Officers**

In 2016, the Board of Directors adopted a clawback policy for all Section 16 officers. This was an enhancement to the Company's then-existing clawback policy for the CEO and CFO pursuant to Section 304 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. With respect to the Company's clawback policy, the Company has

broadened its clawback policy to apply to all Section 16 officers; and

broadened the scope of its clawback policy beyond financial restatements.

Pursuant to our clawback policy, for payments that are predicated on financial results augmented by fraud, embezzlement, gross negligence or deliberate disregard of applicable rules resulting in significant monetary loss, damage or injury to the Company ( Excess Compensation ), the Compensation Committee has the authority to seek repayment of any Excess Compensation, including (1) cancellation of unvested, unexercised or unreleased equity incentive awards; and (2) repayment of any compensation earned on previously exercised or released equity incentive awards whether or not such activity resulted in a financial restatement.

The Compensation Committee will have sole discretion under this policy, consistent with any applicable statutory requirements, to seek reimbursement of any Excess Compensation paid or received by the Section 16 officer for up to a 12-month period prior to the date of the Compensation Committee action to require reimbursement of the Excess Compensation. Any clawback of Excess Compensation must be based upon fraud adjudicated by a court of competent jurisdiction or a financial restatement. Further, following a restatement of our financial statements, we will recover any compensation received by the CEO and CFO that is required to be recovered by Section 304 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act.

For purposes of this policy, Excess Compensation will be measured as the positive difference, if any, between the compensation earned by a Section 16 officer and the compensation that would have been earned by the Section 16 officer had the fraud, embezzlement, gross negligence or deliberate disregard of applicable rules resulting from significant monetary loss, damage or injury to the Company not occurred.

**Risk Assessment of the Compensation Programs**

Our Board of Directors believe that risks arising from our compensation policies and practices for our employees are not reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on the Company. The Company has designed our compensation

programs, including our incentive compensation plans, with specific features to address potential risks while rewarding employees for achieving long-term financial and strategic objectives through prudent business judgment and appropriate risk taking. We use common variable compensation designs, with a significant focus on individual contributions to our performance and the achievement of absolute and relative corporate objectives, as generally described in this Compensation Discussion and Analysis.

The Compensation Committee and the Board of Directors reviewed our compensation programs to assess whether any aspect of the programs would encourage any of our employees to take any unnecessary or

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

inappropriate risks that could threaten the value of the Company. The Company has designed our compensation programs to reward our employees for achieving annual profitability and long-term increase shareholder value.

Our Board of Directors recognizes that the pursuit of corporate objectives possibly leads to behaviors that could weaken the link between pay and performance, and, therefore, the correlation between the compensation delivered to employees and the long-term return realized by stockholders. Accordingly, our executive compensation program is designed to mitigate these possibilities and to ensure that our compensation practices are consistent with our risk profile. These features include the following:

bonus payouts and equity incentive awards that are not based solely on corporate performance objectives, but are also based on individual performance levels,

the financial opportunity in our long-term equity incentive program that is best realized through long-term appreciation of our stock price, which mitigates excessive short-term risk-taking,

annual cash bonuses that are paid after the end of the fiscal year to which the bonus payout relates,

the engagement and use of a compensation consultant,

the institution of stock ownership guidelines applicable to our executive officers, and

final decision making by our Compensation Committee and our Board of Directors on all awards.

Additionally, the Company performed an assessment of compensation-related risks for all of our employees. Based on this assessment, we concluded that our compensation programs do not create risks that are reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on the Company. In making this evaluation, the Company reviewed the key design elements of our compensation programs in relation to industry best practices, as well as the means by which any potential risks may be mitigated. In addition, management completed an inventory of incentive programs below the executive level and reviewed the design of these incentives and concluded that such incentive programs do not encourage excessive risk-taking.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**Executive Compensation Tables****Summary Compensation Table**

<b>Name and Principal Position</b>	<b>Year</b>	<b>Salary (\$)<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Bonus (\$)<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Stock Awards (\$)<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Option Awards (\$)<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>All Other Compensation (\$)<sup>(4)</sup></b>	<b>Total (\$)</b>
Manuel Henriquez <i>Chairman &amp; Chief Executive Officer</i>	2016	\$ 803,154	\$ 1,200,000	\$ 4,005,335		\$ 771,425	\$ 6,779,914
	2015	\$ 779,762	\$ 1,000,000	\$ 4,472,142		\$ 1,635,353	\$ 7,887,257
	2014	\$ 779,762	\$ 692,500	\$ 5,992,250		\$ 804,675	\$ 8,269,187
Mark R. Harris <sup>(5)</sup> <i>Chief Financial Officer</i>	2016	\$ 412,000	\$ 400,000	\$ 396,330		\$ 95,624	\$ 1,303,954
	2015	\$ 166,667	\$ 200,000	\$ 400,001		\$ 26,404	\$ 793,072
Scott Bluestein <i>Chief Investment Officer</i>	2016	\$ 432,600	\$ 650,000	\$ 1,249,040		\$ 200,555	\$ 2,532,195
	2015	\$ 420,000	\$ 525,000	\$ 670,212		\$ 193,370	\$ 1,808,582
	2014	\$ 420,000	\$ 233,750	\$ 967,100		\$ 144,396	\$ 1,765,246
Melanie Grace <i>General Counsel, Chief Compliance Officer and Secretary</i>	2016	\$ 283,250	\$ 145,000	\$ 112,894		\$ 40,726	\$ 581,870
	2015	\$ 79,167	\$ 50,000	\$ 112,500		\$ 36,466	\$ 278,133
Andrew Olson <sup>(6)</sup> <i>Vice President of Finance and Senior Controller</i>	2016	\$ 211,150	\$ 150,000	\$ 72,060		\$ 28,684	\$ 461,894
	2015	\$ 186,250	\$ 195,000	\$ 53,332		\$ 22,717	\$ 457,299

(1) Salary column amounts represent base salary compensation received by each named executive officer ( NEO ) for the listed fiscal year.

(2) Bonus column amounts represent the annual cash bonus earned during the fiscal year and awarded and paid out during the first quarter of the following fiscal year.

(3) The amounts reflect the aggregate grant date fair value of restricted stock and stock option awards made to our NEOs and former NEOs during the applicable year computed in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. The grant date fair value of each restricted stock award is measured based on the closing price of our common stock on the date of grant.

(4) All Other Compensation column includes the following:

We made matching contributions under our 401(k) plan of (a) \$18,000 in 2016 to Messrs. Henriquez, Bluestein, Harris and Olson and \$17,703 to Ms. Grace (b) \$18,000 in 2015 to Messrs. Henriquez, Bluestein and Olson; and (c) \$17,000 in 2014 to Messrs. Henriquez and Bluestein.

Distributions to Messrs. Henriquez, Harris, Bluestein and Olson and Ms. Grace in the amount of \$753,425, \$77,624, \$182,555, \$10,684 and \$23,023, respectively, were paid on unvested restricted stock awards during 2016.

Distributions to Messrs. Henriquez, Harris, Bluestein and Olson and Ms. Grace in the amount of \$845,550, \$22,587, \$134,985, \$4,717 and \$3,100, respectively, were paid on unvested restricted stock awards during 2015.

Distributions to Messrs. Henriquez and Bluestein in the amount of \$787,675 and \$127,396, respectively, were paid on unvested restricted stock awards during 2014.

Due to a change in the vacation policy of NEOs, Messrs. Henriquez, Harris, Bluestein and Ms. Grace were each paid out of all of their accrued vacation through August 30, 2015 in the amount of \$771,803, \$3,817, \$40,385 and \$1,007, respectively. NEOs no longer accrue vacation effective September 1, 2015.

Ms. Grace began as a contractor on August 3, 2015 until she was approved by the Board of Directors as an executive officer on September 17, 2015. During this period, Ms. Grace earned \$32,359 in compensation.

- (5) Effective November 2, 2017, the Company and Mr. Harris mutually agreed that Mr. Harris would separate from the Company and end his tenure as Chief Financial Officer and Chief Accounting Officer. The Board appointed David Lund, the Company's former Chief Financial Officer, as Interim Chief Financial Officer and Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Controller, as Interim Chief Accounting Officer.
- (6) Mr. Olson announced his resignation, effective July 21, 2017, from his position as Vice President of Finance and Senior Controller. Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Assistant Controller, assumed the position of Controller. Subsequently, the Board appointed Mr. Waldt as the Company's Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**Grants of Plan Based Awards in 2016**

NEO	Grant Date	All Other Stock Awards: Number of Shares of Stock or Units <sup>(1)</sup>	All Other Option Awards: Number of Securities Underlying Options <sup>(1)</sup>	Grant Date Fair Value of Stock and Option Awards <sup>(2)</sup>
Manuel Henriquez	01/10/2016	333,500		\$ 4,005,335
Mark Harris <sup>(3)</sup>	01/10/2016	33,000		\$ 396,330
Scott Bluestein	01/10/2016	104,000		\$ 1,249,040
Andrew Olson <sup>(4)</sup>	01/10/2016	6,000		\$ 72,060
Melanie Grace	01/10/2016	9,400		\$ 112,894

- (1) Restricted stock awards vest as to one-third of the award on the one year anniversary of the date of the grant and quarterly over the succeeding 24 months. When payable, distributions are paid on a current basis on the unvested shares.
- (2) The amounts reflect the aggregate grant date fair value of computed in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718.
- (3) Effective November 2, 2017, the Company and Mr. Harris mutually agreed that Mr. Harris would separate from the Company and end his tenure as Chief Financial Officer and Chief Accounting Officer. The Board appointed David Lund, the Company's former Chief Financial Officer, as Interim Chief Financial Officer and Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Controller, as Interim Chief Accounting Officer.
- (4) Mr. Olson announced his resignation, effective July 21, 2017, from his position as Vice President of Finance and Senior Controller. Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Assistant Controller, assumed the position of Controller. Subsequently, the Board appointed Mr. Waldt as the Company's Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

**Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year End, December 31, 2016**

Name and Principal Position	Option Awards				Stock Awards	
	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options Exercisable	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options	Option Exercise Price (\$)	Option Expiration Date	Number of Shares or Units of Stock That Have Not Vested	Market Value of Shares or Units of Stock That Have Not Vested <sup>(1)</sup>
Manuel Henriquez					12,284 <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 173,327
					132,917 <sup>(3)</sup>	\$ 1,875,459

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

					333,500 <sup>(6)</sup>	\$ 4,705,685
Mark Harris <sup>(8)</sup>					21,252 <sup>(4)</sup>	\$ 299,866
					33,000 <sup>(6)</sup>	\$ 465,630
Scott Bluestein					2,457 <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 34,668
					19,920 <sup>(3)</sup>	\$ 281,071
					104,000 <sup>(6)</sup>	\$ 1,467,440
Melanie Grace					5,834 <sup>(5)</sup>	\$ 82,318
					9,400 <sup>(6)</sup>	\$ 132,634
Andrew Olson <sup>(9)</sup>	13,332 <sup>(7)</sup>	6,668	\$ 15.12	12/03/2021	1,586 <sup>(3)</sup>	\$ 22,378
					6,000 <sup>(6)</sup>	\$ 84,660

- (1) Market value is computed by multiplying the closing market price of the Company's stock at December 31, 2016 by the number of shares.
- (2) Restricted stock granted on 3/4/13 that vests as to one-fourth of the total award on the one-year anniversary of the date of the grant and quarterly over the succeeding 36 months
- (3) Restricted stock granted on 3/10/15 that vests as to one-third of the total award on the one-year anniversary of the date of the grant and quarterly over the succeeding 24 months.
- (4) Restricted stock granted on 8/6/15 that vests as to one-third of the total award on the one-year anniversary of the date of the grant and quarterly over the succeeding 24 months

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

- (5) Restricted stock granted on 9/17/15 that vests as to one-third of the total award on the one-year anniversary of the date of the grant and quarterly over the succeeding 24 months
- (6) Restricted stock granted on 1/10/2016 that vests as to one-third of the total award on the one-year anniversary of the date of the grant and quarterly over the succeeding 24 months
- (7) Options granted on 12/03/2014 that vest as to one-third of the total underlying shares on the one-year anniversary of the date of the grant and on a monthly basis over the succeeding 24 months
- (8) Effective November 2, 2017, the Company and Mr. Harris mutually agreed that Mr. Harris would separate from the Company and end his tenure as Chief Financial Officer and Chief Accounting Officer. The Board appointed David Lund, the Company's former Chief Financial Officer, as Interim Chief Financial Officer and Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Controller, as Interim Chief Accounting Officer.
- (9) Mr. Olson announced his resignation, effective July 21, 2017, from his position as Vice President of Finance and Senior Controller. Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Assistant Controller, assumed the position of Controller. Subsequently, the Board appointed Mr. Waldt as the Company's Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

**Options Exercised and Stock Vested in 2016**

<b>Name and Principal Position</b>	<b>Option Awards</b>		<b>Stock Awards</b>	
	<b>Number of Shares Acquired on Exercise</b>	<b>Value Realized on Exercise</b>	<b>Number of Shares Acquired on Vesting</b>	<b>Value Realized on Vesting</b>
Manuel Henriquez			359,264	\$ 4,347,348
Mark Harris <sup>(1)</sup>			15,178	\$ 205,146
Scott Bluestein			57,399	\$ 692,290
Melanie Grace			4,166	\$ 55,499
Andrew Olson <sup>(2)</sup>			2,218	\$ 26,908

- (1) Effective November 2, 2017, the Company and Mr. Harris mutually agreed that Mr. Harris would separate from the Company and end his tenure as Chief Financial Officer and Chief Accounting Officer. The Board appointed David Lund, the Company's former Chief Financial Officer, as Interim Chief Financial Officer and Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Controller, as Interim Chief Accounting Officer.
- (2) Mr. Olson announced his resignation, effective July 21, 2017, from his position as Vice President of Finance and Senior Controller. Gerard R. Waldt, Jr., the Company's then Assistant Controller, assumed the position of Controller. Subsequently, the Board appointed Mr. Waldt as the Company's Interim Chief Accounting Officer.

**COMPENSATION OF DIRECTORS**

Our Compensation Committee has the authority from our Board of Directors for the appointment, compensation and oversight of our outside compensation consultant. Our Compensation Committee generally engages a compensation consultant every other year to assist it with its responsibilities related to our director compensation program.

The following table discloses the cash, equity awards and other compensation earned, paid or awarded, as the case may be, to each of our current directors during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2016. We provide further information relating to equity awards made to our non-employee directors below under *2006 Non-Employee Director Plan*.



<b>Name</b>	<b>Fees Earned or Paid in Cash (\$) <sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Stock Awards (\$) <sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Option Awards (\$) <sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>All Other Compensation (\$) <sup>(4)</sup></b>	<b>Total (\$)</b>
Robert P. Badavas	\$ 175,000			\$ 3,099	\$ 178,099
Thomas J. Fallon	\$ 150,000	\$	\$	\$ 6,199	\$ 156,199
Joseph F. Hoffman	\$ 165,000	\$ 62,350	\$ 8,499	\$ 5,683	\$ 241,532
Susanne D. Lyons	\$ 175,000	\$	\$	\$ 2,066	\$ 177,066
Allyn C. Woodward, Jr.	\$ 175,000	\$	\$	\$ 5,166	\$ 180,166
Doreen Woo Ho	\$	\$ 45,362	\$ 6,415	\$ 1,033	\$ 52,810
Manuel A. Henriquez <sup>(5)</sup>					

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

- (1) Messrs. Badavas, Fallon, Hoffman, Woodward and Ms. Lyons earned \$125,000, \$100,000, \$115,000, \$125,000 and \$125,000, respectively, and each elected to receive an additional retainer fee of 3,720 shares of our common stock in lieu of cash. The total value of the shares issued to each of Messrs. Badavas, Fallon, Hoffman and Woodward and Ms. Lyons services in fiscal 2016 was \$50,000. Ms. Woo Ho did not receive any cash compensation during 2016.
- (2) During 2016, in connection his re-election to our Board of Directors, we granted Mr. Hoffman a restricted stock award for 5,000 shares of common stock, and we granted Ms. Woo Ho a restricted stock award for 3,333 shares of common stock upon her appointment to our Board of Directors. The amounts presented reflect the aggregate grant date fair value of the stock awards, as computed in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. The grant date fair value of each restricted stock award is measured based on the closing price of our common stock on the date of grant.
- (3) During 2016, in connection with his re-election to our Board of Directors, we granted Mr. Hoffman a stock option award with respect to 15,000 shares of our common stock, and, in connection with her appointment to our Board of Directors, we granted Ms. Woo Ho a stock option award with respect to 10,000 shares of our common stock. The amounts presented reflect the aggregate grant date fair value of option awards computed in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. The fair value of each stock option grant is estimated based on the fair market value of the option on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes-Merton option pricing model. For a further discussion on the valuation model and the assumptions used to calculate the fair value of our stock options, please see Note 7 to the consolidated financial statements included in our annual report on Form 10-K for the 2016 fiscal year.
- (4) Represents distributions paid during 2016 on unvested common stock under restricted stock awards.
- (5) As an employee director, Mr. Henriquez does not receive any compensation for his service as a director. The compensation Mr. Henriquez receives as our chief executive officer is disclosed in the Summary Compensation Table and elsewhere under *EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION*.

As of December 31, 2016, Messrs. Badavas, Fallon, Hoffman and Woodward and Ms. Lyons and Ms. Woo Ho had outstanding options in the amount of 20,000, 25,000, 25,000, 25,000, 10,000 and 10,000, respectively. As of December 31, 2016, Messrs. Badavas, Fallon, Hoffman and Woodward and Ms. Lyons and Ms. Woo Ho held unvested shares of restricted stock in the amount of 1,666, 3,333, 6,666, 3,333, 1,666 and 3,333, respectively.

Upon her appointment to our Board of Directors in October 2016, Ms. Woo Ho received a restricted stock award with respect to 3,333 shares of our common stock and a stock option to purchase 10,000 shares of our common stock.

During 2016, the compensation for serving on our Board of Directors as an independent director included the following:

Annual Director Retainer Fee	\$100,000
Annual Chairperson Fee	\$25,000, Audit Committee
	\$25,000, Compensation Committee
	\$15,000, NCG Committee
Annual Lead Director Fee	\$25,000

In 2016, we granted each independent director an additional retainer of \$50,000, which was distributed as shares of common stock in lieu of cash. In addition, upon re-election to the Board of Directors, each independent director was granted an option to purchase 15,000 shares and an additional award of 5,000 shares of restricted stock. Employee

directors do not receive compensation for serving on our Board of Directors. In addition, we reimburse our directors for their reasonable out-of-pocket expenses incurred in attending Board of Directors meetings.

Under current SEC rules and regulations applicable to business development companies, a business development company may not grant options or restricted stock to non-employee directors unless it receives exemptive relief from the SEC. We filed an exemptive relief request with the SEC to allow options and restricted stock to be issued to our non-employee directors, which was approved on October 10, 2007. On June 22, 2010, we received approval from the SEC regarding our exemptive relief request permitting its employees to exercise their stock options and restricted stock and pay any related income taxes using a cashless exercise program.

On June 21, 2007, our stockholders approved amendments to the Equity Plan and the 2006 Non-Employee Director Plan allowing for the grant of restricted stock. The Equity Plan limits the combined maximum amount

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

of restricted stock that may be issued under the Equity Plan to 10% of the outstanding shares of our common stock on the effective date of the Equity Plan plus 10% of the number of shares of common stock issued or delivered by us during the terms of the Equity Plan. Our 2006 Non-Employee Director Plan terminated in accordance with its terms on June 21, 2017 and no additional awards may be made under our 2006 Non-Employee Director Plan.

**EQUITY COMPENSATION PLAN INFORMATION**

The following table sets forth information as of December 31, 2017, with respect to compensation plans under which the Company's equity securities are authorized for issuance:

<b>Plan Category</b>	<b>(a) Number of Securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, restricted stock and warrants</b>	<b>(b) Weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options, restricted stock and warrants</b>	<b>(c) Number of securities remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a))</b>
Equity compensation plans approved by stockholders:			
2004 Equity Incentive Plan	475,525	\$ 13.70	3,303,919
2006 Non-Employee Director Plan <sup>(1)</sup>	115,000	\$ 13.18	
Equity compensation plans not approved by stockholders:			
<b>Total</b>	<b>590,525</b>	<b>\$ 13.44</b>	<b>3,303,919</b>

(1) Our 2006 Non-Employee Director Plan terminated on June 21, 2017 and no additional awards may be made under our 2006 Non-Employee Director Plan.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**CONTROL PERSONS AND PRINCIPAL STOCKHOLDERS**

The following table sets forth, as of April 6, 2018, the beneficial ownership of each current director, each nominee for director, our NEOs, each person known to us to beneficially own 5% or more of the outstanding shares of our common stock, and our executive officers and directors as a group.

Beneficial ownership is determined in accordance with the rules of the SEC. Common stock subject to options or warrants that are currently exercisable or exercisable within 60 days of April 6, 2018 are deemed to be outstanding and beneficially owned by the person holding such options or warrants. Such shares, however, are not deemed outstanding for the purposes of computing the percentage ownership of any other person. Percentage of ownership is based on 85,446,992 shares of common stock outstanding as of April 6, 2018.

Unless otherwise indicated, to our knowledge, each stockholder listed below has sole voting and investment power with respect to the shares beneficially owned by the stockholder, except to the extent authority is shared by their spouses under applicable law. Unless otherwise indicated, the address of all executive officers and directors is c/o Hercules Capital, Inc., 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301.

Our directors are divided into two groups – interested directors and independent directors. Interested directors are interested persons – as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the 1940 Act, and independent directors are all other directors.

<b>Name and Address of Beneficial Owner</b>	<b>Type of Ownership</b>	<b>Number of Shares Owned Beneficially<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Percentage of Class</b>
<b><i>Interested Director</i></b>			
Manuel A. Henriquez <sup>(2)</sup>	Record/Beneficial	2,206,077	2.6%
<b><i>Independent Directors</i></b>			
Robert B. Badavas <sup>(3)</sup>	Beneficial	149,743	*
Jorge Titinger			
Allyn C. Woodward, Jr. <sup>(4)</sup>	Record/Beneficial	280,824	*
Brad Koenig			
Thomas J. Fallon <sup>(5)</sup>	Record/Beneficial	51,916	*
Joseph F. Hoffman <sup>(6)</sup>	Record/Beneficial	35,478	*
Doreen Woo Ho <sup>(7)</sup>	Record/Beneficial	12,236	*
<b><i>Other Named Executive Officers</i></b>			
David Lund			
Scott Bluestein <sup>(8)</sup>	Record/Beneficial	470,622	*
Melanie Grace <sup>(9)</sup>	Record/Beneficial	35,166	*
Gerard R. Waldt, Jr. <sup>(10)</sup>	Record/Beneficial	2,499	*
<b><i>Executive officers and directors as a group (12 persons)<sup>(12)</sup></i></b>			<b>3.8%</b>

(1) Beneficial ownership has been determined in accordance with Rule 13d-3 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the Exchange Act).

(2)

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Includes 341,298 shares of restricted stock and 142,655 shares of vested deferred restricted stock units and dividend equivalent units. 1,655,552 shares of common stock held by the Henriquez Family Trust of which 862,784 shares are pledged as a security; 54,348 shares of common stock held in trusts for the benefit of Mr. Henriquez's children; and 12,224 shares of common stock held in the Manuel Henriquez-Roth IRA. Mr. Henriquez disclaims any beneficial ownership interest of such shares except to the extent of his pecuniary interest therein.

- (3) Includes 20,000 shares of common stock that can be acquired upon the exercise of outstanding options. All shares are held of record by the Robert P. Badavas Trust of 2007, and Mr. Badavas disclaims any beneficial ownership interest of such shares except to the extent of his pecuniary interest therein.
- (4) Includes 20,000 shares of common stock that can be acquired upon the exercise of outstanding options, 1,666 shares of restricted common stock, and 35,000 shares of common stock held by Mr. Woodward's spouse in her name. Mr. Woodward disclaims any beneficial ownership interest of such shares held by his spouse except to the extent of his pecuniary interest therein.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

- (5) Includes 20,000 shares of common stock that can be acquired upon the exercise of outstanding options and 1,666 shares of restricted common stock. All shares are held of record by the Fallon Family Revocable Trust, and Mr. Fallon disclaims any beneficial ownership interest of such shares except to the extent of his pecuniary interest therein.
- (6) Includes 15,000 shares of common stock that can be acquired upon the exercise of outstanding options and 3,333 shares of restricted common stock. All shares are held of record by the Hoffman Trust, and Mr. Hoffman disclaims any beneficial ownership interest of such shares except to the extent of his pecuniary interest therein.
- (7) Includes 5,000 shares of common stock that can be acquired upon the exercise of outstanding options and includes 1,666 shares of restricted common stock.
- (8) Includes 126,694 shares of restricted common stock and 49,923 shares of vested deferred restricted stock.
- (9) Includes 17,646 shares of restricted common stock and 8,552 shares of vested deferred restricted stock.
- (10) Includes 2,499 shares of common stock that can be acquired upon the exercise of outstanding options.

\* Less than 1%.

The following table sets forth as of April 6, 2018, the dollar range of our securities owned by our directors and executive officers.

Name	Dollar Range of Equity Securities Beneficially Owned
<b><i>Interested Director</i></b>	
Manuel A. Henriquez	Over \$100,000
<b><i>Independent Directors</i></b>	
Robert B. Badavas	Over \$100,000
Jorge Titinger	
Allyn C. Woodward, Jr.	Over \$100,000
Brad Koenig	
Thomas J. Fallon	Over \$100,000
Joseph F. Hoffman	Over \$100,000
Doreen Woo Ho	Over \$100,000
<b><i>Other Named Executive Officers</i></b>	
David Lund	
Scott Bluestein	Over \$100,000
Melanie Grace	Over \$100,000
Gerard R. Waldt, Jr	\$0 \$50,000

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS**

We have established a written policy to govern the review, approval and monitoring of transactions involving the Company and certain persons related to Hercules. As a business development company, the 1940 Act restricts us from participating in transactions with any persons affiliated with Hercules, including our officers, directors, and employees and any person controlling or under common control with us.

In order to ensure that we do not engage in any prohibited transactions with any persons affiliated with Hercules, our officers screen each of our transactions for any possible affiliations, close or remote, between the proposed portfolio investment, Hercules, companies controlled by us and our employees and directors.

We will not enter into any agreements unless and until we are satisfied that no affiliations prohibited by the 1940 Act exist or, if such affiliations exist, we have taken appropriate actions to seek Board of Directors review and approval or exemptive relief from the SEC for such transaction.



---

Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**CERTAIN UNITED STATES FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS**

The following discussion is a general summary of certain material U.S. federal income tax considerations relating to our qualification and taxation as a RIC and the acquisition, ownership and disposition of our preferred stock or common stock, but does not purport to be a complete description of the income tax considerations relating thereto. Except as otherwise noted, this discussion assumes you are a taxable U.S. person (as defined for U.S. federal income tax purposes) and that you hold your shares of our stock as capital assets for U.S. federal income tax purposes (generally, assets held for investment). This discussion is based upon current provisions of the Code, the regulations promulgated thereunder and judicial and administrative authorities, all of which are subject to change or differing interpretations by the courts or the IRS, possibly with retroactive effect. No attempt is made to present a detailed explanation of all U.S. federal income tax concerns affecting the Company and its shareholders (including shareholders subject to special rules under U.S. federal income tax law).

**The discussions set forth herein do not constitute tax advice. We have not sought and will not seek any ruling from the IRS regarding any matters discussed herein. No assurance can be given that the IRS would not assert, or that a court would not sustain, a position contrary to those set forth below. This summary does not discuss any aspects of foreign, state or local tax. Prospective investors must consult their own tax advisers as to the U.S. federal income tax consequences (including the alternative minimum tax consequences) of acquiring, holding and disposing of shares of our stock, as well as the effects of state, local and non-U.S. tax laws.**

**Election to be Subject to Tax as a RIC**

Through December 31, 2005, we were subject to U.S. federal income tax as an ordinary corporation under Subchapter C of the Code. Effective beginning on January 1, 2006 we met the criteria specified below to qualify as a RIC, and elected to be treated as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code with the filing of our U.S. federal income tax return for 2006. To qualify as a RIC we must, among other things, meet certain source of income and asset diversification requirements (as described below). In addition, we must distribute to our stockholders, in respect of each taxable year, dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes of an amount generally at least equal to 90% of our investment company taxable income, which is generally equal to the sum of our net ordinary income plus the excess of our realized net short-term capital gains over our realized net long-term capital losses, determined without regard to any deduction for distributions paid, or the Annual Distribution Requirement. Upon satisfying these requirements in respect of a taxable year, we generally will not be subject to corporate taxes on any income we distribute to our stockholders as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes, which will allow us to reduce or eliminate our liability for corporate-level income tax.

On December 31, 2005, immediately before the effective date of our RIC election, we held assets with built-in gains, which are assets whose fair market value as of the effective date of the election exceeded their tax basis as of such date. We elected to recognize all of our net built-in gains on such assets at the time of the conversion and paid tax on the built-in gain with the filing of our 2005 U.S. federal income tax return. In making this election, we marked our portfolio investments and other assets to market at the time of our RIC election and paid approximately \$294,000 in income tax on the resulting gains.

**Taxation as a Regulated Investment Company**

For any taxable year in which we:

qualify as a RIC; and

distribute dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to our shareholders of an amount at least equal to the Annual Distribution Requirement;

We generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the portion of our investment company taxable income and net capital gain (i.e., net realized long-term capital gains in excess of net realized short-term

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

capital losses) we distribute (or are deemed to distribute) as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to stockholders with respect to that taxable year.

As described above, we made the election to recognize built-in gains as of the effective date of our election to be treated as a RIC and therefore were not subject to built-in gains tax when we sold those assets. However, if we subsequently acquire built-in gain assets from a C corporation in a carryover basis transaction, then we may be subject to tax on the gains recognized by us on dispositions of such assets unless we make a special election to pay corporate-level tax on such built-in gain at the time the assets are acquired. We will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at the regular corporate rates on any income or capital gains not distributed (or deemed distributed) as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to our stockholders.

In order to qualify as a RIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes and obtain the tax benefits of RIC status, in addition to satisfying the Annual Distribution Requirement, we must, among other things:

have in effect at all times during each taxable year an election to be regulated as a business development company under the 1940 Act;

derive in each taxable year at least 90% of our gross income from (a) dividends, interest, payments with respect to certain securities loans, gains from the sale of stock or other securities, or other income derived with respect to our business of investing in such stock or securities and (b) net income derived from an interest in a qualified publicly traded partnership (the 90% Income Test );

diversify our holdings so that at the end of each quarter of the taxable year:

at the close of each quarter of each taxable year, at least 50% of the value of our assets consists of cash, cash equivalents, U.S. government securities, securities of other RICs, and other securities if such other securities of any one issuer do not represent more than 5% of the value of our assets or more than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of such issuer; and

at the close of each quarter of each taxable year, no more than 25% of the value of our assets is invested in (i) securities (other than U.S. government securities or securities of other RICs) of one issuer, (ii) securities of two or more issuers that are controlled, as determined under applicable tax rules, by us and that are engaged in the same or similar or related trades or businesses or (iii) securities of one or more qualified publicly traded partnerships (the Diversification Tests ).

We may invest in partnerships which may result in our being subject to state, local or foreign income, franchise or other tax liabilities. In addition, some of the income and fees that we may recognize will not satisfy the 90% Income Test. In order to mitigate the risk that such income and fees would disqualify us as a RIC as a result of a failure to satisfy the 90% Income Test, we may be required to recognize such income and fees indirectly through one or more entities classified as corporations for U.S. federal income tax purposes. Such corporations generally will be subject to corporate income taxes on their earnings, which ultimately will reduce our return on such income and fees.

As a RIC, we will be subject to a 4% nondeductible U.S. federal excise tax on certain undistributed income and gains unless we make distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes in a timely manner to our stockholders in respect of each calendar year of an amount at least equal to the sum of (1) 98% of our ordinary income for each calendar year (subject to certain deferrals and elections), (2) 98.2% of our capital gain net income (adjusted for certain ordinary losses) for the 1-year period ending October 31 in that calendar year and (3) any income realized, but not distributed, in the preceding years (the Excise Tax Avoidance Requirement ). We are not subject to this excise tax on any amount on which we incurred U.S. federal corporate income tax (such as the tax imposed on a RIC's retained net capital gains).

Depending on the level of taxable income earned in a taxable year, we may choose to carry over taxable income in excess of current taxable year distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes

---

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

from such taxable income into the next taxable year and incur a 4% excise tax on such taxable income, as required. The maximum amount of excess taxable income that may be carried over for distribution in the next taxable year under the Code is the total amount of distributions treated as dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes paid in the following taxable year, subject to certain declaration and payment guidelines. To the extent we choose to carry over taxable income into the next taxable year, distributions declared and paid by us in a taxable year may differ from our taxable income for that taxable year as such distributions may include the distribution of current taxable year taxable income, the distribution of prior taxable year taxable income carried over into and distributed in the current taxable year, or returns of capital.

Under applicable Treasury regulations and other administrative guidance issued by the IRS, we are permitted to treat certain distributions payable in our stock as taxable distributions that will satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement as well as the Excise Tax Avoidance Requirement provided that shareholders have the opportunity to elect to receive the distribution in cash. Taxable stockholders receiving such distributions will be required to include the full amount of such distributions as ordinary income (or as long-term capital gain to the extent such distribution is properly designated as a capital gain dividend) to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits for U.S. federal income tax purposes. As a result, a U.S. stockholder may be subject to tax with respect to such distributions in excess of any cash received. If a U.S. stockholder sells the stock it receives as a distribution in order to pay this tax, the sales proceeds may be less than the amount included in income with respect to the distribution, depending on the market price of our stock at the time of the sale. Furthermore, with respect to non-U.S. stockholders, we may be required to withhold U.S. tax with respect to such distributions, including in respect of all or a portion of such distribution that is payable in stock. In addition, if a significant number of our stockholders determine to sell shares of our stock in order to pay taxes owed on distributions, then such sales may put downward pressure on the trading price of our stock. We may in the future determine to make taxable distributions that are payable in part in our common stock.

We may be required to recognize taxable income in circumstances in which we do not receive a corresponding payment in cash. For example, if we hold debt obligations that are treated under applicable tax rules as having OID (such as debt instruments with PIK interest provisions or, in certain cases, increasing interest rates or debt instruments that were issued with warrants), we must include in income each taxable year a portion of the OID that accrues over the life of the obligation, regardless of whether cash representing such income is received by us in the same taxable year. Because any OID accrued is generally required to be included in our investment company taxable income for the taxable year of accrual, we may be required to make a distribution to our stockholders in order to satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement and the Excise Tax Avoidance Requirement, even though we will not have received any corresponding cash amount.

Gain or loss realized by us from the sale or exchange of warrants acquired by us as well as any loss attributable to the lapse of such warrants generally will be treated as capital gain or loss. Such gain or loss generally will be long-term or short-term, depending on how long we held a particular warrant.

We are authorized to borrow funds and to sell assets in order to satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement and the Excise Tax Avoidance Requirement (collectively, the Distribution Requirements). However, under the 1940 Act, we are not permitted to make distributions to our stockholders while our debt obligations and other senior securities are outstanding unless certain asset coverage tests are met. See Regulation Senior Securities; Coverage Ratio. We may be restricted from making distributions under the terms of our debt obligations themselves unless certain conditions are satisfied. Moreover, our ability to dispose of assets to meet the Distribution Requirements may be limited by (1) the illiquid nature of our portfolio, or (2) other requirements relating to our status as a RIC, including the Diversification

Tests. If we dispose of assets in order to meet the Distribution Requirements, we may make such dispositions at times that, from an investment standpoint, are not advantageous. If we are prohibited from making distributions or are unable to obtain cash from other sources to make the distributions, we may fail to be subject to tax as a RIC, which would result in us becoming subject to corporate-level income taxes.

---

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

In addition, we will be partially dependent on our SBIC subsidiaries for cash distributions to enable us to meet the RIC Distribution Requirements. Our SBIC subsidiaries may be limited by the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, as amended, and SBA regulations governing SBICs, from making certain distributions to us that may be necessary to maintain our status as a RIC. We may have to request a waiver of the SBA's restrictions for our SBIC subsidiaries to make certain distributions to maintain our RIC status. We cannot assure you that the SBA will grant such waiver. If our SBIC subsidiaries are unable to obtain a waiver, compliance with the SBA regulations may cause us to fail to be subject to tax as a RIC, which would result in us becoming subject to corporate-level income taxes.

Certain of our investment practices are subject to special and complex U.S. federal income tax provisions that may, among other things, (i) convert distributions that would otherwise constitute qualified dividend income into ordinary income, (ii) treat distributions that would otherwise be eligible for deductions available to certain U.S. corporations under the Code as ineligible for such treatment, (iii) disallow, suspend or otherwise limit the allowance of certain losses or deductions, (iv) convert long-term capital gains into short-term capital gains or ordinary income, (v) convert short-term capital losses into long-term capital losses, (vi) convert an ordinary loss or deduction into a capital loss (the deductibility of which is more limited), (vii) cause us to recognize income or gain without a corresponding receipt of cash, (viii) adversely alter the characterization of certain complex financial transactions, and (ix) produce gross income that will not constitute qualifying gross income for purposes of the 90% Income Test. These rules also could affect the amount, timing and character of distributions to stockholders.

Under recent tax legislation, we and the companies in which we invest will be generally subject to certain leverage limitations regarding the deductibility of interest expense. The recent tax legislation may, pending further regulatory guidance, require us to accrue market discount currently and to otherwise recognize income for tax purposes no later than we recognize it for financial reporting purposes. The recent tax legislation would require us to recognize accumulated undistributed earnings of foreign corporations if any in which we were invested in 2017 if our ownership levels exceeded certain thresholds. The effects of these and other provisions of the tax legislation on us remains uncertain at this time pending regulatory guidance.

A RIC is limited in its ability to deduct expenses in excess of its investment company taxable income. If our otherwise deductible expenses in a given taxable year exceed our ordinary taxable gross income (e.g., as the result of large amounts of equity-based compensation), we would incur a net operating loss for that taxable year. However, a RIC is not permitted to carry back or carry forward net operating losses, respectively, to prior and subsequent taxable years, and such net operating losses do not pass through to the RIC's stockholders. In addition, deductible expenses can be used only to offset investment company taxable income, not net capital gain. A RIC may not use any net capital losses (that is, realized capital losses in excess of realized capital gains) to offset the RIC's investment company taxable income, but may carry forward such net capital losses, and generally use them to offset capital gains indefinitely. Due to these limits on the deductibility of expenses and net capital losses, we may for tax purposes have aggregate taxable income for several taxable years that we are required to distribute and that is taxable to our stockholders even if such taxable income is greater than the aggregate net income we actually earned during those taxable years. Such required distributions may be made from our cash assets or by liquidation of investments, if necessary. We may realize gains or losses from such liquidations. In the event we realize net capital gains from such transactions, you may receive a larger capital gain distribution than you would have received in the absence of such transactions.

Investment income received from sources within foreign countries, or capital gains earned by investing in securities of foreign issuers, may be subject to foreign income taxes withheld at the source. In this regard, withholding tax rates in countries with which the United States does not have a tax treaty are often as high as 35% or more. The United States has entered into tax treaties with many foreign countries that may entitle us to a reduced rate of tax or exemption from

tax on this related income and gains. The effective rate of foreign tax cannot be determined at this time since the amount of our assets to be invested within various countries is not now known. We do not anticipate being eligible for the special election that allows a RIC to treat foreign income taxes paid by such RIC as having been paid by its shareholders.



---

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

If we acquire the equity securities of certain foreign corporations that earn at least 75% of their annual gross income from passive sources (such as interest, dividends, rents, royalties or capital gain) or hold at least 50% of their total assets in investments producing such passive income ( passive foreign investment companies or PFICs ), we could be subject to U.S. federal income tax and additional interest charges on excess distributions received from such companies or gain from the sale of stock in such companies, even if all income or gain actually received by us is timely distributed to our shareholders. We would not be able to pass through to our shareholders any credit or deduction for such a tax. Certain elections may, if available, ameliorate these adverse tax consequences, but any such election could require us to recognize taxable income or gain without the concurrent receipt of cash. Furthermore, under recently proposed Treasury Regulations, certain income derived by us from PFICs with respect to which we have made certain U.S. tax elections would generally constitute qualifying income for purposes of the 90% Income Test only to the extent such PFICs make distributions of that income to us. As such, we intend to limit and/or manage our holdings in passive foreign investment companies to minimize our liability for any such taxes and related interest charges.

If we hold greater than 10% of the interests treated as equity for U.S. federal income tax purposes in a foreign corporation that is treated as a controlled foreign corporation ( CFC ), we may be treated as receiving a deemed distribution (taxable as ordinary income) each taxable year from such foreign corporation in an amount equal to our pro rata share of the corporation's income for such taxable year (including both ordinary earnings and capital gains), whether or not the corporation makes an actual distribution during such taxable year. We would be required to include the amount of a deemed distribution from a CFC when computing our investment company taxable income as well as in determining whether we satisfy the distribution requirements applicable to RICs, even to the extent the amount of our income deemed recognized from the CFC exceeds the amount of any actual distributions from the CFC and our proceeds from any sales or other dispositions of CFC stock during a taxable year. In general, a foreign corporation will be considered a CFC if greater than 50% of the shares of the corporation, measured by reference to combined voting power or value, is owned (directly, indirectly or by attribution) by U.S. Shareholders. A U.S. Shareholder, for this purpose, is any U.S. person that possesses (actually or constructively) 10% or more of the combined voting power of all classes of shares of a foreign corporation. Furthermore, under recently proposed Treasury Regulations, certain income derived by us from a CFC would generally constitute qualifying income for purposes of determining our ability to be subject to tax as a RIC only to the extent the CFC makes distributions of that income to us. As such, we may limit and/or manage our holdings in issuers that could be treated as CFCs in order to limit our tax liability or maximize our after-tax return from these investments.

Our functional currency, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, is the U.S. dollar. Under the Code, foreign exchange gains and losses realized by us in connection with certain transactions involving foreign currencies, or payables or receivables denominated in a foreign currency, as well as certain non-U.S. dollar denominated debt securities, certain foreign currency futures contracts, foreign currency option contracts, foreign currency forward contracts, and similar financial instruments are subject to Code provisions that generally treat such gains and losses as ordinary income and losses and may affect the amount, timing and character of distributions to our stockholders. Any such transactions that are not directly related to our investment in securities (possibly including speculative currency positions or currency derivatives not used for hedging purposes) also could, under future Treasury regulations, produce income not among the types of qualifying income from which a RIC must derive at least 90% of its annual gross income.

**Taxation of U.S. Stockholders**

A U.S. stockholder generally is a beneficial owner of shares of our common stock who is for U.S. federal income tax purposes:

a citizen or individual resident of the United States including an alien individual who is a lawful permanent resident of the United States or meets the substantial presence test under Section 7701(b) of the Code;

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

a corporation or other entity taxable as a corporation, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, created or organized in or under the laws of the United States or any political subdivision thereof;

a trust if (1) a court in the United States has primary supervision over its administration and one or more U.S. persons has the authority to control all substantial decisions of such trust or (2) if such trust validly elects to be treated as a U.S. person for U.S. federal income tax purposes; or

an estate, the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source.

For U.S. federal income tax purposes, distributions by us generally are taxable to U.S. stockholders as ordinary income or capital gains. Distributions of our investment company taxable income (which is, generally, our ordinary income plus net realized short-term capital gains in excess of net realized long-term capital losses) will be taxable as ordinary income to U.S. stockholders to the extent of our current or accumulated earnings and profits, whether paid in cash or reinvested in additional common stock. To the extent such distributions are attributable to dividends from certain U.S. corporations and certain qualified foreign corporations, such distributions may be reported by us as qualified dividend income eligible to be taxed in the hands of U.S. non-corporate stockholders (including individuals) at the rates applicable to long-term capital gains, provided certain holding period and other requirements are met at both the stockholder and corporate levels. In this regard, it is anticipated that distributions paid by us generally will not be attributable to dividends and, therefore, generally will not be qualified dividend income. Distributions of our net capital gains (which is generally our realized net long-term capital gains in excess of realized net short-term capital losses) properly reported by us as capital gain dividends will be taxable to a U.S. stockholder as long-term capital gains (currently at a maximum rate of 20%, in the case of individuals, trusts or estates), regardless of the U.S. stockholder's holding period for his, her or its common stock and regardless of whether paid in cash or reinvested in additional common stock. Provided that certain holding period and other requirements are met, ordinary income dividends (if properly reported by us) may qualify (i) for the dividends received deduction available to certain corporations, but only to the extent that our income consists of certain qualifying dividend income from U.S. corporations and (ii) in the case of U.S. noncorporate stockholders, as qualified dividend income eligible to be taxed at long-term capital gain rates to the extent that we earn qualified dividend income (generally, dividend income from taxable U.S. resident corporations and certain qualified foreign corporations). There can be no assurance as to what portion of our distributions will be eligible for the corporate dividends received deduction or for the reduced rates applicable to qualified dividend income. Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits first will reduce a U.S. stockholder's adjusted tax basis in such stockholder's common stock and, after the adjusted basis is reduced to zero, will constitute capital gains to such U.S. stockholder.

We currently intend to retain some or all of our realized net long-term capital gains in excess of realized net short-term capital losses. In that case, among other consequences, we will pay tax on the retained amount, each U.S. stockholder will be required to include his, her or its share of the deemed distribution in income as if it had been actually distributed to the U.S. stockholder, and the U.S. stockholder will be entitled to claim a tax credit equal to his, her or its allocable share of the tax paid thereon by us. Since we expect to pay tax on any retained net capital gains at our regular corporate tax rate, and since that rate is in excess of the maximum rate currently payable by non-corporate stockholders on long-term capital gains, the amount of tax that non-corporate stockholders will be treated as having paid and for which they will receive a credit will exceed the tax they owe on the retained net capital gain. Such excess generally may be claimed as a credit against the U.S. stockholder's other U.S. federal income tax obligations or may be refunded to the extent it exceeds a stockholder's liability for U.S. federal income tax. A stockholder that is not subject to U.S. federal income tax or otherwise required to file a U.S. federal income tax return would be required to file a

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

U.S. federal income tax return on the appropriate form in order to claim a refund for the taxes we paid. For U.S. federal income tax purposes, the tax basis of shares owned by a U.S. stockholder will be increased by an amount equal under current law to the difference between the amount of undistributed capital gains included in the U.S. stockholder's gross income and the tax deemed paid by the U.S. stockholder as described in this paragraph. In order to utilize the deemed distribution approach, we must provide written notice to our stockholders prior to the expiration of 60 days after the close of

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

the relevant taxable year. We cannot treat any of our investment company taxable income as a deemed distribution.

Under applicable Treasury regulations and certain administrative guidance issued by the IRS, RICs are permitted to treat certain distributions payable in part in shares of their stock, as taxable dividends that will satisfy their Distribution Requirements provided that shareholders have the opportunity to elect to receive the distribution in cash. Taxable stockholders receiving such dividends will be required to include the full amount of the dividend as ordinary income (or as long-term capital gain to the extent such distribution is properly designated as a capital gain dividend) to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits for U.S. federal income tax purposes. As a result, a U.S. stockholder may be required to pay tax with respect to such dividends in excess of any cash received. If a U.S. stockholder sells the stock it receives as a dividend in order to pay this tax, the sales proceeds may be less than the amount included in income with respect to the dividend, depending on the market price of our stock at the time of the sale. Furthermore, with respect to non-U.S. stockholders, we may be required to withhold U.S. tax with respect to such dividends, including in respect of all or a portion of such dividend that is payable in stock. In addition, if a significant number of our stockholders determine to sell shares of our stock in order to pay taxes owed on dividends, then such sales may put downward pressure on the trading price of our stock. We previously determined to pay a portion of our first quarter 2009 dividend in shares of newly issued common stock, and we may in the future determine to distribute taxable dividends that are payable in part in our common stock.

For purposes of determining (1) whether the Annual Distribution Requirement is satisfied for any taxable year and (2) the amount of the deduction for ordinary income and capital gain dividends paid for that taxable year, we may, under certain circumstances, elect to treat a dividend that is paid during the following taxable year as if it had been paid during the taxable year in question. If we make such an election, the U.S. stockholder will still be treated as receiving the dividend in the taxable year in which the distribution is made. However, any dividend declared by us in October, November or December of any calendar year, payable to stockholders of record on a specified date in such a month and actually paid during January of the following calendar year, will be treated as if it had been received by our U.S. stockholders on December 31 of the calendar year in which the dividend was declared.

If an investor acquires shares of our or common stock shortly before the record date of a distribution, the price of the shares will include the value of the distribution and the investor will be subject to tax on the distribution even though economically it may represent a return of his, her or its investment.

A U.S. stockholder generally will recognize taxable gain or loss if the U.S. stockholder sells or otherwise disposes of his, her or its shares of our common stock. Any gain arising from such sale or disposition generally will be treated as long-term capital gain or loss if the U.S. stockholder has held his, her or its shares for more than one year. Otherwise, it will be classified as short-term capital gain or loss. However, any capital loss arising from the sale or disposition of shares of our common stock held for six months or less will be treated as long-term capital loss to the extent of the amount of capital gain dividends received, or undistributed capital gain deemed received, with respect to such shares. In addition, all or a portion of any loss recognized upon a disposition of shares of our common stock may be disallowed if other shares of our common stock are purchased (whether through reinvestment of distributions or otherwise) within 30 days before or after the disposition. In such a case, the basis of the newly purchased shares will be adjusted to reflect the disallowed loss. Reporting of adjusted cost basis information is required for covered securities, which generally include shares of a RIC acquired after January 1, 2012, to the IRS and to taxpayers. Stockholders should contact their intermediaries with respect to reporting of cost basis and available elections for their accounts.

If a Stockholder recognizes losses with respect to Shares of \$2 million or more for an individual Stockholder or \$10 million or more for a corporate Stockholder, the Treasury Regulations require the Stockholder to file a disclosure statement with the IRS on IRS Form 8886. Direct Stockholders of portfolio securities are in many cases excepted from this reporting requirement, but under current guidance, stockholders

---

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

of a RIC are not excepted. Future guidance may extend the current exception from this reporting requirement to stockholders of most or all RICs. The fact that a loss is reportable under these Treasury Regulations does not affect the legal determination of whether the taxpayer's treatment of the loss is proper. Stockholders should consult their tax advisors to determine the applicability of these regulations in light of their individual circumstances.

In general, individual U.S. stockholders currently are subject to a reduced maximum U.S. federal income tax rate of 20% on their net capital gain (i.e., the excess of realized net long-term capital gain over realized net short-term capital loss for a taxable year) including any long-term capital gain derived from an investment in our shares. Such rate is lower than the maximum rate on ordinary income currently payable by individuals. In addition, individuals with income in excess of certain threshold amounts and certain estates and trusts are subject to an additional 3.8% tax on their net investment income, which generally includes net income from interest, dividends, annuities, royalties, and rents, and net capital gains (other than certain amounts earned from trades or businesses). Corporate U.S. stockholders currently are subject to U.S. federal income tax on net capital gain at the maximum 35% rate also applied to ordinary income. Non-corporate U.S. stockholders with net capital losses for a taxable year (i.e., capital losses in excess of capital gains) generally may deduct up to \$3,000 of such losses against their ordinary income each taxable year; any net capital losses of a non-corporate stockholder in excess of \$3,000 generally may be carried forward and used in subsequent taxable years as provided in the Code. Corporate U.S. stockholders generally may not deduct any net capital losses for a taxable year, but may carry back such losses for three taxable years or carry forward such losses for five taxable years.

We or the applicable withholding agent will send to each of our U.S. stockholders, as promptly as possible after the end of each calendar year, a notice reporting the amounts includible in such U.S. stockholder's taxable income for such calendar year as ordinary income and as long-term capital gain. In addition, the U.S. federal tax status of each calendar year's distributions generally will be reported to the IRS (including the amount of dividends, if any, eligible for the 20% qualified dividend income rate). Distributions may also be subject to additional state, local, and foreign taxes depending on a U.S. stockholder's particular situation. Dividends distributed by us generally will not be eligible for the corporate dividends-received deduction or the preferential rate applicable to qualified dividend income. The Code requires reporting of adjusted cost basis information for covered securities, which generally include shares of our stock, acquired after January 1, 2012, to the IRS and to taxpayers. U.S. stockholders should contact their financial intermediaries with respect to reporting of cost basis and available elections for their accounts.

We or the applicable withholding agent may be required to withhold U.S. federal income tax ( backup withholding ) from all distributions to any non-corporate U.S. stockholder (1) who fails to furnish us with a correct taxpayer identification number or a certificate that such stockholder is exempt from backup withholding, or (2) with respect to whom the IRS notifies us or the applicable withholding agent that such stockholder has failed to properly report certain interest and dividend income to the IRS and to respond to notices to that effect. An individual's taxpayer identification number is his or her social security number. Any amount withheld under backup withholding is allowed as a credit against the U.S. stockholder's U.S. federal income tax liability, provided that proper information is timely provided to the IRS.

***Dividend Reinvestment Plan*** We have adopted a dividend reinvestment plan through which all distributions are paid to our common stockholders in the form of additional shares of our common stock, unless a stockholder elects to receive cash in accordance with the terms of the plan. See *Dividend Reinvestment Plan*. Any distributions made to a U.S. stockholder that are reinvested under the plan will nevertheless remain generally taxable to the U.S. stockholder. The U.S. stockholder will have an adjusted tax basis in the additional shares of our common stock purchased through the plan equal to the amount of the reinvested distribution. The additional shares will have a new holding period

commencing on the day following the day on which the shares are credited to the U.S. stockholder's account.



---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Taxation of Non-U.S. Stockholders**

A Non-U.S. stockholder is a beneficial owner of shares of our common stock that is not a U.S. stockholder or a partnership (including an entity treated as a partnership) for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

Whether an investment in our shares is appropriate for a Non-U.S. stockholder will depend upon that person's particular circumstances. An investment in the shares by a Non-U.S. stockholder may have adverse tax consequences. Non-U.S. stockholders should consult their tax advisors before investing in our common stock.

Distributions (other than certain distributions derived from net long-term capital gains) paid by us to a Non-U.S. stockholder are generally subject to U.S. federal withholding tax at a rate of 30% (or lower applicable treaty rate) even if they are funded by income or gains (such as portfolio interest, short-term capital gains, or foreign-source dividend and interest income) that, if paid to a Non-U.S. stockholder directly, would not be subject to withholding. If the distributions are effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business of the Non-U.S. stockholder (and, if an income tax treaty applies, attributable to a permanent establishment maintained by the Non-U.S. stockholder in the United States), we will not be required to withhold tax if the Non-U.S. stockholder complies with applicable certification and disclosure requirements, although the distributions will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at the rates applicable to U.S. stockholders. (Special certification requirements apply to a Non-U.S. stockholder that is a foreign partnership or a foreign trust, and such entities are urged to consult their own tax advisors.)

However, no withholding is required with respect to certain distributions if (i) the distributions are properly reported to our stockholders as interest-related dividends or short-term capital gain dividends in written statements to our stockholders, (ii) the distributions are derived from sources specified in the Code for such dividends and (iii) certain other requirements are satisfied. Currently, we do not anticipate that any significant amount of our distributions would be reported as eligible for this exemption from withholding. In the case of shares of our stock held through an intermediary, the intermediary may withhold even if we report all or a portion of any of our distributions as interest-related dividends or short-term capital gain dividends. Non-U.S. stockholders should contact their intermediaries with respect to the application of these rules to their accounts. No assurance can be provided as to whether any amount of our distributions will be eligible for this exemption from withholding or if eligible, will be reported as such by us.

Actual or deemed distributions of our net capital gains to a Non-U.S. stockholder, and gains realized by a Non-U.S. stockholder upon the sale of our common stock, will not be subject to U.S. federal withholding tax and generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax unless the distributions or gains, as the case may be, are effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business of the Non-U.S. stockholder (and, if an income tax treaty applies, are attributable to a permanent establishment maintained by the Non-U.S. stockholder in the United States), or in the case of an individual stockholder, the stockholder is present in the United States for a period or periods aggregating 183 days or more during the year of the sale or capital gain dividend and certain other conditions are met.

If we distribute our net capital gains in the form of deemed rather than actual distributions, a Non-U.S. stockholder will be entitled to a federal income tax credit or tax refund equal to the stockholder's allocable share of the tax we pay on the capital gains deemed to have been distributed. In order to obtain the refund, the Non-U.S. stockholder must obtain a U.S. taxpayer identification number and file a U.S. federal income tax return even if the Non-U.S. stockholder would not otherwise be required to obtain a U.S. taxpayer identification number or file a U.S. federal income tax return. For a corporate Non-U.S. stockholder, distributions (both actual and deemed), and gains realized upon the sale of our common stock that are effectively connected to a U.S. trade or business may, under certain

circumstances, be subject to an additional branch profits tax at a 30% rate (or at a lower rate if provided for by an applicable treaty). Accordingly, investment in the shares may not be appropriate for a Non-U.S. stockholder.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

A Non-U.S. stockholder who is a non-resident alien individual, and who is not otherwise subject to withholding of U.S. federal income tax, may be subject to information reporting and backup withholding of U.S. federal income tax on dividends unless the Non-U.S. stockholder provides us or the dividend paying agent with an IRS Form W-8BEN or IRS Form W-8BEN-E, (or an acceptable substitute or successor form) or otherwise meets documentary evidence requirements for establishing that it is a Non-U.S. stockholder or otherwise establishes an exemption from backup withholding.

The Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act, or FATCA, provisions of the Code, generally imposes a 30% withholding tax on payments of certain types of income to foreign financial institutions that fail to enter into an agreement with the U.S. Treasury to report certain required information with respect to accounts held by U.S. persons (or held by foreign entities that have U.S. persons as substantial owners). The types of income subject to the tax include U.S. source interest and dividends and the gross proceeds from the sale of any property that could produce U.S.-source interest or dividends paid after December 31, 2018. The information required to be reported includes the identity and taxpayer identification number of each account holder that is a U.S. person and transaction activity within the holder's account. In addition, subject to certain exceptions, this legislation also imposes a 30% withholding on payments to foreign entities that are not financial institutions unless the foreign entity certifies that it does not have a greater than 10% U.S. owner or provides the withholding agent with identifying information on each greater than 10% U.S. owner. Depending on the status of a Non-U.S. Holder and the status of the intermediaries through which they hold their shares, Non-U.S. Holders could be subject to this 30% withholding tax with respect to distributions on their shares and proceeds from the sale of their shares. Under certain circumstances, a Non-U.S. Holders might be eligible for refunds or credits of such taxes.

Non-U.S. persons should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the U.S. federal income tax and withholding tax, and state, local and foreign tax consequences of an investment in the shares.

**Failure to Qualify as a Regulated Investment Company**

If we fail to satisfy the 90% Income Test or the Diversification Tests for any taxable year, we may nevertheless continue to qualify as a RIC for such taxable year if certain relief provisions are applicable (which may, among other things, require us to pay certain corporate-level federal taxes or to dispose of certain assets).

If we were unable to qualify for treatment as a RIC and the foregoing relief provisions are not applicable, we would be subject to tax on all of our taxable income at regular corporate rates. We would not be able to deduct distributions to stockholders, nor would they be required to be made. Such distributions would be taxable to our stockholders and provided certain holding period and other requirements were met, could qualify for treatment as qualified dividend income eligible for the 20% maximum U.S. federal income tax rate if earned by certain U.S. resident non-corporate stockholders to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits. Subject to certain limitations under the Code, corporate distributions generally would be eligible for the dividends-received deduction with respect to distributions current and accumulated earnings and profits if earned by certain U.S. resident corporate stockholders. Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits would be treated first as a return of capital to the extent of the stockholder's tax basis, and any remaining distributions would be treated as a capital gain. To requalify as a RIC in a subsequent taxable year, we would be required to satisfy the RIC qualification requirements for that taxable year and dispose of any earnings and profits from any taxable year in which we failed to qualify as a RIC. Subject to a limited exception applicable to a corporation that qualified as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code for at least one taxable year prior to disqualification and that requalify as a RIC no later than the second taxable year following the nonqualifying taxable year, we also could be subject to tax on any unrealized net built-in gains in the

assets held by us during the period in which we failed to qualify as a RIC that are recognized within the subsequent five taxable years, unless we made a special election to incur a corporate-level income tax on such built-in gain at the time of our requalification as a RIC.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**REGULATION**

The following discussion is a general summary of the material prohibitions and descriptions governing business development companies. It does not purport to be a complete description of all of the laws and regulations affecting business development companies.

A business development company primarily focuses on investing in or lending to private companies and making managerial assistance available to them, while providing its stockholders with the ability to retain the liquidity of a publicly-traded stock. The 1940 Act contains prohibitions and restrictions relating to transactions between business development companies and their directors and officers and principal underwriters and certain other related persons and requires that a majority of the directors be persons other than interested persons, as that term is defined in the 1940 Act. In addition, the 1940 Act provides that we may not change the nature of our business so as to cease to be, or to withdraw our election as, a business development company unless approved by a majority of our outstanding voting securities as defined in the 1940 Act. A majority of the outstanding voting securities of a company is defined under the 1940 Act as the lesser of: (i) 67% or more of such company's shares present at a meeting if more than 50% of the outstanding shares of such company are present or represented by proxy, or (ii) more than 50% of the outstanding shares of such company.

**Qualifying Assets**

Under the 1940 Act, a business development company may not acquire any asset other than assets of the type listed in Section 55(a) of the 1940 Act, which are referred to as qualifying assets, unless, at the time the acquisition is made, qualifying assets represent at least 70% of the company's total assets. The principal categories of qualifying assets relevant to our proposed business are the following:

- (1) Securities purchased in transactions not involving any public offering from the issuer of such securities, which issuer (subject to certain limited exceptions) is an eligible portfolio company, or from any person who is, or has been during the preceding 13 months, an affiliated person of an eligible portfolio company, or from any other person, subject to such rules as may be prescribed by the SEC. An eligible portfolio company is defined in the 1940 Act as any issuer which:
  - (a) is organized under the laws of, and has its principal place of business in, the United States;
  - (b) is not an investment company (other than a small business investment company wholly owned by the business development company) or a company that would be an investment company but for certain exclusions under the 1940 Act; and
  - (c) does not have any class of securities listed on a national securities exchange; or if it has securities listed on a national securities exchange such company has a market capitalization of less than \$250 million; is controlled by the business development company and has an affiliate of a business development company on its board of directors; or meets such other criteria as may be established by

the SEC.

- (2) Securities of any portfolio company which we control.
- (3) Securities purchased in a private transaction from a U.S. issuer that is not an investment company or from an affiliated person of the issuer, or in transactions incident thereto, if the issuer is in bankruptcy and subject to reorganization or if the issuer, immediately prior to the purchase of its securities was unable to meet its obligations as they came due without material assistance other than conventional lending or financing arrangements.
- (4) Securities of an eligible portfolio company purchased from any person in a private transaction if there is no ready market for such securities and we already own 60% of the outstanding equity of the eligible portfolio company.
- (5) Securities received in exchange for or distributed on or with respect to securities described in (1) through (4) above, or pursuant to the exercise of warrants or rights relating to such securities.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Index to Financial Statements**

- (6) Cash, cash equivalents, U.S. Government securities or high-quality debt securities maturing in one year or less from the time of investment.

Control, as defined by the 1940 Act, is presumed to exist where a business development company beneficially owns more than 25% of the outstanding voting securities of the portfolio company or has greater than 50% representation on its board.

We do not intend to acquire securities issued by any investment company, including other business development companies, that exceed the limits imposed by the 1940 Act. Under these limits, we generally cannot acquire more than 3% of the voting stock of any investment company (as defined in the 1940 Act), invest more than 5% of the value of our total assets in the securities of one such investment company or invest more than 10% of the value of our total assets in the securities of such other investment companies in the aggregate. With regard to that portion of our portfolio invested in securities issued by investment companies, it should be noted that such investments might subject our stockholders to additional expenses.

### **Significant Managerial Assistance**

Business development companies generally must offer to make available to the issuer of the securities significant managerial assistance, except in circumstances where either (i) the business development company controls such issuer of securities or (ii) the business development company purchases such securities in conjunction with one or more other persons acting together and one of the other persons in the group makes available such managerial assistance. Making available significant managerial assistance means, among other things, any arrangement whereby the business development company, through its directors, officers or employees, offers to provide and, if accepted, does so provide, significant guidance and counsel concerning the management, operations or business objectives and policies of a portfolio company through monitoring of portfolio company operations, selective participation in board and management meetings, consulting with and advising a portfolio company's officers or other organizational or financial guidance.

### **Temporary Investments**

Pending investment in other types of qualifying assets, as described above, our investments may consist of cash, cash equivalents, U.S. government securities or high quality debt securities maturing in one year or less from the time of investment, which we refer to, collectively, as temporary investments, so that 70% of our assets are qualifying assets. We may invest in U.S. Treasury bills or in repurchase agreements, provided that such agreements are fully collateralized by cash or securities issued by the U.S. government or its agencies. A repurchase agreement involves the purchase by an investor, such as us, of a specified security and the simultaneous agreement by the seller to repurchase it at an agreed upon future date and at a price which is greater than the purchase price by an amount that reflects an agreed-upon interest rate. There is no percentage restriction on the proportion of our assets that may be invested in such repurchase agreements. However, if more than 25% of our total assets constitute repurchase agreements from a single counterparty, we generally would not meet the diversification tests imposed on us by the Code in order to qualify as a RIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes. Thus, we do not intend to enter into repurchase agreements with a single counterparty in excess of this limit. We will monitor the creditworthiness of the counterparties with which we enter into repurchase agreement transactions.

### **Warrants and Options**

Under the 1940 Act, a business development company is subject to restrictions on the amount of warrants, options, restricted stock or rights to purchase shares of capital stock that it may have outstanding at any time. In particular, the amount of capital stock that would result from the conversion or exercise of all outstanding warrants, options or other rights to purchase capital stock cannot exceed 25% of the business development company's total outstanding shares of capital stock. This amount is reduced to 20% of the business development



## **Table of Contents**

### **Index to Financial Statements**

company's total outstanding shares of capital stock if the amount of warrants, options or rights issued pursuant to an executive compensation plan would exceed 15% of the business development company's total outstanding shares of capital stock. We have received exemptive relief from the SEC permitting us to issue stock options and restricted stock to our employees and directors subject to the above conditions, among others. For a discussion regarding the conditions of this exemptive relief, see "Exemptive Relief" below and Note 7 to our consolidated financial statements.

### **Senior Securities; Coverage Ratio**

We will be permitted, under specified conditions, to issue multiple classes of indebtedness and one class of stock senior to our common stock if our asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, is at least equal to 200% (or 150%, subject to certain approval and disclosure requirements) immediately after each such issuance. In addition, we may not be permitted to declare any cash distribution on our outstanding common shares, or purchase any such shares, unless, at the time of such declaration or purchase, we have asset coverage of at least 200% (or 150%, subject to certain approval and disclosure requirements) after deducting the amount of such distribution or purchase price. We may also borrow amounts up to 5% of the value of our total assets for temporary or emergency purposes. For a discussion of the risks associated with the resulting leverage, see "Risk Factors - Risks Related to Our Business Structure - Because we have substantial indebtedness, there could be increased risk in investing in our company." On April 5, 2007, we received approval from the SEC on our request for exemptive relief that permits us to exclude the indebtedness of our wholly-owned subsidiaries that are SBICs from the 200% (or 150%, subject to certain approval and disclosure requirements) asset coverage requirement applicable to us.

### **Capital Structure**

We are not generally able to issue and sell our common stock at a price below NAV per share. We may, however, sell our common stock, at a price below the current NAV of the common stock, or sell warrants, options or other rights to acquire such common stock, at a price below the current NAV of the common stock if our Board of Directors determines that such sale is in the best interests of us and our stockholders have approved the practice of making such sales. In connection with the receipt of such stockholder approval, we will limit the number of shares that we issue at a price below NAV pursuant to this authorization so that the aggregate dilutive effect on our then outstanding shares will not exceed 20%. Our Board of Directors, subject to its fiduciary duties and regulatory requirements, has the discretion to determine the amount of the discount, and as a result, the discount could be up to 100% of NAV per share.

### **Code of Ethics**

We have adopted and will maintain a code of ethics that establishes procedures for personal investments and restricts certain personal securities transactions. Personnel subject to the code may invest in securities for their personal investment accounts, including securities that may be purchased or held by us, so long as such investments are made in accordance with the code's requirements. Our code of ethics will generally not permit investments by our employees in securities that may be purchased or held by us. We may be prohibited under the 1940 Act from conducting certain transactions with our affiliates without the prior approval of our directors who are not interested persons and, in some cases, the prior approval of the SEC.

Our current code of ethics is posted on our website at [www.htgc.com](http://www.htgc.com). You may read and copy the code of ethics at the SEC's Public Reference Room in Washington, D.C. You may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC at (202) 551-8090. In addition, the code of ethics is available on the EDGAR

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Database on the SEC's Internet site at <http://www.sec.gov>. You may also obtain copies of the code of ethics, after paying a duplicating fee, by electronic request at the following e-mail address: [publicinfo@sec.gov](mailto:publicinfo@sec.gov), or by writing the SEC's Public Reference Section, 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Privacy Principles**

We are committed to maintaining the privacy of our stockholders and safeguarding their non-public personal information. The following information is provided to help you understand what personal information we collect, how we protect that information and why, in certain cases, we may share information with select other parties.

Generally, we do not receive any non-public personal information relating to our stockholders, although certain non-public personal information of our stockholders may become available to us. We do not disclose any non-public personal information about our stockholders or former stockholders, except as permitted by law or as is necessary in order to service stockholder accounts (for example, to a transfer agent).

We restrict access to non-public personal information about our stockholders to our employees with a legitimate business need for the information. We maintain physical, electronic and procedural safeguards designed to protect the non-public personal information of our stockholders.

**Proxy Voting Policies and Procedures**

We vote proxies relating to our portfolio securities in the best interest of our stockholders. Our proxy voting decisions are made by members of the Investment Team, who review on a case- by-case basis each proposal submitted to a stockholder vote to determine its impact on the portfolio securities held by us. Although we generally vote against proposals that may have a negative impact on our portfolio securities, we may vote for such a proposal if there exists compelling long-term reasons to do so. We generally do not believe it is necessary to engage the services of an independent third party to assist in issue analysis and vote recommendation for proxy proposals.

To ensure that our vote is not the product of a conflict of interest, we require that: (i) anyone involved in the decision making process disclose to our Chief Compliance Officer any potential conflict that he or she is aware of and any contact that he or she has had with any interested party regarding a proxy vote; and (ii) employees involved in the decision making process or vote administration are prohibited from revealing how we intend to vote on a proposal in order to reduce any attempted influence from interested parties.

**Exemptive Relief**

On June 21, 2005, we filed a request with the SEC for exemptive relief to allow us to take certain actions that would otherwise be prohibited by the 1940 Act, as applicable to business development companies. Specifically, we requested that the SEC permit us to issue stock options to our non-employee directors as contemplated by Section 61(a)(3)(B)(i)(II) of the 1940 Act. On February 15, 2007, we received approval from the SEC on this exemptive request. In addition, in June 2007, we filed an amendment to the February 2007 order to adjust the number of shares issued to the non-employee directors. On October 10, 2007, we received approval from the SEC on this amended exemptive request.

On April 5, 2007, we received approval from the SEC on our request for exemptive relief that permits us to exclude the indebtedness of our wholly-owned subsidiaries that are SBICs from the 200% (or 150%, subject to certain approval and disclosure requirements) asset coverage requirement applicable to us.

On May 23, 2007, we received approval from the SEC on our request for exemptive relief that permits us to issue restricted stock to our employees, officers and directors. On June 21, 2007, our shareholders approved amendments to

the 2004 Equity Incentive Plan (the 2004 Plan ) and 2006 Non-Employee Director Plan (the 2006 Plan and, together with the 2004 Plan, the Plans ) permitting such restricted grants. On June 21, 2017, the 2006 Plan expired in accordance with its terms and no additional awards may be granted under the 2006 Plan. In the future, we may adopt a Non-Employee Director Plan that, among other things, provides for the issuance of

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

restricted stock to directors. The maximum amount of shares that may be issued under the Plans will be 10% of the outstanding shares of our common stock on the effective date of the Plans plus 10% of the outstanding number of shares of our common stock issued or delivered by us (other than pursuant to compensation plans) during the term of the Plans. The amount of voting securities that would result from the exercise of all of our outstanding warrants, options, and rights, if any, together with any restricted stock issued pursuant to the Plans, at the time of issuance shall not exceed 25% of our outstanding voting securities, except that if such amount would exceed 15% of our outstanding voting securities, then the total amount of voting securities that would result from the exercise of all outstanding warrants, options, and rights, if any, together with any restricted stock issued pursuant to the Plans, at the time of issuance shall not exceed 20% of our outstanding voting securities.

On June 22, 2010 we received approval from the SEC on our request for exemptive relief that permits our employees to exercise their stock options and restricted stock and pay any related income taxes using a cashless exercise program.

**Other**

We may be periodically examined by the SEC for compliance with the Exchange Act and the 1940 Act.

We are required to provide and maintain a bond issued by a reputable fidelity insurance company to protect us against larceny and embezzlement. Furthermore, as a business development company, we are prohibited from protecting any director or officer against any liability to our stockholders arising from willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of such person's office.

We are required to adopt and implement written policies and procedures reasonably designed to prevent violation of the federal securities laws, review these policies and procedures annually for their adequacy and the effectiveness of their implementation. Our Chief Compliance Officer is responsible for administering these policies and procedures.

**Small Business Administration Regulations**

We make investments in qualifying small businesses through our two wholly-owned SBIC subsidiaries, HT II and HT III. With our net investments of \$44.0 million and \$74.5 million in HT II and HT III, respectively, we have the combined capacity to issue a total of \$190.2 million of SBA guaranteed debentures, subject to SBA approval. At December 31, 2017, we have issued \$190.2 million in SBA guaranteed debentures in our SBIC subsidiaries.

We intend to seek an additional SBIC license to ensure continued access to the maximum statutory limit of SBA guaranteed debentures under the SBIC program. We have formed Hercules Technology IV, L.P. for that purpose. There can be no assurance of when or if we will receive SBA approval for another SBIC license.

SBICs are designed to stimulate the flow of private equity capital to eligible small businesses. Under present SBA regulations, eligible small businesses include businesses that have a tangible net worth not exceeding \$19.5 million and have average annual fully taxed net income not exceeding \$6.5 million for the two most recent fiscal years. In addition, SBICs must devote 25.0% of its investment activity to smaller enterprises as defined by the SBA. A smaller enterprise is one that has a tangible net worth not exceeding \$6.0 million and has average annual fully taxed net income not exceeding \$2.0 million for the two most recent fiscal years. SBA regulations also provide alternative size standard criteria to determine eligibility, which depend on the industry in which the business is engaged and are based on such factors as the number of employees and gross sales. According to SBA regulations, SBICs may make

long-term loans to small businesses, invest in the equity securities of such businesses and provide them with consulting and advisory services. Through our wholly-owned subsidiaries HT II and HT III, we plan to provide long-term loans to qualifying small businesses, and in connection therewith, make equity investments.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

HT II and HT III are periodically examined and audited by the SBA's staff to determine their compliance with SBA regulations. If HT II or HT III fails to comply with applicable SBA regulations, the SBA could, depending on the severity of the violation, limit or prohibit HT II's or HT III's use of debentures, declare outstanding debentures immediately due and payable, and/or limit HT II or HT III from making new investments. In addition, HT II or HT III may also be limited in their ability to make distributions to us if they do not have sufficient capital in accordance with SBA regulations. Such actions by the SBA would, in turn, negatively affect us because HT II and HT III are our wholly owned subsidiaries. HT II and HT III were in compliance with the terms of the SBIC's leverage as of December 31, 2017 as a result of having sufficient capital as defined under the SBA regulations.

HT II and HT III hold approximately \$111.8 million and \$284.0 million in assets, respectively, and accounted for approximately 5.4% and 13.8% of our total assets prior to consolidation at December 31, 2017.

The SBA restricts the ability of SBICs to repurchase their capital stock. SBA regulations also include restrictions on a change of control or transfer of an SBIC and require that SBICs invest idle funds in accordance with SBA regulations. In addition, HT II and HT III may also be limited in their ability to make distributions to us if they do not have sufficient capital and/or distributed earnings, in accordance with SBA regulations.

Our SBIC subsidiaries are subject to regulation and oversight by the SBA, including requirements with respect to maintaining certain minimum financial ratios and other covenants. Receipt of an SBIC license does not assure that our SBIC subsidiaries will receive SBA guaranteed debenture funding, which is dependent upon our SBIC subsidiaries continuing to be in compliance with SBA regulations and policies. The SBA, as a creditor, will have a superior claim to our SBIC subsidiaries' assets over our stockholders in the event we liquidate our SBIC subsidiaries or the SBA exercises its remedies under the SBA-guaranteed debentures issued by our SBIC subsidiaries upon an event of default.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**DETERMINATION OF NET ASSET VALUE**

We determine the NAV per share of our common stock quarterly. The NAV per share is equal to the value of our total assets minus liabilities and any preferred stock outstanding divided by the total number of shares of common stock outstanding. As of the date of this prospectus, we do not have any preferred stock outstanding.

At December 31, 2017, approximately 93.2% of our total assets represented investments in portfolio companies whose fair value is determined in good faith by the Board of Directors. Value, as defined in Section 2(a)(41) of the 1940 Act, is (i) the market price for those securities for which a market quotation is readily available and (ii) for all other securities and assets, fair value is as determined in good faith by the Board of Directors. Our investments are carried at fair value in accordance with the 1940 Act and Accounting Standards Codification Topic 946 Financial Services Investment Companies ( ASC 946 ) and measured in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification Topic 820 Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures ( ASC 820 ). Our debt securities are primarily invested in venture capital-backed companies in technology-related industries including technology, drug discovery and development, biotechnology, life sciences, healthcare, and sustainable and renewable technology at all stages of development. Given the nature of lending to these types of businesses, substantially all of our investments in these portfolio companies are considered Level 3 assets under ASC 820 because there is no known or accessible market or market indexes for these investment securities to be traded or exchanged. As such, we value substantially all of our investments at fair value as determined in good faith pursuant to a consistent valuation policy by our Board of Directors in accordance with the provisions of ASC 820 and the 1940 Act. Due to the inherent uncertainty in determining the fair value of investments that do not have a readily available market value, the fair value of our investments determined in good faith by our Board of Directors may differ significantly from the value that would have been used had a readily available market existed for such investments, and the differences could be material.

We may from time to time engage one or more independent valuation firms to provide us with valuation assistance with respect to certain of our portfolio investments. We engage independent valuation firms on a discretionary basis. Specifically, on a quarterly basis, we will identify portfolio investments with respect to which an independent valuation firm will assist in valuing. We select these portfolio investments based on a number of factors, including, but not limited to, the potential for material fluctuations in valuation results, credit quality and the time lapse since the last valuation of the portfolio investment by an independent valuation firm.

We intend to continue to engage an independent valuation firm to provide us with assistance regarding our determination of the fair value of selected portfolio investments each quarter unless directed by the Board of Directors to cancel such valuation services. The scope of the services rendered by an independent valuation firm is at the discretion of the Board of Directors. Our Board of Directors is ultimately, and solely, responsible for determining the fair value of our investments in good faith.

With respect to investments for which market quotations are not readily available or when such market quotations are deemed not to represent fair value, our Board of Directors has approved a multi-step valuation process each quarter, as described below:

- (1) our quarterly valuation process begins with each portfolio company being initially valued by the investment professionals responsible for the portfolio investment;
- (2) preliminary valuation conclusions are then documented and business based assumptions are discussed with our investment committee;



(3) the Audit Committee of the Board of Directors reviews the preliminary valuation of the investments in the portfolio as provided by the investment committee, which incorporates the results of the independent valuation firm as appropriate; and

(4) the Board of Directors, upon the recommendation of the Audit Committee, discusses valuations and determines the fair value of each investment in our portfolio in good faith based on the input of, where applicable, the respective independent valuation firm and the investment committee.

## Table of Contents

### Index to Financial Statements

ASC 820 establishes a framework for measuring the fair value of assets and liabilities and outlines a fair value hierarchy which prioritizes the inputs used to measure fair value and the effect of fair value measures on earnings. ASC 820 also requires disclosure for fair value measurements based on the level within the hierarchy of the information used in the valuation. ASC 820 applies whenever other standards require (or permit) assets or liabilities to be measured at fair value. ASC 820 defines fair value as the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date.

We have categorized all investments recorded at fair value in accordance with ASC 820 based upon the level of judgment associated with the inputs used to measure their fair value. Hierarchical levels, defined by ASC 820 and directly related to the amount of subjectivity associated with the inputs to fair valuation of these assets and liabilities, are as follows:

**Level 1** Inputs are unadjusted, quoted prices in active markets for identical assets at the measurement date. The types of assets carried at Level 1 fair value generally are equities listed in active markets.

**Level 2** Inputs (other than quoted prices included in Level 1) are either directly or indirectly observable for the asset in connection with market data at the measurement date and for the extent of the instrument's anticipated life. Fair valued assets that are generally included in this category are publicly held debt investments and warrants held in a public company.

**Level 3** Inputs reflect management's best estimate of what market participants would use in pricing the asset at the measurement date. It includes prices or valuations that require inputs that are both significant to the fair value measurement and unobservable. Generally, assets carried at fair value and included in this category are the debt investments and warrants and equities held in a private company.

### Debt Investments

We follow the guidance set forth in ASC 820 which establishes a framework for measuring the fair value of assets and liabilities and outlines a fair value hierarchy which prioritizes the inputs used to measure fair value and the effect of fair value measures on earnings. Our debt securities are primarily invested in venture capital-backed companies in technology-related markets including technology, drug discovery and development, biotechnology, life sciences, healthcare, and sustainable and renewable technology at all stages of development. Given the nature of lending to these types of businesses, substantially all of our investments in these portfolio companies are considered Level 3 assets under ASC 820 because there is no known or accessible market or market indexes for debt instruments for these investment securities to be traded or exchanged. In addition, we may, from time to time, invest in public debt of companies that meet our investment objectives. These investments are considered Level 2 assets.

In making a good faith determination of the value of our investments, we generally start with the cost basis of the investment, which includes the value attributed to the OID, if any, and PIK interest or other receivables which have been accrued as earned. We then apply the valuation methods as set forth below.

We apply a procedure for debt investments that assumes the sale of each investment in a hypothetical market to a hypothetical market participant where buyers and sellers are willing participants. The hypothetical market does not include scenarios where the underlying security was simply repaid or extinguished, but includes an exit concept. We determine the yield at inception for each debt investment.

We then use senior secured, leveraged loan yields provided by third party providers to determine the change in market yields between inception of the debt investments and the measurement date. Industry specific indices and other relevant market data are used to benchmark/assess market based movements.

Under this process, we also evaluate the collateral for recoverability of the debt investments. We consider each portfolio company's credit rating, security liens and other characteristics of the investment to adjust the

## Table of Contents

### Index to Financial Statements

baseline yield to derive a credit adjusted hypothetical yield for each investment as of the measurement date. The anticipated future cash flows from each investment are then discounted at the hypothetical yield to estimate each investment's fair value as of the measurement date.

Our process includes an analysis of, among other things, the underlying investment performance, the current portfolio company's financial condition and market changing events that impact valuation, estimated remaining life, current market yields and interest rate spreads of similar securities as of the measurement date. We value our syndicated debt investments using broker quotes and bond indices amongst other factors. If there is a significant deterioration of the credit quality of a debt investment, we may consider other factors than those a hypothetical market participant would use to estimate fair value, including the proceeds that would be received in a liquidation analysis.

We record unrealized depreciation on investments when we believe that an investment has decreased in value, including where collection of a debt investment is doubtful or, if under the in-exchange premise, when the value of a debt investment is less than the amortized cost of the investment. Conversely, where appropriate, we record unrealized appreciation if we believe that the underlying portfolio company has appreciated in value and, therefore, that our investment has also appreciated in value or, if under the in-exchange premise, the value of a debt investment is greater than amortized cost.

When originating a debt investment, we generally receive warrants or other equity-related securities from the borrower. We determine the cost basis of the warrants or other equity-related securities received based upon their respective fair values on the date of receipt in proportion to the total fair value of the debt and warrants or other equity-related securities received. Any resulting discount on the debt investment from recordation of the warrant or other equity instruments is accreted into interest income over the life of the loan.

Debt investments that are traded on a public exchange are valued at the prevailing market price as of the valuation date.

### Equity-Related Securities and Warrants

Securities that are traded in the over-the-counter markets or on a stock exchange will be valued at the prevailing bid price at period end. We have a limited amount of equity securities in public companies. In accordance with the 1940 Act, unrestricted publicly traded securities for which market quotations are readily available are valued at the closing market quote on the measurement date.

We estimate the fair value of warrants using a Black Scholes OPM. At each reporting date, privately held warrant and equity-related securities are valued based on an analysis of various factors including, but not limited to, the portfolio company's operating performance and financial condition and general market conditions, price to enterprise value or price to equity ratios, discounted cash flow, valuation comparisons to comparable public companies or other industry benchmarks. When an external event occurs, such as a purchase transaction, public offering, or subsequent equity sale, the pricing indicated by that external event is utilized to corroborate our valuation of the warrant and equity-related securities. We periodically review the valuation of our portfolio companies that have not been involved in a qualifying external event to determine if the enterprise value of the portfolio company may have increased or decreased since the last valuation measurement date.

### Escrow Receivables

Escrow receivables are collected in accordance with the terms and conditions of the escrow agreement. Escrow balances are typically distributed over a period greater than one year and may accrue interest during the escrow period. Escrow balances are measured for collectability on at least a quarterly basis and fair value is determined based on the amount of the estimated recoverable balances and the contractual maturity date. As of December 31, 2017, there were no material past due escrow receivables.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Determinations In Connection With Offerings**

In connection with each offering of shares of our common stock, the Board of Directors or a committee thereof is required to make the determination that we are not selling shares of our common stock at a price below our then current NAV at the time at which the sale is made, unless it is determined by the Board of Directors that such sale is in the best interests of our stockholders and such sale is otherwise approved by our stockholders. The Board of Directors considers the following factors, among others, in making such determination:

the NAV of our common stock disclosed in the most recent periodic report we filed with the SEC;

our management's assessment of whether any material change in the NAV has occurred (including through the realization of net gains on the sale of our portfolio investments) from the period beginning on the date of the most recently disclosed NAV to the period ending two days prior to the date of the sale of our common stock; and

the magnitude of the difference between (i) a value that our Board of Directors or an authorized committee thereof has determined reflects the current NAV of our common stock, which is generally based upon the NAV of our common stock disclosed in the most recent periodic report that we filed with the SEC, as adjusted to reflect our management's assessment of any material change in the NAV of our common stock since the date of the most recently disclosed NAV of our common stock, and (ii) the offering price of the shares of our common stock in the proposed offering.

Importantly, this determination does not require that we calculate NAV in connection with each offering of shares of our common stock, but instead it involves the determination by the Board of Directors or a committee thereof that we are not selling shares of our common stock at a price below the then current NAV at the time at which the sale is made.

Moreover, to the extent that there is a possibility that we may (i) issue shares of our common stock at a price below the then current NAV of our common stock at the time at which the sale is made or (ii) trigger the undertaking (which we will provide to the SEC in a registration statement to which a prospectus will be a part) to suspend the offering of shares of our common stock pursuant to a prospectus if the NAV fluctuates by certain amounts in certain circumstances until such prospectus is amended, the Board of Directors or a committee thereof will elect, in the case of clause (i) above, either to postpone the offering until such time that there is no longer the possibility of the occurrence of such events or to undertake to determine NAV within two days prior to any such sale to ensure that such sale will not be below our then current NAV, and, in the case of clause (ii) above, to comply with such undertaking or to undertake to determine NAV to ensure that such undertaking has not been triggered.

These processes and procedures are part of our compliance policies and procedures. Records will be made contemporaneously with all determinations described in this section and these records will be maintained with other records we are required to maintain under the 1940 Act.



Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**SALES OF COMMON STOCK BELOW NET ASSET VALUE**

We are not generally able to issue and sell our common stock at a price below NAV per share. We may, however, sell our common stock, at a price below the current NAV of the common stock, or sell warrants, options or other rights to acquire such common stock, at a price below the current NAV of the common stock if our Board of Directors determines that such sale is in our best interests and the best interests of our stockholders and our stockholders have approved the practice of making such sales. In connection with the receipt of such stockholder approval, we will agree to limit the number of shares that we issue at a price below NAV pursuant to this authorization so that the aggregate dilutive effect on our then outstanding shares will not exceed 20%. Our Board of Directors, subject to its fiduciary duties and regulatory requirements, has the discretion to determine the amount of the discount, and as a result, the discount could be up to 100% of NAV per share.

In order to sell shares pursuant to this authorization:

a majority of our independent directors who have no financial interest in the sale must have approved the sale; and

a majority of such directors, who are not interested persons of the Company, in consultation with the underwriter or underwriters of the offering if it is to be underwritten, must have determined in good faith, and as of a time immediately prior to the first solicitation by us or on our behalf of firm commitments to purchase such shares or immediately prior to the issuance of such shares, that the price at which such shares are to be sold is not less than a price which closely approximates the market value of those shares, less any underwriting commission or discount; and

Any offering of common stock below NAV per share will be designed to raise capital for investment in accordance with our investment objectives and business strategies.

In making a determination that an offering below NAV per share is in our and our stockholders' best interests, our Board of Directors would consider a variety of factors including:

The effect that an offering below NAV per share would have on our stockholders, including the potential dilution they would experience as a result of the offering;

The amount per share by which the offering price per share and the net proceeds per share are less than the most recently determined NAV per share;

The relationship of recent market prices of our common stock to NAV per share and the potential impact of the offering on the market price per share of our common stock;



Whether the proposed offering price would closely approximate the market value of our shares;

The potential market impact of being able to raise capital during the current financial market difficulties;

The nature of any new investors anticipated to acquire shares in the offering;

The anticipated rate of return on and quality, type and availability of investments to be funded with the proceeds from the offering, if any; and

The leverage available to us, both before and after any offering, and the terms thereof.

Sales by us of our common stock at a discount from NAV pose potential risks for our existing stockholders whether or not they participate in the offering, as well as for new investors who participate in the offering.

The following three headings and accompanying tables will explain and provide hypothetical examples on the impact of an offering at a price less than NAV per share on three different sets of investors:

existing stockholders who do not purchase any shares in the offering;

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

existing stockholders who purchase a relatively small amount of shares in the offering or a relatively large amount of shares in the offering; and

new investors who become stockholders by purchasing shares in the offering.

**Impact on Existing Stockholders not Participating in the Offering**

Our existing stockholders who do not participate in an offering below NAV per share or who do not buy additional shares in the secondary market at the same or lower price we obtain in the offering (after expenses and commissions) face the greatest potential risks. All stockholders will experience an immediate decrease (often called dilution) in the NAV of the shares they hold. Stockholders who do not participate in the offering will also experience a disproportionately greater decrease in their participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than stockholders who do participate in the offering. All stockholders may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential decreases in NAV per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and level of discount to NAV increases.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

The following table illustrates the level of NAV dilution that would be experienced by a nonparticipating stockholder in different hypothetical offerings of different sizes and levels of discount from NAV per share. Actual sales prices and discounts may differ from the presentation below.

The examples assume that Company XYZ has 3,000,000 common shares outstanding, \$40,000,000 in total assets and \$10,000,000 in total liabilities. The current NAV and NAV are thus \$30,000,000 and \$10.00, respectively. The table illustrates the dilutive effect on nonparticipating Stockholder A of (1) an offering of 300,000 shares (10% of the outstanding shares) with proceeds to the Company XYZ at \$9.00 per share after offering expenses and commissions, and (2) an offering of 600,000 shares (20% of the outstanding shares) with proceeds to the Company at \$0.001 per share after offering expenses and commissions (a 100% discount from NAV).

	Prior to Sale Below NAV	Example 1 10% Offering at 10% Discount Following Sale	% Change	Example 2 20% Offering at 100% Discount Following Sale	% Change
<b>Offering Price</b>					
Price per Share to Public <sup>(1)</sup>		\$ 9.47		\$ 0.001	
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer		\$ 9.00		\$ 0.001	
<b>Decrease to NAV</b>					
Total Shares Outstanding	3,000,000	3,300,000	10.00%	3,600,000	20.00%
NAV per Share	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.91	(0.90)%	\$ 8.33	(16.67)%
<b>Share Dilution to Stockholder</b>					
Shares Held by Stockholder A	30,000	30,000		30,000	
Percentage of Shares Held by Stockholder A	1.00%	0.91%	(9.09)%	0.83%	(16.67)%
<b>Total Asset Values</b>					
Total NAV Held by Stockholder A	\$ 300,000	\$ 297,273	(0.90)%	\$ 250,005	(16.67)%
Total Investment by Stockholder A (Assumed to Be \$10.00 per Share)	\$ 300,000	\$ 300,000		\$ 300,000	
Total Dilution to Stockholder A (Change in Total NAV Held By Stockholder)		\$ (2,727)		\$ (49,995)	
<b>Per Share Amounts</b>					
NAV per Share Held by Stockholder A		\$ 9.91		\$ 8.33	
Investment per Share Held by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10.00 per Share on Shares Held Prior to Sale)	\$ 10.00	\$ 10.00		\$ 10.00	
Dilution per Share Held by Stockholder A		\$ (0.09)		\$ (1.67)	
Percentage Dilution per Share Held by Stockholder A			(0.90)%		(16.67)%

(1) Assumes 5% in selling compensation and expenses paid by Company XYZ.

**Impact on Existing Stockholders who do Participate in the Offering**

Our existing stockholders who participate in an offering below NAV per share or who buy additional shares in the secondary market at the same or lower price as we obtain in the offering (after expenses and commissions) will experience the same types of NAV dilution as the nonparticipating stockholders, albeit at a lower level, to the extent they purchase less than the same percentage of the discounted offering as their interest in our shares immediately prior to the offering. The level of NAV dilution on an aggregate basis will decrease as the number of shares such stockholders purchase increases. Existing stockholders who buy more than their proportionate percentage will experience NAV dilution but will, in contrast to existing stockholders who purchase less than their proportionate share of the offering, experience an increase (often called accretion) in NAV per share over their investment per share and will also experience a disproportionately greater increase in their participation in

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

our earnings and assets and their voting power than our increase in assets, potential earning power and voting interests due to the offering. The level of accretion will increase as the excess number of shares purchased by such stockholder increases. Even a stockholder who over-participates will, however, be subject to the risk that we may make additional discounted offerings in which such stockholder does not participate, in which case such a stockholder will experience NAV dilution as described above in such subsequent offerings. These stockholders may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential decreases in NAV per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and the level of discount to NAV increases.

The following chart illustrates the level of dilution and accretion in the hypothetical 20% discount offering from the prior chart (Example 3) for a stockholder that acquires shares equal to (1) 50% of its proportionate share of the offering (i.e., 3,000 shares, which is 0.5% of an offering of 600,000 shares rather than its 1.0% proportionate share) and (2) 150% of such percentage (i.e., 9,000 shares, which is 1.5% of an offering of 600,000 shares rather than its 1.0% proportionate share). The prospectus supplement pursuant to which any discounted offering is made will include a chart for this example based on the actual number of shares in such offering and the actual discount from the most recently determined NAV per share.

	Prior to Sale Below NAV	50% Participation Following Sale	% Change	150% Participation Following Sale	% Change
<b>Offering Price</b>					
Price per Share to Public <sup>(1)</sup>		\$ 8.42		\$ 8.42	
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer		\$ 8.00		\$ 8.00	
<b>Increase in Shares and Decrease to NAV</b>					
Total Shares Outstanding	3,000,000	3,600,000	20.00%	3,600,000	20.00%
NAV per Share	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.67	(3.33)%	\$ 9.67	(3.33)%
<b>Dilution/Accretion to Participating Stockholder A</b>					
<b>Share Dilution/Accretion</b>					
Shares Held by Stockholder A	30,000	33,000	10.00%	39,000	30.00%
Percentage Outstanding Held by Stockholder A	1.00%	0.92%	(8.33)%	1.08%	8.33%
<b>NAV Dilution/Accretion</b>					
Total NAV Held by Stockholder A	\$ 300,000	\$ 319,110	6.33%	\$ 377,130	25.67%
Total Investment by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10.00 per Share on Shares Held Prior to Sale)		\$ 325,260		\$ 375,780	
Total Dilution/Accretion to Stockholder A (Total NAV Less Total Investment)		\$ (6,150)		\$ 1,350	
<b>NAV Dilution/Accretion per Share</b>					
NAV per Share Held by Stockholder A	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.67		\$ 9.67	
	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.86	(1.44)%	\$ 9.64	(3.65)%

Investment per Share Held by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10.00 per Share on Shares Held Prior to Sale)		
NAV Dilution/Accretion per Share Experienced by Stockholder A (NAV per Share Less Investment per Share)	\$ (0.19)	\$ 0.03
Percentage NAV Dilution/Accretion Experienced by Stockholder A (NAV Dilution/Accretion per Share Divided by Investment per Share)	(1.93)%	0.31%

(1) Assumes 5% in selling compensation and expenses paid by Company XYZ.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements****Impact on New Investors**

Investors who are not currently stockholders, but who participate in an offering below NAV and whose investment per share is greater than the resulting NAV per share (due to selling compensation and expenses paid by us) will experience an immediate decrease, albeit small, in the NAV of their shares and their NAV per share compared to the price they pay for their shares. Investors who are not currently stockholders and who participate in an offering below NAV per share and whose investment per share is also less than the resulting NAV per share will experience an immediate increase in the NAV of their shares and their NAV per share compared to the price they pay for their shares. All these investors will experience a disproportionately greater participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than our increase in assets, potential earning power and voting interests. These investors will, however, be subject to the risk that we may make additional discounted offerings in which such new stockholder does not participate, in which case such new stockholder will experience dilution as described above in such subsequent offerings. These investors may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential decreases in NAV per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and level of discount to NAV increases.

The following chart illustrates the level of dilution or accretion for new investors that would be experienced by a new investor in the same hypothetical 10% and 100% discounted offerings as described in the first chart above. The illustration is for a new investor who purchases the same percentage (1.00%) of the shares in the offering as Stockholder A in the prior examples held immediately prior to the offering. The prospectus supplement pursuant to which any discounted offering is made will include a chart for these examples based on the actual number of shares in such offering and the actual discount from the most recently determined NAV per share.

	Prior to Sale Below NAV	Example 1 10% Offering at 10% Discount Following Sale	% Change	Example 2 20% Offering at 100% Discount Following Sale	% Change
<b>Offering Price</b>					
Price per Share to Public <sup>(1)</sup>		\$ 9.47		\$ 0.001	
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer		\$ 9.00		\$ 0.001	
<b>Increase in Shares and Decrease to NAV</b>					
Total Shares Outstanding	3,000,000	3,300,000	10.00%	3,600,000	20.00%
NAV per Share	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.91	(0.90)%	\$ 8.33	(16.67)%
<b>Dilution/Accretion to New Investor A</b>					
<b>Share Dilution</b>					
Shares Held by Investor A		3,000		6,000	
Percentage Outstanding Held by Investor A	0.00%	0.09%		0.17%	
<b>NAV Dilution</b>					
Total NAV Held by Investor A		\$ 29,730		\$ 50,001	
Total Investment by Investor A (At Price to Public)		\$ 28,410		\$ 6	
Total Dilution/Accretion to Investor A (Total NAV Less Total Investment)		\$ 1,320		\$ 49,995	

**NAV Dilution per Share**

NAV per Share Held by Investor A	\$ 9.91	\$ 8.33
Investment per Share Held by Investor A	\$ 9.47	\$ 0.001
NAV Dilution/Accretion per Share Experienced by Investor A (NAV per Share Less Investment per Share)	\$ 0.44	\$ 8.33
Percentage NAV Dilution/Accretion Experienced by Investor A (NAV Dilution/Accretion per Share Divided by Investment per Share)	4.65%	99.99%

(1) Assumes 5% in selling compensation and expenses paid by Company XYZ.



Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**DIVIDEND REINVESTMENT PLAN**

We have adopted a dividend reinvestment plan (the "DRP"), through which all distributions are paid to our stockholders in the form of additional shares of our common stock, unless a stockholder elects to receive cash as provided below. In this way, a stockholder can maintain an undiluted investment in our common stock and still allow us to pay out the required distributable income.

No action is required on the part of a registered stockholder to receive a distribution in shares of our common stock. A registered stockholder may elect to receive an entire distribution in cash by notifying American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, the plan administrator and our transfer agent and registrar, so that such notice is received by the plan administrator no later than three days prior to the payment date for distributions to stockholders. The plan administrator will set up an account for shares acquired through the DRP for each stockholder who has not elected to receive distributions in cash (each a "Participant") and hold such shares in non-certificated form. Upon request by a Participant, received not less than three days prior to the payment date, the plan administrator will, instead of crediting shares to the Participant's account, issue a certificate registered in the Participant's name for the number of whole shares of our common stock and a check for any fractional share.

Those stockholders whose shares are held by a broker or other financial intermediary may receive distributions in cash by notifying their broker or other financial intermediary of their election.

We expect to use primarily newly-issued shares to implement the DRP, whether our shares are trading at a premium or at a discount to NAV, although we have the option under the DRP to purchase shares in the market to fulfill DRP requirements. The number of shares to be issued to a stockholder is determined by dividing the total dollar amount of the distribution payable to such stockholder by the market price per share of our common stock at the close of regular trading on the NYSE on the valuation date for such distribution. Market price per share on that date will be the closing price for such shares on the NYSE or, if no sale is reported for such day, at the average of their electronically-reported bid and asked prices. The number of shares of our common stock to be outstanding after giving effect to payment of the distribution cannot be established until the value per share at which additional shares will be issued has been determined and elections of our stockholders have been tabulated.

There is no charge to our stockholders for receiving their distributions in the form of additional shares of our common stock. The plan administrator's fees for handling distributions in stock are paid by us. There are no brokerage charges with respect to shares we have issued directly as a result of distributions payable in stock. If a Participant elects by internet or by written or telephonic notice to the plan administrator to have the plan administrator sell part or all of the shares held by the plan administrator in the Participant's account and remit the proceeds to the Participant, the plan administrator is authorized to deduct a \$15.00 transaction fee plus brokerage commissions from the proceeds.

Any shares issued in connection with a stock split or stock dividend will be added to a Participant's account with the Plan Administrator. The Plan Administrator may curtail or suspend transaction processing until the completion of such stock split or payment of such stock dividend.

Stockholders who receive distributions in the form of stock generally are subject to the same federal, state and local tax consequences as are stockholders who elect to receive their distributions in cash. A stockholder's basis for determining gain or loss upon the sale of stock received in a distribution from us will be equal to the total dollar amount of the distribution payable to the stockholder.

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

The DRP may be terminated by us upon notice in writing mailed to each Participant at least 30 days prior to any record date for the payment of any distribution by us. All correspondence concerning the DRP, including requests for additional information, should be directed to the plan administrator by mail at American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, Attn: Dividend Reinvestment Department, P.O. Box 922, Wall Street Station, New York, NY 10269-0560 or by phone at 1-866-669-9888.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK**

The following description is based on relevant portions of the Maryland General Corporation Law and on our charter and bylaws. This summary may not contain all of the information that is important to you, and we refer you to the Maryland General Corporation Law and our charter and bylaws for a more detailed description of the provisions summarized below.

Under the terms of our charter, our authorized capital stock consists of 200,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.001 per share, of which 85,446,992 shares are outstanding as of April 6, 2018. Under our charter, our Board of Directors is authorized to classify and reclassify any unissued shares of stock into other classes or series of stock, and to cause the issuance of such shares, without obtaining stockholder approval. In addition, as permitted by the Maryland General Corporation Law, but subject to the 1940 Act, our charter provides that the Board of Directors, without any action by our stockholders, may amend the charter from time to time to increase or decrease the aggregate number of shares of stock or the number of shares of stock of any class or series that we have authority to issue. Under Maryland law, our stockholders generally are not personally liable for our debts or obligations.

**Common Stock**

All shares of our common stock have equal rights as to earnings, assets, distributions and voting privileges, except as described below and, when they are issued, will be duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

Distributions may be paid to the holders of our common stock if, as and when authorized by our Board of Directors and declared by us out of assets legally available therefor. Shares of our common stock have no conversion, exchange, preemptive or redemption rights. In the event of a liquidation, dissolution or winding up of Hercules each share of our common stock would be entitled to share ratably in all of our assets that are legally available for distribution after we pay all debts and other liabilities and subject to any preferential rights of holders of our preferred stock, if any preferred stock is outstanding at such time. Each share of our common stock is entitled to one vote on all matters submitted to a vote of stockholders, including the election of directors. Except as provided with respect to any other class or series of stock, the holders of our common stock will possess exclusive voting power. There is no cumulative voting in the election of directors, which means that holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock will elect all of our directors, and holders of less than a majority of such shares will be unable to elect any director.

<b>Title of Class</b>	<b>Amount Authorized</b>	<b>Amount Held by Company for its Account</b>	<b>Amount Outstanding</b>
Common Stock, \$0.001 par value per share	200,000,000		85,446,992

**Preferred Stock**

Our charter authorizes our Board of Directors to classify and reclassify any unissued shares of stock into other classes or series of stock, including preferred stock. Prior to issuance of shares of each class or series, the Board of Directors is required by Maryland law and by our charter to set the terms, preferences, conversion or other rights, voting powers, restrictions, limitations as to dividends or other distributions, qualifications and terms or conditions of

redemption for each class or series. Thus, the Board of Directors could authorize the issuance of shares of preferred stock with terms and conditions which could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a transaction or a change in control that might involve a premium price for holders of our common stock or otherwise be in their best interest. You should note, however, that any issuance of preferred stock must comply with the requirements of the 1940 Act. The 1940 Act requires, among other things, that (1) immediately after issuance and before any dividend or other distribution is made with respect to our common stock and before

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

any purchase of common stock is made, such preferred stock together with all other senior securities must not exceed an amount equal to 50% of our total assets after deducting the amount of such dividend, distribution or purchase price, as the case may be, and (2) the holders of shares of preferred stock, if any are issued, must be entitled as a class to elect two directors at all times and to elect a majority of the directors if distributions on such preferred stock are in arrears by two years or more. Certain matters under the 1940 Act require the separate vote of the holders of any issued and outstanding preferred stock. We believe that the availability for issuance of preferred stock will provide us with increased flexibility in structuring future financings and acquisitions.

**Limitation on Liability of Directors and Officers; Indemnification and Advance of Expenses**

Maryland law permits a Maryland corporation to include in its charter a provision limiting the liability of its directors and officers to the corporation and its stockholders for money damages except for liability resulting from (a) actual receipt of an improper benefit or profit in money, property or services or (b) active and deliberate dishonesty established by a final judgment as being material to the cause of action. Our charter contains such a provision which eliminates directors and officers liability to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law, subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act.

Our charter authorizes us, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law and subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act, to indemnify any present or former director or officer or any individual who, while a director or officer and at our request, serves or has served another corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee, from and against any claim or liability to which such person may become subject or which such person may incur by reason of his or her service in any such capacity, except with respect to any matter as to which such person shall have been finally adjudicated in any proceeding not to have acted in good faith in the reasonable belief that their action was in our best interest or to be liable to us or our stockholders by reason of willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of such person's office. Our charter also provides that, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law, with the approval of our Board of Directors and provided that certain conditions described in our charter are met, we may pay certain expenses incurred by any such indemnified person in advance of the final disposition of a proceeding upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of such indemnified person to repay amounts we have so paid if it is ultimately determined that indemnification of such expenses is not authorized under our charter. Our bylaws obligate us, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law and subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act, to indemnify any present or former director or officer or any individual who, while a director or officer and at our request, serves or has served another corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee and who is made, or threatened to be made, a party to the proceeding by reason of his or her service in any such capacity from and against any claim or liability to which that person may become subject or which that person may incur by reason of his or her service in any such capacity, except with respect to any matter as to which such person shall have been finally adjudicated in any proceeding not to have acted in good faith in the reasonable belief that their action was in our best interest or to be liable to us or our stockholders by reason of willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of such person's office. Our bylaws also provide that, to the maximum extent permitted by Maryland law, with the approval of our Board of Directors and provided that certain conditions described in our bylaws are met, we may pay certain expenses incurred by any such indemnified person in advance of the final disposition of a proceeding upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of such indemnified person to repay amounts we have so paid if it is ultimately determined that indemnification of such expenses is not authorized under our bylaws.

Maryland law requires a corporation (unless its charter provides otherwise, which our charter does not) to indemnify a director or officer who has been successful in the defense of any proceeding to which he or she is made, or threatened to be made, a party by reason of his or her service in that capacity. Maryland law permits a corporation to indemnify its present and former directors and officers, among others, against judgments,

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

penalties, fines, settlements and reasonable expenses actually incurred by them in connection with any proceeding to which they may be made, or threatened to be made, a party by reason of their service in those or other capacities unless it is established that (a) the act or omission of the director or officer was material to the matter giving rise to the proceeding and (1) was committed in bad faith or (2) was the result of active and deliberate dishonesty, (b) the director or officer actually received an improper personal benefit in money, property or services or (c) in the case of any criminal proceeding, the director or officer had reasonable cause to believe that the act or omission was unlawful. However, under Maryland law, a Maryland corporation may not indemnify for an adverse judgment in a suit by or in the right of the corporation or for a judgment of liability on the basis that a personal benefit was improperly received, unless in either case a court orders indemnification, and then only for expenses. In addition, Maryland law permits a corporation to advance reasonable expenses to a director or officer upon the corporation's receipt of (a) a written affirmation by the director or officer of his or her good faith belief that he or she has met the standard of conduct necessary for indemnification by the corporation and (b) a written undertaking by him or her or on his or her behalf to repay the amount paid or reimbursed by the corporation if it is ultimately determined that the standard of conduct was not met.

We currently have in effect a directors' and officers' insurance policy covering our directors and officers and us for any acts and omissions committed, attempted or allegedly committed by any director or officer during the policy period. The policy is subject to customary exclusions.

**Provisions of the Maryland General Corporation Law and Our Charter and Bylaws**

The Maryland General Corporation Law and our charter and bylaws contain provisions that could make it more difficult for a potential acquiror to acquire us by means of a tender offer, proxy contest or otherwise. These provisions are expected to discourage certain coercive takeover practices and inadequate takeover bids and to encourage persons seeking to acquire control of us to negotiate first with our Board of Directors. We believe that the benefits of these provisions outweigh the potential disadvantages of discouraging any such acquisition proposals because, among other things, the negotiation of such proposals may improve their terms.

**Classified Board of Directors**

Our Board of Directors is divided into three classes of directors serving staggered three-year terms. The terms of the first, second and third classes will expire in 2020, 2018 and 2019, respectively. Upon expiration of their current terms, directors of each class are eligible to serve for three-year terms or until their successors are duly elected and qualify. Each year one class of directors will be elected by the stockholders. A classified board may render a change in control or removal of our incumbent management more difficult. We believe, however, that the longer time required to elect a majority of a classified Board of Directors will help to ensure the continuity and stability of our management and policies.

**Election of Directors**

Our charter provides that, except as otherwise provided in the bylaws, the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of stock entitled to vote in the election of directors will be required to elect each director. Our bylaws currently provide that directors are elected by a plurality of the votes cast in the election of directors. Pursuant to our charter and bylaws, our Board of Directors may amend the bylaws to alter the vote required to elect directors.

**Number of Directors; Vacancies; Removal**

Our charter provides that the number of directors will be set only by the Board of Directors in accordance with our bylaws. Our bylaws provide that a majority of our entire Board of Directors may at any time increase or decrease the number of directors. However, unless the bylaws are amended, the number of directors may never



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

be less than one nor more than 12. We have elected to be subject to the provision of Subtitle 8 of Title 3 of the Maryland General Corporation Law, as amended (the Maryland General Corporation Law ), regarding the filling of vacancies on the Board of Directors. Accordingly, at such time, except as may be provided by the Board of Directors in setting the terms of any class or series of preferred stock, any and all vacancies on the Board of Directors may be filled only by the affirmative vote of a majority of the remaining directors in office, even if the remaining directors do not constitute a quorum, and any director elected to fill a vacancy shall serve for the remainder of the full term of the directorship in which the vacancy occurred and until a successor is elected and qualifies, subject to any applicable requirements of the 1940 Act.

Our charter provides that a director may be removed only for cause, as defined in the charter, and then only by the affirmative vote of at least two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast in the election of directors.

**Action by Stockholders**

Under the Maryland General Corporation Law, stockholder action may be taken only at an annual or special meeting of stockholders or by unanimous consent in lieu of a meeting (unless the charter provides for stockholder action by less than unanimous written consent, which our charter does not). These provisions, combined with the requirements of our bylaws regarding the calling of a stockholder-requested special meeting of stockholders discussed below, may have the effect of delaying consideration of a stockholder proposal until the next annual meeting.

**Advance Notice Provisions for Stockholder Nominations and Stockholder Proposals**

Our bylaws provide that with respect to an annual meeting of stockholders, nominations of persons for election to the Board of Directors and the proposal of business to be considered by stockholders may be made only (1) pursuant to our notice of the meeting, (2) by the Board of Directors or (3) by a stockholder who is entitled to vote at the meeting and who has complied with the advance notice procedures of the bylaws. With respect to special meetings of stockholders, only the business specified in our notice of the meeting may be brought before the meeting. Nominations of persons for election to the Board of Directors at a special meeting may be made only (1) pursuant to our notice of the meeting, (2) by the Board of Directors or (3) provided that the Board of Directors has determined that directors will be elected at the meeting, by a stockholder who is entitled to vote at the meeting and who has complied with the advance notice provisions of the bylaws.

The purpose of requiring stockholders to give us advance notice of nominations and other business is to afford our Board of Directors a meaningful opportunity to consider the qualifications of the proposed nominees and the advisability of any other proposed business and, to the extent deemed necessary or desirable by our Board of Directors, to inform stockholders and make recommendations about such qualifications or business, as well as to provide a more orderly procedure for conducting meetings of stockholders. Although our bylaws do not give our Board of Directors any power to disapprove stockholder nominations for the election of directors or proposals recommending certain action, they may have the effect of precluding a contest for the election of directors or the consideration of stockholder proposals if proper procedures are not followed and of discouraging or deterring a third party from conducting a solicitation of proxies to elect its own slate of directors or to approve its own proposal without regard to whether consideration of such nominees or proposals might be harmful or beneficial to us and our stockholders.

**Calling of Special Meeting of Stockholders**

Our bylaws provide that special meetings of stockholders may be called by our Board of Directors and certain of our officers. Additionally, our bylaws provide that, subject to the satisfaction of certain procedural and informational requirements by the stockholders requesting the meeting, a special meeting of stockholders shall be called by our secretary upon the written request of stockholders entitled to cast not less than a majority of all of the votes entitled to be cast at such meeting.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**Approval of Extraordinary Corporate Action; Amendment of Charter and Bylaws**

Under Maryland law, a Maryland corporation generally cannot dissolve, amend its charter, merge, sell all or substantially all of its assets, engage in a share exchange or engage in similar transactions outside the ordinary course of business, unless approved by the affirmative vote of stockholders entitled to cast at least two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter. However, a Maryland corporation may provide in its charter for approval of these matters by a lesser percentage, but not less than a majority of all of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter. Our charter generally provides for approval of charter amendments and extraordinary transactions by the stockholders entitled to cast at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter. Our charter also provides that certain charter amendments and any proposal for our conversion, whether by merger or otherwise, from a closed-end company to an open-end company or any proposal for our liquidation or dissolution requires the approval of the stockholders entitled to cast at least 75% of the votes entitled to be cast on such matter. However, if such amendment or proposal is approved by at least 75% of our continuing directors (in addition to approval by our Board of Directors), such amendment or proposal may be approved by the stockholders entitled to cast a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on such a matter. The continuing directors are defined in our charter as our current directors, as well as those directors whose nomination for election by the stockholders or whose election by the directors to fill vacancies is approved by a majority of the continuing directors then on the Board of Directors.

Our charter and bylaws provide that the Board of Directors will have the exclusive power to make, alter, amend or repeal any provision of our bylaws.

**No Appraisal Rights**

Except with respect to appraisal rights arising in connection with the Control Share Act discussed below, as permitted by the Maryland General Corporation Law, our charter provides that stockholders will not be entitled to exercise appraisal rights.

**Control Share Acquisitions**

The Maryland Control Share Acquisition Act (the Control Share Act ) provides that control shares of a Maryland corporation acquired in a control share acquisition have no voting rights except to the extent approved by a vote of two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter. Shares owned by the acquiror, by officers or by directors who are employees of the corporation are excluded from shares entitled to vote on the matter. Control shares are voting shares of stock which, if aggregated with all other shares of stock owned by the acquiror or in respect of which the acquiror is able to exercise or direct the exercise of voting power (except solely by virtue of a revocable proxy), would entitle the acquiror to exercise voting power in electing directors within one of the following ranges of voting power:

one-tenth or more but less than one-third;

one-third or more but less than a majority; or

a majority or more of all voting power.

The requisite stockholder approval must be obtained each time an acquiror crosses one of the thresholds of voting power set forth above. Control shares do not include shares the acquiring person is then entitled to vote as a result of having previously obtained stockholder approval. A control share acquisition means the acquisition of control shares, subject to certain exceptions.

A person who has made or proposes to make a control share acquisition may compel the Board of Directors of the corporation to call a special meeting of stockholders to be held within 50 days of demand to consider the voting rights of the shares. The right to compel the calling of a special meeting is subject to the satisfaction of certain conditions, including an undertaking to pay the expenses of the meeting. If no request for a meeting is made, the corporation may itself present the question at any stockholders meeting.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

If voting rights are not approved at the meeting or if the acquiring person does not deliver an acquiring person statement as required by the statute, then the corporation may repurchase for fair value any or all of the control shares, except those for which voting rights have previously been approved. The right of the corporation to repurchase control shares is subject to certain conditions and limitations. Fair value is determined, without regard to the absence of voting rights for the control shares, as of the date of the last control share acquisition by the acquiror or of any meeting of stockholders at which the voting rights of the shares are considered and not approved. If voting rights for control shares are approved at a stockholders meeting and the acquiror becomes entitled to vote a majority of the shares entitled to vote, all other stockholders may exercise appraisal rights. The fair value of the shares as determined for purposes of appraisal rights may not be less than the highest price per share paid by the acquiror in the control share acquisition.

The Control Share Act does not apply (a) to shares acquired in a merger, consolidation or share exchange if the corporation is a party to the transaction or (b) to acquisitions approved or exempted by the charter or bylaws of the corporation.

Our bylaws contain a provision exempting from the Control Share Act any and all acquisitions by any person of our shares of stock.

**Business Combinations**

Under the Maryland Business Combination Act (the Business Combination Act ), business combinations between a Maryland corporation and an interested stockholder or an affiliate of an interested stockholder are prohibited for five years after the most recent date on which the interested stockholder becomes an interested stockholder. These business combinations include a merger, consolidation, share exchange or, in circumstances specified in the statute, an asset transfer or issuance or reclassification of equity securities. An interested stockholder is defined as:

any person who beneficially owns 10% or more of the voting power of the corporation s shares; or

an affiliate or associate of the corporation who, at any time within the two-year period prior to the date in question, was the beneficial owner of 10% or more of the voting power of the then outstanding voting stock of the corporation.

A person is not an interested stockholder under this statute if the Board of Directors approved in advance the transaction by which such stockholder otherwise would have become an interested stockholder. However, in approving a transaction, the Board of Directors may provide that its approval is subject to compliance, at or after the time of approval, with any terms and conditions determined by the board.

After the 5-year prohibition, any business combination between the Maryland corporation and an interested stockholder generally must be recommended by the Board of Directors of the corporation and approved by the affirmative vote of at least:

80% of the votes entitled to be cast by holders of outstanding shares of voting stock of the corporation; and

two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast by holders of voting stock of the corporation other than shares held by the interested stockholder with whom or with whose affiliate the business combination is to be effected or held by an affiliate or associate of the interested stockholder.

These super-majority vote requirements do not apply if the corporation's common stockholders receive a minimum price, as defined under Maryland law, for their shares in the form of cash or other consideration in the same form as previously paid by the interested stockholder for its shares.

The statute permits various exemptions from its provisions, including business combinations that are exempted by the Board of Directors before the time that the interested stockholder becomes an interested

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

stockholder. Our Board of Directors has adopted a resolution exempting any business combination between us and any other person from the provisions of the Business Combination Act, provided that the business combination is first approved by the Board of Directors, including a majority of the directors who are not interested persons as defined in the 1940 Act.

**Conflict with 1940 Act**

Our bylaws provide that, if and to the extent that any provision of the Maryland General Corporation Law, or any provision of our charter or bylaws conflicts with any provision of the 1940 Act, the applicable provision of the 1940 Act will control.

**Regulatory Restrictions**

Our wholly-owned subsidiaries, HT II and HT III, have obtained SBIC licenses. The SBA prohibits, without prior SBA approval, a change of control or transfers which would result in any person (or group of persons acting in concert) owning 10% or more of any class of capital stock of a SBIC. A change of control is any event which would result in a transfer of the power, direct or indirect, to direct the management and policies of a SBIC, whether through ownership, contractual arrangements or otherwise.

Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**DESCRIPTION OF OUR PREFERRED STOCK**

In addition to shares of common stock, our charter authorizes the issuance of preferred stock. We may issue preferred stock from time to time in one or more classes or series, without stockholder approval. If we offer preferred stock under this prospectus we will issue an appropriate prospectus supplement. Prior to issuance of shares of each class or series, our Board of Directors is required by Maryland law and by our charter to set the terms, preferences, conversion or other rights, voting powers, restrictions, limitations as to dividends or other distributions, qualifications and terms or conditions of redemption for each class or series. Thus, the Board of Directors could authorize the issuance of shares of preferred stock with terms and conditions that could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a transaction or a change in control that might involve a premium price for holders of our common stock or otherwise be in their best interest. You should note, however, that any such an issuance must adhere to the requirements of the 1940 Act, Maryland law and any other limitations imposed by law.

The following is a general description of the terms of the preferred stock we may issue from time to time. Particular terms of any preferred stock we offer will be described in the prospectus supplement accompanying each preferred share offering.

The 1940 Act requires, among other things, that (i) immediately after issuance and before any dividend or other distribution is made with respect to our common stock and before any purchase of common stock is made, such preferred stock together with all other senior securities must not exceed an amount equal to 50% of our total assets after deducting the amount of such dividend, distribution or purchase price, as the case may be, (ii) the holders of shares of preferred stock, if any are issued, must be entitled as a class to elect two directors at all times and to elect a majority of the directors if dividends or other distribution on the preferred stock are in arrears by two years or more, and (iii) such shares be cumulative as to distributions and have a complete preference over our common stock to payment of their liquidation in event of dissolution. Some matters under the 1940 Act require the separate vote of the holders of any issued and outstanding preferred stock. For example, holders of preferred stock would vote separately from the holders of common stock on a proposal to cease operations as a business development company. We believe that the availability for issuance of preferred stock will provide us with increased flexibility in structuring future financings and acquisitions.

For any series of preferred stock that we may issue, our Board of Directors will determine and the articles supplementary and the prospectus supplement relating to such series will describe:

the designation and number of shares of such series;

the rate and time at which, and the preferences and conditions under which, any dividends or other distributions will be paid on shares of such series, as well as whether such dividends or other distributions are participating or non-participating;

any provisions relating to convertibility or exchangeability of the shares of such series, including adjustments to the conversion price of such series;



Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

the rights and preferences, if any, of holders of shares of such series upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up of our affairs;

the voting powers, if any, of the holders of shares of such series;

any provisions relating to the redemption of the shares of such series;

any limitations on our ability to pay dividends or make distributions on, or acquire or redeem, other securities while shares of such series are outstanding;

any conditions or restrictions on our ability to issue additional shares of such series or other securities;

if applicable, a discussion of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations; and

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

any other relative powers, preferences and participating, optional or special rights of shares of such series, and the qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof.

All shares of preferred stock that we may issue will be identical and of equal rank except as to the particular terms thereof that may be fixed by our Board of Directors, and all shares of each series of preferred stock will be identical and of equal rank except as to the dates from which dividends or other distributions, if any, thereon will be cumulative. To the extent we issue preferred stock, the payment of distributions to holders of our preferred stock will take priority over payment of distributions to our common stockholders.

Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**DESCRIPTION OF OUR SUBSCRIPTION RIGHTS**

The following is a general description of the terms of the subscription rights we may issue from time to time. Particular terms of any subscription rights we offer will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to such subscription rights.

We may issue subscription rights to our stockholders to purchase common stock. Subscription rights may be issued independently or together with any other offered security and may or may not be transferable by the person purchasing or receiving the subscription rights. In connection with a subscription rights offering to our stockholders, we would distribute certificates evidencing the subscription rights and a prospectus supplement to our stockholders on the record date that we set for receiving subscription rights in such subscription rights offering.

Our stockholders will indirectly bear all of the expenses of the subscription rights offering, regardless of whether our stockholders exercise any subscription rights.

A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any subscription rights we may issue, including the following:

the period of time the offering would remain open (which shall be open a minimum number of days such that all record holders would be eligible to participate in the offering and shall not be open longer than 120 days);

the title and aggregate number of such subscription rights;

the exercise price for such subscription rights (or method of calculation thereof);

the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which the price of such subscription rights may be payable;

if applicable, the designation and terms of the securities with which the subscription rights are issued and the number of subscription rights issued with each such security or each principal amount of such security;

the ratio of the offering (which, in the case of transferable rights, will require a minimum of three shares to be held of record before a person is entitled to purchase an additional share);

the number of such subscription rights issued to each stockholder;

the extent to which such subscription rights are transferable and the market on which they may be traded if they are transferable;

the date on which the right to exercise such subscription rights shall commence, and the date on which such right shall expire (subject to any extension);

if applicable, the minimum or maximum number of subscription rights that may be exercised at one time;

the extent to which such subscription rights include an over-subscription privilege with respect to unsubscribed securities and the terms of such over-subscription privilege;

any termination right we may have in connection with such subscription rights offering;

the terms of any rights to redeem, or call such subscription rights;

information with respect to book-entry procedures, if any;

the terms of the securities issuable upon exercise of the subscription rights;

the material terms of any standby underwriting, backstop or other purchase arrangement that we may enter into in connection with the subscription rights offering;

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

if applicable, a discussion of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to the issuance or exercise of such subscription rights; and

any other terms of such subscription rights, including exercise, settlement and other procedures and limitations relating to the transfer and exercise of such subscription rights.

Each subscription right will entitle the holder of the subscription right to purchase for cash or other consideration such amount of shares of common stock at such subscription price as shall in each case be set forth in, or be determinable as set forth in, the prospectus supplement relating to the subscription rights offered thereby. Subscription rights may be exercised as set forth in the prospectus supplement beginning on the date specified therein and continuing until the close of business on the expiration date for such subscription rights set forth in the prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, all unexercised subscription rights will become void.

Upon receipt of payment and the subscription rights certificate properly completed and duly executed at the corporate trust office of the subscription rights agent or any other office indicated in the prospectus supplement we will forward, as soon as practicable, the shares of common stock purchasable upon such exercise. If less than all of the rights represented by such subscription rights certificate are exercised, a new subscription certificate will be issued for the remaining rights. Prior to exercising their subscription rights, holders of subscription rights will not have any of the rights of holders of the securities purchasable upon such exercise. To the extent permissible under applicable law, we may determine to offer any unsubscribed offered securities directly to persons other than stockholders, to or through agents, underwriters or dealers or through a combination of such methods, as set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Under the 1940 Act, we may generally only offer subscription rights (other than rights to subscribe expiring not later than 120 days after their issuance and issued exclusively and ratably to a class or classes of our security holders) on the condition that (1) the subscription rights expire by their terms within ten years; (2) the exercise price is not less than the current market value at the date of issuance; (3) our stockholders authorize the proposal to issue such subscription rights, and a required majority of our Board of Directors approves of such issuance on the basis that the issuance is in the best interests of the Company and our stockholders; and (4) if the subscription rights are accompanied by other securities, the subscription rights are not separately transferable unless no class of such subscription rights and the securities accompanying them has been publicly distributed. A required majority of our Board of Directors is a vote of both a majority of our directors who have no financial interest in the transaction and a majority of the directors who are not interested persons of the company. The 1940 Act also provides that the amount of our voting securities that would result from the exercise of all outstanding warrants, options and subscription rights at the time of issuance may not exceed 25% of our outstanding voting securities.

For information regarding the dilutive impact of rights offerings, please see [Risk Factors](#) [Risks Related to Our Securities](#). Your interest in us may be diluted if you do not fully exercise your subscription rights in any rights offering. In addition, if the subscription price is less than our NAV per share, then you will experience an immediate dilution of the aggregate NAV of your shares.

Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS**

The following is a general description of the terms of the warrants we may issue from time to time. Particular terms of any warrants we offer will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to such warrants and will be subject to compliance with the 1940 Act.

We may issue warrants to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities. Such warrants may be issued independently or together with shares of common stock, preferred stock or debt securities and may be attached or separate from such securities. We will issue each series of warrants under a separate warrant agreement to be entered into between us and a warrant agent. The warrant agent will act solely as our agent and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency for or with holders or beneficial owners of warrants.

A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any series of warrants we may issue, including the following:

the title and aggregate number of such warrants;

the price or prices at which such warrants will be issued;

the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which the price of such warrants may be payable;

if applicable, the designation and terms of the securities with which the warrants are issued and the number of warrants issued with each such security or each principal amount of such security;

in the case of warrants to purchase debt securities, the principal amount of debt securities purchasable upon exercise of one warrant and the price at which and the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which this principal amount of debt securities may be purchased upon such exercise;

in the case of warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock, the number of shares of common stock or preferred stock, as the case may be, purchasable upon exercise of one warrant and the price at which and the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which these shares may be purchased upon such exercise;

the date on which the right to exercise such warrants shall commence and the date on which such right will expire (subject to any extension);

whether such warrants will be issued in registered form or bearer form;

if applicable, the minimum or maximum amount of such warrants that may be exercised at any one time;

if applicable, the date on and after which such warrants and the related securities will be separately transferable;

the terms of any rights to redeem, or call such warrants;

information with respect to book-entry procedures, if any;

the terms of the securities issuable upon exercise of the warrants;

if applicable, a discussion of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations; and

any other terms of such warrants, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of such warrants.

We and the warrant agent may amend or supplement the warrant agreement for a series of warrants without the consent of the holders of the warrants issued thereunder to effect changes that are not inconsistent with the provisions of the warrants and that do not materially and adversely affect the interests of the holders of the warrants.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Each warrant will entitle the holder to purchase for cash such common stock or preferred stock at the exercise price or such principal amount of debt securities as shall in each case be set forth in, or be determinable as set forth in, the prospectus supplement relating to the warrants offered thereby. Warrants may be exercised as set forth in the prospectus supplement beginning on the date specified therein and continuing until the close of business on the expiration date set forth in the prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, unexercised warrants will become void.

Upon receipt of payment and a warrant certificate properly completed and duly executed at the corporate trust office of the warrant agent or any other office indicated in the prospectus supplement, we will, as soon as practicable, forward the securities purchasable upon such exercise. If less than all of the warrants represented by such warrant certificate are exercised, a new warrant certificate will be issued for the remaining warrants. If we so indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, holders of the warrants may surrender securities as all or part of the exercise price for warrants.

Prior to exercising their warrants, holders of warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of the securities purchasable upon such exercise, including, in the case of warrants to purchase debt securities, the right to receive principal, premium, if any, or interest payments, on the debt securities purchasable upon exercise or to enforce covenants in the applicable indenture or, in the case of warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock, the right to receive dividends or other distributions, if any, or payments upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up or to exercise any voting rights.

Under the 1940 Act, we may generally only offer warrants provided that (i) the warrants expire by their terms within ten years, (ii) the exercise or conversion price is not less than the current market value at the date of issuance, (iii) our stockholders authorize the proposal to issue such warrants, and our Board of Directors approves such issuance on the basis that the issuance is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders and (iv) if the warrants are accompanied by other securities, the warrants are not separately transferable unless no class of such warrants and the securities accompanying them has been publicly distributed. The 1940 Act also provides that the amount of our voting securities that would result from the exercise of all outstanding warrants, as well as options and rights, at the time of issuance may not exceed 25% of our outstanding voting securities.



Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**DESCRIPTION OF OUR DEBT SECURITIES**

We may issue debt securities in one or more series. The specific terms of each series of debt securities will be described in this prospectus and in the particular prospectus supplement relating to that series. The prospectus supplement may or may not modify the general terms found in this prospectus and will be filed with the SEC. For a complete description of the terms of a particular series of debt securities, including any supplemental indenture, you should read both this prospectus and the prospectus supplement relating to that particular series.

As required by federal law for all bonds and notes of companies that are publicly offered, the debt securities are governed by a document called an indenture. An indenture is a contract between us and U.S. Bank National Association, a financial institution acting as trustee on your behalf, and is subject to and governed by the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended. The trustee has two main roles. First, the trustee can enforce your rights against us if we default. There are some limitations on the extent to which the trustee acts on your behalf, described in the second paragraph under **Events of Default Remedies if an Event of Default Occurs**. Second, the trustee performs certain administrative duties for us.

Because this section is a summary, it does not describe every aspect of the debt securities and the indenture. The following description summarizes the material provisions of the indenture. We urge you to read the indenture because it, and not this description, defines your rights as a holder of debt securities. For example, in this section, we use capitalized words to signify terms that are specifically defined in the indenture. We have filed the form of the indenture with the SEC. See **Available Information** for information on how to obtain a copy of the indenture.

A prospectus supplement, which will accompany this prospectus, will describe the particular terms of any series of debt securities being offered, including the following:

the designation or title of the series of debt securities;

the total principal amount of the series of debt securities;

the percentage of the principal amount at which the series of debt securities will be offered;

the date or dates on which principal will be payable;

the rate or rates (which may be either fixed or variable) and/or the method of determining such rate or rates of interest, if any;

the date or dates from which any interest will accrue, or the method of determining such date or dates, and the date or dates on which any interest will be payable;

the terms for redemption, extension or early repayment, if any;

the currencies in which the series of debt securities are issued and payable;

whether the amount of payments of principal, premium or interest, if any, on a series of debt securities will be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method (which could be based on one or more currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices) and how these amounts will be determined;

the place or places, if any, other than or in addition to the City of New York, of payment, transfer, conversion and/or exchange of the debt securities;

the denominations in which the offered debt securities will be issued;

the provision for any sinking fund;

any restrictive covenants;

any Events of Default;

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

whether the series of debt securities are issuable in certificated form;

any provisions for defeasance or covenant defeasance;

if applicable, U.S. federal income tax considerations relating to OID;

whether and under what circumstances we will pay additional amounts in respect of any tax, assessment or governmental charge and, if so, whether we will have the option to redeem the debt securities rather than pay the additional amounts (and the terms of this option);

any provisions for convertibility or exchangeability of the debt securities into or for any other securities;

whether the debt securities are subject to subordination and the terms of such subordination;

the listing, if any, on a securities exchange; and

any other terms.

The debt securities may be secured or unsecured obligations. Unless the prospectus supplement states otherwise, principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, will be paid by us in immediately available funds.

We are permitted, under specified conditions, to issue multiple classes of indebtedness if our asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, is at least equal to 200% (or 150%, subject to certain approval and disclosure requirements) immediately after each such issuance. In addition, while any indebtedness and other senior securities remain outstanding, we must make provisions to prohibit any distribution to our stockholders or the repurchase of such securities or shares unless we meet the applicable asset coverage ratios at the time of the distribution or repurchase. We may also borrow amounts up to 5% of the value of our total assets for temporary or emergency purposes without regard to asset coverage. For a discussion of the risks associated with leverage, see Risk Factors Risks Related to Our Business Structure.

**General**

The indenture provides that any debt securities proposed to be sold under this prospectus and the attached prospectus supplement ( offered debt securities ) and any debt securities issuable upon the exercise of warrants or upon conversion or exchange of other offered securities ( underlying debt securities ), may be issued under the indenture in one or more series.

For purposes of this prospectus, any reference to the payment of principal of or premium or interest, if any, on debt securities will include additional amounts if required by the terms of the debt securities.

The indenture does not limit the amount of debt securities that may be issued thereunder from time to time. Debt securities issued under the indenture, when a single trustee is acting for all debt securities issued under the indenture, are called the indenture securities. The indenture also provides that there may be more than one trustee thereunder, each with respect to one or more different series of indenture securities. See Resignation of Trustee section below. At a time when two or more trustees are acting under the indenture, each with respect to only certain series, the term indenture securities means the one or more series of debt securities with respect to which each respective trustee is acting. In the event that there is more than one trustee under the indenture, the powers and trust obligations of each trustee described in this prospectus will extend only to the one or more series of indenture securities for which it is trustee. If two or more trustees are acting under the indenture, then the indenture securities for which each trustee is acting would be treated as if issued under separate indentures.

We refer you to the prospectus supplement for information with respect to any deletions from, modifications of or additions to the Events of Default or our covenants that are described below, including any addition of a covenant or other provision providing event risk or similar protection.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Index to Financial Statements**

We have the ability to issue indenture securities with terms different from those of indenture securities previously issued and, without the consent of the holders thereof, to reopen a previous issue of a series of indenture securities and issue additional indenture securities of that series unless the reopening was restricted when that series was created.

### **Conversion and Exchange**

If any debt securities are convertible into or exchangeable for other securities, the prospectus supplement will explain the terms and conditions of the conversion or exchange, including the conversion price or exchange ratio (or the calculation method), the conversion or exchange period (or how the period will be determined), if conversion or exchange will be mandatory or at the option of the holder or us, provisions for adjusting the conversion price or the exchange ratio and provisions affecting conversion or exchange in the event of the redemption of the underlying debt securities. These terms may also include provisions under which the number or amount of other securities to be received by the holders of the debt securities upon conversion or exchange would be calculated according to the market price of the other securities as of a time stated in the prospectus supplement.

### **Issuance of Securities in Registered Form**

We may issue the debt securities in registered form, in which case we may issue them either in book-entry form only or in certificated form. Debt securities issued in book-entry form will be represented by global securities. We expect that we will usually issue debt securities in book-entry only form represented by global securities.

### ***Book-Entry Holders***

We will issue registered debt securities in book-entry form only, unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement. This means debt securities will be represented by one or more global securities registered in the name of a depositary that will hold them on behalf of financial institutions that participate in the depositary's book-entry system. These participating institutions, in turn, hold beneficial interests in the debt securities held by the depositary or its nominee. These institutions may hold these interests on behalf of themselves or customers.

Under the indenture, only the person in whose name a debt security is registered is recognized as the holder of that debt security. Consequently, for debt securities issued in book-entry form, we will recognize only the depositary as the holder of the debt securities and we will make all payments on the debt securities to the depositary. The depositary will then pass along the payments it receives to its participants, which in turn will pass the payments along to their customers who are the beneficial owners. The depositary and its participants do so under agreements they have made with one another or with their customers; they are not obligated to do so under the terms of the debt securities.

As a result, investors will not own debt securities directly. Instead, they will own beneficial interests in a global security, through a bank, broker or other financial institution that participates in the depositary's book-entry system or holds an interest through a participant. As long as the debt securities are represented by one or more global securities, investors will be indirect holders, and not holders, of the debt securities.

### ***Street Name Holders***

In the future, we may issue debt securities in certificated form or terminate a global security. In these cases, investors may choose to hold their debt securities in their own names or in street name. Debt securities held in street name are registered in the name of a bank, broker or other financial institution chosen by the investor, and the investor would

hold a beneficial interest in those debt securities through the account he or she maintains at that institution.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

For debt securities held in street name, we will recognize only the intermediary banks, brokers and other financial institutions in whose names the debt securities are registered as the holders of those debt securities and we will make all payments on those debt securities to them. These institutions will pass along the payments they receive to their customers who are the beneficial owners, but only because they agree to do so in their customer agreements or because they are legally required to do so. Investors who hold debt securities in street name will be indirect holders, and not holders, of the debt securities.

**Legal Holders**

Our obligations, as well as the obligations of the applicable trustee and those of any third parties employed by us or the applicable trustee, run only to the legal holders of the debt securities. We do not have obligations to investors who hold beneficial interests in global securities, in street name or by any other indirect means. This will be the case whether an investor chooses to be an indirect holder of a debt security or has no choice because we are issuing the debt securities only in book-entry form.

For example, once we make a payment or give a notice to the holder, we have no further responsibility for the payment or notice even if that holder is required, under agreements with depository participants or customers or by law, to pass it along to the indirect holders but does not do so. Similarly, if we want to obtain the approval of the holders for any purpose (for example, to amend an indenture or to relieve us of the consequences of a default or of our obligation to comply with a particular provision of an indenture), we would seek the approval only from the holders, and not the indirect holders, of the debt securities. Whether and how the holders contact the indirect holders is up to the holders.

When we refer to you, we mean those who invest in the debt securities being offered by this prospectus, whether they are the holders or only indirect holders of those debt securities. When we refer to your debt securities, we mean the debt securities in which you hold a direct or indirect interest.

***Special Considerations for Indirect Holders***

If you hold debt securities through a bank, broker or other financial institution, either in book-entry form or in street name, we urge you to check with that institution to find out:

how it handles securities payments and notices,

whether it imposes fees or charges,

how it would handle a request for the holders' consent, if ever required,

whether and how you can instruct it to send you debt securities registered in your own name so you can be a holder, if that is permitted in the future for a particular series of debt securities,

how it would exercise rights under the debt securities if there were a default or other event triggering the need for holders to act to protect their interests, and

if the debt securities are in book-entry form, how the depositary's rules and procedures will affect these matters.

**Global Securities**

As noted above, we usually will issue debt securities as registered securities in book-entry form only. A global security represents one or any other number of individual debt securities. Generally, all debt securities represented by the same global securities will have the same terms.

Each debt security issued in book-entry form will be represented by a global security that we deposit with and register in the name of a financial institution or its nominee that we select. The financial institution that we



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

select for this purpose is called the depository. Unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, known as DTC, will be the depository for all debt securities issued in book-entry form.

A global security may not be transferred to or registered in the name of anyone other than the depository or its nominee, unless special termination situations arise. We describe those situations below under *Special Situations when a Global Security Will Be Terminated*. As a result of these arrangements, the depository, or its nominee, will be the sole registered owner and holder of all debt securities represented by a global security, and investors will be permitted to own only beneficial interests in a global security. Beneficial interests must be held by means of an account with a broker, bank or other financial institution that in turn has an account with the depository or with another institution that has an account with the depository. Thus, an investor whose security is represented by a global security will not be a holder of the debt security, but only an indirect holder of a beneficial interest in the global security.

***Special Considerations for Global Securities***

As an indirect holder, an investor's rights relating to a global security will be governed by the account rules of the investor's financial institution and of the depository, as well as general laws relating to securities transfers. The depository that holds the global security will be considered the holder of the debt securities represented by the global security.

If debt securities are issued only in the form of a global security, an investor should be aware of the following:

An investor cannot cause the debt securities to be registered in his or her name, and cannot obtain certificates for his or her interest in the debt securities, except in the special situations we describe below.

An investor will be an indirect holder and must look to his or her own bank or broker for payments on the debt securities and protection of his or her legal rights relating to the debt securities, as we describe under *Issuance of Securities in Registered Form* above.

An investor may not be able to sell interests in the debt securities to some insurance companies and other institutions that are required by law to own their securities in non-book-entry form.

An investor may not be able to pledge his or her interest in a global security in circumstances where certificates representing the debt securities must be delivered to the lender or other beneficiary of the pledge in order for the pledge to be effective.

The depository's policies, which may change from time to time, will govern payments, transfers, exchanges and other matters relating to an investor's interest in a global security. We and the trustee have no responsibility for any aspect of the depository's actions or for its records of ownership interests in a global

security. We and the trustee also do not supervise the depositary in any way.

If we redeem less than all the debt securities of a particular series being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount to be redeemed from each of its participants holding that series.

An investor is required to give notice of exercise of any option to elect repayment of its debt securities, through its participant, to the applicable trustee and to deliver the related debt securities by causing its participant to transfer its interest in those debt securities, on DTC's records, to the applicable trustee.

DTC requires that those who purchase and sell interests in a global security deposited in its book-entry system use immediately available funds. Your broker or bank may also require you to use immediately available funds when purchasing or selling interests in a global security.

Financial institutions that participate in the depositary's book-entry system, and through which an investor holds its interest in a global security, may also have their own policies affecting payments,

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

notices and other matters relating to the debt securities. There may be more than one financial intermediary in the chain of ownership for an investor. We do not monitor and are not responsible for the actions of any of those intermediaries.

***Special Situations when a Global Security will be Terminated***

In a few special situations described below, a global security will be terminated and interests in it will be exchanged for certificates in non-book-entry form (certificated securities). After that exchange, the choice of whether to hold the certificated debt securities directly or in street name will be up to the investor. Investors must consult their own banks or brokers to find out how to have their interests in a global security transferred on termination to their own names, so that they will be holders. We have described the rights of legal holders and street name investors under Issuance of Securities in Registered Form above.

The prospectus supplement may list situations for terminating a global security that would apply only to the particular series of debt securities covered by the prospectus supplement. If a global security is terminated, only the depository, and not we or the applicable trustee, is responsible for deciding the names of the institutions in whose names the debt securities represented by the global security will be registered and, therefore, who will be the holders of those debt securities.

**Payment and Paying Agents**

We will pay interest to the person listed in the applicable trustee's records as the owner of the debt security at the close of business on a particular day in advance of each due date for interest, even if that person no longer owns the debt security on the interest due date. That day, often approximately two weeks in advance of the interest due date, is called the record date. Because we will pay all the interest for an interest period to the holders on the record date, holders buying and selling debt securities must work out between themselves the appropriate purchase price. The most common manner is to adjust the sales price of the debt securities to prorate interest fairly between buyer and seller based on their respective ownership periods within the particular interest period. This prorated interest amount is called accrued interest.

***Payments on Global Securities***

We will make payments on a global security in accordance with the applicable policies of the depository as in effect from time to time. Under those policies, we will make payments directly to the depository, or its nominee, and not to any indirect holders who own beneficial interests in the global security. An indirect holder's right to those payments will be governed by the rules and practices of the depository and its participants.

***Payments on Certificated Securities***

We will make payments on a certificated debt security as follows. We will pay interest that is due on an interest payment date by check mailed on the interest payment date to the holder at his or her address shown on the trustee's records as of the close of business on the regular record date. We will make all payments of principal and premium, if any, by check at the office of the applicable trustee in New York, New York and/or at other offices that may be specified in the prospectus supplement or in a notice to holders against surrender of the debt security.

Alternatively, if the holder asks us to do so, we will pay any amount that becomes due on the debt security by wire transfer of immediately available funds to an account at a bank in New York City, on the due date. To request

payment by wire, the holder must give the applicable trustee or other paying agent appropriate transfer instructions at least 15 business days before the requested wire payment is due. In the case of any interest payment due on an interest payment date, the instructions must be given by the person who is the holder on the relevant regular record date. Any wire instructions, once properly given, will remain in effect unless and until new instructions are given in the manner described above.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Payment when Offices are Closed***

If any payment is due on a debt security on a day that is not a business day, we will make the payment on the next day that is a business day. Payments made on the next business day in this situation will be treated under the indenture as if they were made on the original due date, except as otherwise indicated in the attached prospectus supplement. Such payment will not result in a default under any debt security or the indenture, and no interest will accrue on the payment amount from the original due date to the next day that is a business day.

**Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how they will receive payments on their debt securities.**

**Events of Default**

You will have rights if an Event of Default occurs in respect of the debt securities of your series and is not cured, as described later in this subsection.

The term **Event of Default** in respect of the debt securities of your series means any of the following (unless the prospectus supplement relating to such debt securities states otherwise):

we do not pay the principal of, or any premium on, a debt security of the series on its due date, and do not cure this default within five days;

we do not pay interest on a debt security of the series when due, and such default is not cured within 30 days;

we do not deposit any sinking fund payment in respect of debt securities of the series on its due date, and do not cure this default within five days;

we remain in breach of a covenant in respect of debt securities of the series for 60 days after we receive a written notice of default stating we are in breach. The notice must be sent by either the trustee or holders of at least 25% of the principal amount of debt securities of the series;

we file for bankruptcy or certain other events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization occur and remain undischarged or unstayed for a period of 60 days;

on the last business day of each of 24 consecutive calendar months, we have an asset coverage of less than 100%; and

any other Event of Default in respect of debt securities of the series described in the applicable prospectus supplement occurs.

An Event of Default for a particular series of debt securities does not necessarily constitute an Event of Default for any other series of debt securities issued under the same or any other indenture. The trustee may withhold notice to the holders of debt securities of any default, except in the payment of principal, premium or interest, if it considers the withholding of notice to be in the best interests of the holders.

***Remedies if an Event of Default Occurs***

If an Event of Default has occurred and has not been cured, the trustee or the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the debt securities of the affected series may declare the entire principal amount of all the debt securities of that series to be due and immediately payable. This is called a declaration of acceleration of maturity. In certain circumstances, a declaration of acceleration of maturity may be canceled by the holders of a majority in principal amount of the debt securities of the affected series.

The trustee is not required to take any action under the indenture at the request of any holders unless the holders offer the trustee reasonable protection from expenses and liability (called an indemnity). If reasonable

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

indemnity is provided, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the relevant series may direct the time, method and place of conducting any lawsuit or other formal legal action seeking any remedy available to the trustee. The trustee may refuse to follow those directions in certain circumstances. No delay or omission in exercising any right or remedy will be treated as a waiver of that right, remedy or Event of Default.

Before you are allowed to bypass your trustee and bring your own lawsuit or other formal legal action or take other steps to enforce your rights or protect your interests relating to the debt securities, the following must occur:

the holder must give your trustee written notice that an Event of Default has occurred and remains uncured;

the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of all outstanding debt securities of the relevant series must make a written request that the trustee take action because of the default and must offer reasonable indemnity to the trustee against the cost and other liabilities of taking that action;

the trustee must not have taken action for 60 days after receipt of the above notice and offer of indemnity;  
and

the holders of a majority in principal amount of the debt securities must not have given the trustee a direction inconsistent with the above notice during that 60 day period.

However, you are entitled at any time to bring a lawsuit for the payment of money due on your debt securities on or after the due date.

Holders of a majority in principal amount of the debt securities of the affected series may waive any past defaults other than:

the payment of principal, any premium or interest; or

in respect of a covenant that cannot be modified or amended without the consent of each holder.

**Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how to give notice or direction to or make a request of the trustee and how to declare or cancel an acceleration of maturity.**

Each year, we will furnish to each trustee a written statement of certain of our officers certifying that to their knowledge we are in compliance with the indenture and the debt securities, or else specifying any default.

**Merger or Consolidation**

Under the terms of the indenture, we are generally permitted to consolidate or merge with another entity. We may also be permitted to sell all or substantially all of our assets to another entity. However, unless the prospectus supplement

relating to certain debt securities states otherwise, we may not take any of these actions unless all the following conditions are met:

where we merge out of existence or sell our assets, the resulting entity must agree to be legally responsible for our obligations under the debt securities;

immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default or Event of Default shall have happened and be continuing;

under the indenture, no merger or sale of assets may be made if as a result any of our property or assets or any property or assets of one of our subsidiaries, if any, would become subject to any mortgage, lien or other encumbrance unless either (a) the mortgage, lien or other encumbrance could be created



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

pursuant to the limitation on liens covenant in the indenture without equally and ratably securing the indenture securities or (b) the indenture securities are secured equally and ratably with or prior to the debt secured by the mortgage, lien or other encumbrance;

we must deliver certain certificates and documents to the trustee; and

we must satisfy any other requirements specified in the prospectus supplement relating to a particular series of debt securities.

**Modification or Waiver**

There are three types of changes we can make to the indenture and the debt securities issued thereunder.

***Changes Requiring Approval***

First, there are changes that we cannot make to debt securities without specific approval of all of the holders. The following is a list of those types of changes:

change the stated maturity of the principal of or interest on a debt security;

reduce any amounts due on a debt security;

reduce the amount of principal payable upon acceleration of the maturity of a security following a default;

adversely affect any right of repayment at the holder's option;

change the place (except as otherwise described in the prospectus or prospectus supplement) or currency of payment on a debt security;

impair your right to sue for payment;

adversely affect any right to convert or exchange a debt security in accordance with its terms;

modify the subordination provisions in the indenture in a manner that is adverse to holders of the debt securities;

reduce the percentage of holders of debt securities whose consent is needed to modify or amend the indenture;

reduce the percentage of holders of debt securities whose consent is needed to waive compliance with certain provisions of the indenture or to waive certain defaults;

modify any other aspect of the provisions of the indenture dealing with supplemental indentures, modification and waiver of past defaults, changes to the quorum or voting requirements or the waiver of certain covenants; and

change any obligation we have to pay additional amounts.

***Changes Not Requiring Approval***

The second type of change does not require any vote by the holders of the debt securities. This type is limited to clarifications and certain other changes that would not adversely affect holders of the outstanding debt securities in any material respect. We also do not need any approval to make any change that affects only debt securities to be issued under the indenture after the change takes effect.

***Changes Requiring Majority Approval***

Any other change to the indenture and the debt securities would require the following approval:

if the change affects only one series of debt securities, it must be approved by the holders of a majority in principal amount of that series; and

## Table of Contents

### Index to Financial Statements

if the change affects more than one series of debt securities issued under the same indenture, it must be approved by the holders of a majority in principal amount of all of the series affected by the change, with all affected series voting together as one class for this purpose.

The holders of a majority in principal amount of all of the series of debt securities issued under an indenture, voting together as one class for this purpose, may waive our compliance with some of our covenants in that indenture. However, we cannot obtain a waiver of a payment default or of any of the matters covered by the bullet points included above under Changes Requiring Approval.

### *Further Details Concerning Voting*

When taking a vote, we will use the following rules to decide how much principal to attribute to a debt security:

for OID securities, we will use the principal amount that would be due and payable on the voting date if the maturity of these debt securities were accelerated to that date because of a default;

for debt securities whose principal amount is not known (for example, because it is based on an index), we will use a special rule for that debt security described in the prospectus supplement; and

for debt securities denominated in one or more foreign currencies, we will use the U.S. dollar equivalent. Debt securities will not be considered outstanding, and therefore not eligible to vote, if we have deposited or set aside in trust money for their payment or redemption. Debt securities will also not be eligible to vote if they have been fully defeased as described later under Defeasance Full Defeasance.

We will generally be entitled to set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the holders of outstanding indenture securities that are entitled to vote or take other action under the indenture. If we set a record date for a vote or other action to be taken by holders of one or more series, that vote or action may be taken only by persons who are holders of outstanding indenture securities of those series on the record date and must be taken within eleven months following the record date.

**Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how approval may be granted or denied if we seek to change the indenture or the debt securities or request a waiver.**

### **Defeasance**

The following provisions will be applicable to each series of debt securities unless we state in the applicable prospectus supplement that the provisions of covenant defeasance and full defeasance will not be applicable to that series.

### *Covenant Defeasance*

Under current U.S. federal tax law, we can make the deposit described below and be released from some of the restrictive covenants in the indenture under which the particular series was issued. This is called covenant defeasance.

In that event, you would lose the protection of those restrictive covenants but would gain the protection of having money and government securities set aside in trust to repay your debt securities. If applicable, you also would be released from the subordination provisions as described under the Indenture Provisions Subordination section below. In order to achieve covenant defeasance, we must do the following:

if the debt securities of the particular series are denominated in U.S. dollars, we must deposit in trust for the benefit of all holders of such debt securities a combination of money and U.S. government or U.S. government agency notes or bonds that will generate enough cash to make interest, principal and any other payments on the debt securities on their various due dates;

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion of our counsel confirming that, under current U.S. federal income tax law, we may make the above deposit without causing you to be taxed on the debt securities any differently than if we did not make the deposit and just repaid the debt securities ourselves at maturity; and

we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion of our counsel stating that the above deposit does not require registration by us under the 1940 Act, as amended, and a legal opinion and officers' certificate stating that all conditions precedent to covenant defeasance have been complied with.

If we accomplish covenant defeasance, you can still look to us for repayment of the debt securities if there were a shortfall in the trust deposit or the trustee is prevented from making payment. For example, if one of the remaining Events of Default occurred (such as our bankruptcy) and the debt securities became immediately due and payable, there might be a shortfall. Depending on the event causing the default, you may not be able to obtain payment of the shortfall.

***Full Defeasance***

If there is a change in U.S. federal tax law, as described below, we can legally release ourselves from all payment and other obligations on the debt securities of a particular series (called "full defeasance") if we put in place the following other arrangements for you to be repaid:

if the debt securities of the particular series are denominated in U.S. dollars, we must deposit in trust for the benefit of all holders of such debt securities a combination of money and United States government or United States government agency notes or bonds that will generate enough cash to make interest, principal and any other payments on the debt securities on their various due dates.

we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion confirming that there has been a change in current U.S. federal tax law or an IRS ruling that allows us to make the above deposit without causing you to be taxed on the debt securities any differently than if we did not make the deposit and just repaid the debt securities ourselves at maturity. Under current U.S. federal tax law, the deposit and our legal release from the debt securities would be treated as though we paid you your share of the cash and notes or bonds at the time the cash and notes or bonds were deposited in trust in exchange for your debt securities and you would recognize gain or loss on the debt securities at the time of the deposit;

we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion of our counsel stating that the above deposit does not require registration by us under the 1940 Act, as amended, and a legal opinion and officers' certificate stating that all conditions precedent to defeasance have been complied with;

Defeasance must not result in a breach of the indenture or any other material agreements; and

Satisfy the conditions for covenant defeasance contained in any supplemental indentures.

If we ever did accomplish full defeasance, as described above, you would have to rely solely on the trust deposit for repayment of the debt securities. You could not look to us for repayment in the unlikely event of any shortfall. Conversely, the trust deposit would most likely be protected from claims of our lenders and other creditors if we ever became bankrupt or insolvent. If applicable, you would also be released from the subordination provisions described later under Indenture Provisions Subordination.

**Form, Exchange and Transfer of Certificated Registered Securities**

Holders may exchange their certificated securities, if any, for debt securities of smaller denominations or combined into fewer debt securities of larger denominations, as long as the total principal amount is not changed.

Holders may exchange or transfer their certificated securities, if any, at the office of their trustee. We have appointed the trustee to act as our agent for registering debt securities in the names of holders transferring debt securities. We may appoint another entity to perform these functions or perform them ourselves.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Holders will not be required to pay a service charge to transfer or exchange their certificated securities, if any, but they may be required to pay any tax or other governmental charge associated with the transfer or exchange. The transfer or exchange will be made only if our transfer agent is satisfied with the holder's proof of legal ownership.

If we have designated additional transfer agents for your debt security, they will be named in your prospectus supplement. We may appoint additional transfer agents or cancel the appointment of any particular transfer agent. We may also approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts.

If any certificated securities of a particular series are redeemable and we redeem less than all the debt securities of that series, we may block the transfer or exchange of those debt securities during the period beginning 15 days before the day we mail the notice of redemption and ending on the day of that mailing, in order to freeze the list of holders to prepare the mailing. We may also refuse to register transfers or exchanges of any certificated securities selected for redemption, except that we will continue to permit transfers and exchanges of the unredeemed portion of any debt security that will be partially redeemed.

**Resignation of Trustee**

Each trustee may resign or be removed with respect to one or more series of indenture securities provided that a successor trustee is appointed to act with respect to these series. In the event that two or more persons are acting as trustee with respect to different series of indenture securities under the indenture, each of the trustees will be a trustee of a trust separate and apart from the trust administered by any other trustee.

**Indenture Provisions Subordination**

Upon any distribution of our assets upon our dissolution, winding up, liquidation or reorganization, the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on any indenture securities denominated as subordinated debt securities is to be subordinated to the extent provided in the indenture in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all senior indebtedness (as defined below), but our obligation to you to make payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on such subordinated debt securities will not otherwise be affected. In addition, no payment on account of principal (or premium, if any), sinking fund or interest, if any, may be made on such subordinated debt securities at any time unless full payment of all amounts due in respect of the principal (and premium, if any), sinking fund and interest on senior indebtedness has been made or duly provided for in money or money's worth.

In the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing, any payment by us is received by the trustee in respect of subordinated debt securities or by the holders of any of such subordinated debt securities before all senior indebtedness is paid in full, the payment or distribution must be paid over to the holders of the senior indebtedness or on their behalf for application to the payment of all the senior indebtedness remaining unpaid until all the senior indebtedness has been paid in full, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to the holders of the senior indebtedness. Subject to the payment in full of all senior indebtedness upon this distribution by us, the holders of such subordinated debt securities will be subrogated to the rights of the holders of the senior indebtedness to the extent of payments made to the holders of the senior indebtedness out of the distributive share of such subordinated debt securities.

By reason of this subordination, in the event of a distribution of our assets upon our insolvency, certain of our senior creditors may recover more, ratably, than holders of any subordinated debt securities. The indenture provides that

these subordination provisions will not apply to money and securities held in trust under the defeasance provisions of the indenture.



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

Senior indebtedness is defined in the indenture as the principal of (and premium, if any) and unpaid interest on:

our indebtedness (including indebtedness of others guaranteed by us), whenever created, incurred, assumed or guaranteed, for money borrowed (other than indenture securities issued under the indenture and denominated as subordinated debt securities), unless in the instrument creating or evidencing the same or under which the same is outstanding it is provided that this indebtedness is not senior or prior in right of payment to the subordinated debt securities; and

renewals, extensions, modifications and refinancings of any of this indebtedness.

If this prospectus is being delivered in connection with the offering of a series of indenture securities denominated as subordinated debt securities, the accompanying prospectus supplement to this prospectus will set forth the approximate amount of our senior indebtedness outstanding as of a recent date.

**Secured Indebtedness**

Certain of our indebtedness, including certain series of indenture securities, may be secured. The prospectus supplement for each series of indenture securities will describe the terms of any security interest for such series and will indicate the approximate amount of our secured indebtedness as of a recent date. In the event of a distribution of our assets upon our insolvency, the holders of unsecured indenture securities may recover less, ratably, than holders of any of our secured indebtedness.

**The Trustee under the Indenture**

U.S. Bank National Association will serve as the trustee under the indenture.

**Certain Considerations Relating to Foreign Currencies**

Debt securities denominated or payable in foreign currencies may entail significant risks. These risks include the possibility of significant fluctuations in the foreign currency markets, the imposition or modification of foreign exchange controls and potential illiquidity in the secondary market. These risks will vary depending upon the currency or currencies involved and will be more fully described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION**

We may offer, from time to time, in one or more offerings or series, up to \$750,000,000 of our common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, subscription rights to purchase shares of our common stock or warrants representing rights to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities, in one or more underwritten public offerings, at-the-market offerings to or through a market maker or into an existing trading market for the securities, on an exchange, or otherwise, negotiated transactions, block trades, best efforts, auctions or a combination of these methods. The holders of our common stock will indirectly bear any fees and expenses in connection with any such offerings. We may sell the securities through underwriters or dealers, directly to one or more purchasers, including existing stockholders in a rights offering, through agents or through a combination of any such methods of sale. Any underwriter or agent involved in the offer and sale of the securities will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement. A prospectus supplement or supplements will also describe the terms of the offering of the securities, including: the purchase price of the securities and the proceeds we will receive from the sale; any over-allotment options under which underwriters may purchase additional securities from us; any agency fees or underwriting discounts and other items constituting agents or underwriters compensation; any expenses we incur in connection with the sale of such securities; the public offering price; any discounts or concessions allowed or re-allowed or paid to dealers; and any securities exchange or market on which the securities may be listed. Only underwriters named in the applicable prospectus supplement will be underwriters of the securities offered by the applicable prospectus supplement.

The distribution of the securities may be effected from time to time in one or more transactions at a fixed price or prices, which may be changed, at prevailing market prices at the time of sale, at prices related to such prevailing market prices, at negotiated prices, or at prices determined by an auction process, provided, however, that the offering price per share of our common stock, less any underwriting commissions or discounts, must equal or exceed the NAV per share of our common stock at the time of the offering except (1) in connection with a rights offering to our existing stockholders, (2) with the consent of the majority of our voting securities or (3) under such circumstances as the SEC may permit. The price at which securities may be distributed may represent a discount from prevailing market prices. Although we are not currently authorized to issue shares of our common stock at a price below our NAV per share, we may seek stockholder approval of this proposal again at a special meeting of stockholders or our next annual meeting of stockholders. Our Board of Directors, subject to its fiduciary duties and regulatory requirements, has the discretion to determine the amount of the discount, and as a result, the discount could be up to 100% of NAV per share.

In connection with the sale of our securities, underwriters or agents may receive compensation from us or from purchasers of our securities, for whom they may act as agents, in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions. Underwriters may sell our securities to or through dealers and such dealers may receive compensation in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions from the underwriters and/or commissions from the purchasers for whom they may act as agents. Underwriters, dealers and agents that participate in the distribution of our securities may be deemed to be underwriters under the Securities Act, and any discounts and commissions they receive from us and any profit realized by them on the resale of our securities may be deemed to be underwriting discounts and commissions under the Securities Act. Any such underwriter or agent will be identified and any such compensation received from us will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Any underwriter may engage in over-allotment, stabilizing transactions, short-covering transactions and penalty bids in accordance with Regulation M under the Exchange Act. Over-allotment involves sales in excess of the offering size, which create a short position. Stabilizing transactions permit bids to purchase the underlying security so long as

the stabilizing bids do not exceed a specified maximum price. Syndicate-covering or other short-covering transactions involve purchases of the securities, either through exercise of the over-allotment option or in the open market after the distribution is completed, to cover short positions. Penalty bids permit the underwriters to reclaim a selling concession from a dealer when the securities originally sold by the dealer are purchased in a stabilizing or covering transaction to cover short positions. Those activities may cause the price of

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

the securities to be higher than it would otherwise be. If commenced, the underwriters may discontinue any of the activities at any time.

Any underwriters that are qualified market makers on the NYSE may engage in passive market making transactions in our common stock on the NYSE in accordance with Regulation M under the Exchange Act, during the business day prior to the pricing of the offering, before the commencement of offers or sales of our common stock. Passive market makers must comply with applicable volume and price limitations and must be identified as passive market makers. In general, a passive market maker must display its bid at a price not in excess of the highest independent bid for such security; if all independent bids are lowered below the passive market maker's bid, however, the passive market maker's bid must then be lowered when certain purchase limits are exceeded. Passive market making may stabilize the market price of the securities at a level above that which might otherwise prevail in the open market and, if commenced, may be discontinued at any time.

We may sell securities directly or through agents we designate from time to time. We will name any agent involved in the offering and sale of securities and we will describe any commissions we will pay the agent in the applicable prospectus supplement. Unless the applicable prospectus supplement states otherwise, our agent will act on a best-efforts basis for the period of its appointment.

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, each class or series of securities will be a new issue with no trading market, other than our common stock, which is traded on the NYSE. We may elect to list any other class or series of securities on any exchanges, but we are not obligated to do so. We cannot guarantee the liquidity of the trading markets for any securities.

Under agreements that we may enter, underwriters, dealers and agents who participate in the distribution of our securities may be entitled to indemnification by us against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or contribution with respect to payments that the agents or underwriters may make with respect to these liabilities. Underwriters, dealers and agents may engage in transactions with, or perform services for, us in the ordinary course of business.

If so indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will authorize underwriters or other persons acting as our agents to solicit offers by certain institutions to purchase our securities from us pursuant to contracts providing for payment and delivery on a future date. Institutions with which such contracts may be made include commercial and savings banks, insurance companies, pension funds, investment companies, educational and charitable institutions and others, but in all cases such institutions must be approved by us. The obligations of any purchaser under any such contract will be subject to the condition that the purchase of our securities shall not at the time of delivery be prohibited under the laws of the jurisdiction to which such purchaser is subject. The underwriters and such other agents will not have any responsibility in respect of the validity or performance of such contracts. Such contracts will be subject only to those conditions set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement, and the applicable prospectus supplement will set forth the commission payable for solicitation of such contracts.

We may enter into derivative transactions with third parties, or sell securities not covered by this prospectus to third parties in privately negotiated transactions. If the applicable prospectus supplement indicates, in connection with those derivatives, the third parties may sell securities covered by this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement, including in short sale transactions. If so, the third party may use securities pledged by us or borrowed from us or others to settle those sales or to close out any related open borrowings of stock, and may use securities received from us in settlement of those derivatives to close out any related open borrowings of stock. The third parties in such sale

transactions will be underwriters and, if not identified in this prospectus, will be identified in the applicable prospectus supplement.

In compliance with the guidelines of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, the maximum compensation to the underwriters or dealers in connection with the sale of our securities pursuant to this

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement may not exceed 8% of the aggregate offering price of the securities as set forth on the cover page of the applicable prospectus supplement.

In order to comply with the securities laws of certain states, if applicable, our securities offered hereby will be sold in such jurisdictions only through registered or licensed brokers or dealers.

**BROKERAGE ALLOCATION AND OTHER PRACTICES**

Because we generally acquire and dispose of our investments in privately negotiated transactions, we typically do not use brokers in the normal course of business. However, from time to time, we may work with brokers to sell positions we have acquired in the securities of publicly listed companies or to acquire positions (principally equity) in companies where we see a market opportunity to acquire such securities at attractive valuations. In cases where we do use a broker, we do not execute transactions through any particular broker or dealer, but will seek to obtain the best net results for the Company, taking into account such factors as price (including the applicable brokerage commission or dealer spread), size of order, difficulty of execution, and operational facilities of the firm and the firm's risk and skill in positioning blocks of securities. While we generally seek reasonably competitive execution costs, we may not necessarily pay the lowest spread or commission available. Subject to applicable legal requirements, we may select a broker based partly upon brokerage or research services provided to us. In return for such services, we may pay a higher commission than other brokers would charge if we determine in good faith that such commission is reasonable in relation to the services provided.

**CUSTODIAN, TRANSFER AND DIVIDEND PAYING AGENT AND REGISTRAR**

Securities we hold in connection with our investments are held under a custody agreement with Union Bank of California. The address of the custodian is 475 Sansome Street, 15th Floor, San Francisco, California 94111. We have also entered into a custody agreement with U.S. Bank National Association, which is located at One Federal Street, Third Floor, Boston, Massachusetts 02110. The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock, American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, will act as our transfer agent, dividend paying and reinvestment agent and registrar. The principal business address of the transfer agent is 6201 15th Avenue, Brooklyn, New York 11219.

**LEGAL MATTERS**

Certain legal matters regarding the securities offered by this prospectus will be passed upon for us by Dechert LLP, Washington, D.C. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for underwriters, if any, by the counsel named in the prospectus supplement.

**EXPERTS**

The consolidated financial statements as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 and for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017 and management's assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting (which is included in Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting) as of December 31, 2017 included in this prospectus have been so included in reliance on the report of PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, given on the authority of said firm as experts in auditing and accounting.



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**AVAILABLE INFORMATION**

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form N-2, together with all amendments and related exhibits, under the Securities Act, with respect to our securities offered by this prospectus. The registration statement contains additional information about us and our securities being offered by this prospectus.

We file annual, quarterly and current periodic reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC under the Exchange Act. You may inspect and copy these reports, proxy statements and other information, as well as the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part and the related exhibits and schedules, at the Public Reference Room of the SEC at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549-0102. You may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC at 202-551-8090. The SEC maintains an Internet website that contains reports, proxy and information statements and other information filed electronically by us with the SEC which are available on the SEC's Internet website at <http://www.sec.gov>. Copies of these reports, proxy and information statements and other information may be obtained, after paying a duplicating fee, by electronic request at the following E-mail address: [publicinfo@sec.gov](mailto:publicinfo@sec.gov), or by writing the SEC's Public Reference Section, Washington, D.C. 20549-0102.



**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

**INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

<u>Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</u>	F-2
<u>Consolidated Statements of Assets and Liabilities as of December 31, 2017 and 2016</u>	F-4
<u>Consolidated Statements of Operations for the three years ended December 31, 2017</u>	F-6
<u>Consolidated Statements of Changes in Net Assets for the three years ended December 31, 2017</u>	F-7
<u>Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the three years ended December 31, 2017</u>	F-8
<u>Consolidated Schedule of Investments as of December 31, 2017</u>	F-9
<u>Consolidated Schedule of Investments as of December 31, 2016</u>	F-28
<u>Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</u>	F-45
<u>Consolidated Schedule of Investments In and Advances to Affiliates as of December 31, 2017</u>	F-91

F-1

Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

To the Board of Directors and Shareholders of Hercules Capital, Inc.

***Opinions on the Financial Statements and Internal Control over Financial Reporting***

We have audited the accompanying consolidated statements of assets and liabilities, including the consolidated schedules of investments, of Hercules Capital, Inc. and its subsidiaries as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the related consolidated statements of operations, changes in net assets and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017, including the related notes and financial statement schedule listed in the accompanying index (collectively referred to as the consolidated financial statements). We also have audited the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017 based on criteria established in *Internal Control Integrated Framework* (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the results of their operations, changes in their net assets and their cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017 in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. Also in our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on criteria established in *Internal Control Integrated Framework* (2013) issued by the COSO.

***Basis for Opinions***

The Company's management is responsible for these consolidated financial statements, for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting, and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in Management's Annual Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting appearing under Item 9A. Our responsibility is to express opinions on the Company's consolidated financial statements and on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud, and whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects.

Our audits of the consolidated financial statements included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. Our procedures included confirmation of securities owned as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 by correspondence with the custodians and portfolio company investees; when replies were not received, we performed other auditing procedures. Our audit of internal control over financial reporting included obtaining an understanding

of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, and testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk. Our audits also included performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinions.

**Table of Contents**

**Index to Financial Statements**

***Definition and Limitations of Internal Control over Financial Reporting***

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (i) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (ii) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (iii) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

/s/ PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP

San Francisco, California

February 22, 2018

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2010.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF ASSETS AND LIABILITIES****(in thousands, except per share data)**

	<b>December 31, 2017</b>	<b>December 31, 2016</b>
<b>Assets</b>		
Investments:		
Non-control/Non-affiliate investments (cost of \$1,506,454 and \$1,475,918, respectively)	\$ 1,491,458	\$ 1,414,210
Control investments (cost of \$25,419 and \$22,598, respectively)	19,461	4,700
Affiliate investments (cost of \$87,956 and \$13,010, respectively)	31,295	5,032
Total investments in securities, at value (cost of \$1,619,829 and \$1,511,526, respectively)	1,542,214	1,423,942
Cash and cash equivalents	91,309	13,044
Restricted cash	3,686	8,322
Interest receivable	12,262	11,614
Other assets	5,244	7,282
<b>Total assets</b>	<b>\$ 1,654,715</b>	<b>\$ 1,464,204</b>
<b>Liabilities</b>		
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	\$ 26,896	\$ 21,463
Credit Facilities		5,016
2021 Asset-Backed Notes, net (principal of \$49,153 and \$109,205, respectively) <sup>(1)</sup>	48,650	107,972
Convertible Notes, net (principal of \$230,000 and \$0, respectively) <sup>(1)</sup>	223,488	
2019 Notes, net (principal of \$0 and \$110,364, respectively) <sup>(1)</sup>		108,818
2022 Notes, net (principal of \$150,000 and \$0, respectively) <sup>(1)</sup>	147,572	
2024 Notes, net (principal of \$183,510 and \$252,873, respectively) <sup>(1)</sup>	179,001	245,490
SBA Debentures, net (principal of \$190,200 and \$190,200, respectively) <sup>(1)</sup>	188,141	187,501
<b>Total liabilities</b>	<b>\$ 813,748</b>	<b>\$ 676,260</b>
Commitments and Contingencies (Note 10)		
<b>Net assets consist of:</b>		
Common stock, par value	85	80
Capital in excess of par value	908,501	839,657
Unrealized depreciation on investments <sup>(2)</sup>	(79,760)	(89,025)

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Accumulated undistributed realized gains (losses) on investments	(20,374)	14,314
Undistributed net investment income	32,515	22,918
<b>Total net assets</b>	<b>\$ 840,967</b>	<b>\$ 787,944</b>
<b>Total liabilities and net assets</b>	<b>\$ 1,654,715</b>	<b>\$ 1,464,204</b>
<b>Shares of common stock outstanding (\$0.001 par value, 200,000,000 authorized)</b>	<b>84,424</b>	<b>79,555</b>
<b>Net asset value per share</b>	<b>\$ 9.96</b>	<b>\$ 9.90</b>

- (1) The Company's 2021 Asset-Backed Notes, Convertible Notes, 2019 Notes, 2022 Notes, 2024 Notes, and SBA debentures, as each term is defined herein, are presented net of the associated debt issuance costs for each instrument. See Note 4 Borrowings.
- (2) Amounts includes \$2.1 million and \$1.4 million in net unrealized depreciation on other assets and accrued liabilities, including escrow receivables, and estimated taxes payable liabilities as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

The following table presents the assets and liabilities of our consolidated securitization trust for the 2021 Asset-Backed Notes (see Note 4), which is a variable interest entity ( VIE ). The assets of our securitization VIE can only be used to settle obligations of our consolidated securitization VIE, these liabilities are only the obligations of our consolidated securitization VIE, and the creditors (or beneficial interest holders) do not have recourse to our general credit. These assets and liabilities are included in the Consolidated Statement of Assets and Liabilities above.

<b>(Dollars in thousands)</b>	<b>December 31, 2017</b>	<b>December 31, 2016</b>
<b>Assets</b>		
Restricted Cash	\$ 3,686	\$ 8,322
Total investments in securities, at value (cost of \$146,208 and \$244,695, respectively)	144,513	242,349
Total assets	\$ 148,199	\$ 250,671
<b>Liabilities</b>		
2021 Asset-Backed Notes, net (principal of \$49,153 and \$109,205, respectively) <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 48,650	\$ 107,972
Total liabilities	\$ 48,650	\$ 107,972

(1) The Company's 2021 Asset-Backed Notes are presented net of the associated debt issuance costs. See Note 4 Borrowings.

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

**Table of Contents****Index to Financial Statements**

**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS**  
(in thousands, except per share data)

	<b>For the Year Ended December 31,</b>		
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>	<b>2015</b>
<b>Investment income:</b>			
Interest and PIK interest income			
Interest income:			
Non-control/Non-affiliate investments	\$ 160,131	\$ 150,705	\$ 135,261
Control investments	1,304	38	
Affiliate investments	801	160	347
<b>Total interest income</b>	<b>162,236</b>	<b>150,903</b>	<b>135,608</b>
PIK interest income:			
Non-control/Non-affiliate investments	9,293	7,784	4,658
Control investments	667	40	
<b>Total PIK interest income</b>	<b>9,960</b>	<b>7,824</b>	<b>4,658</b>
<b>Total interest and PIK interest income</b>	<b>172,196</b>	<b>158,727</b>	<b>140,266</b>
Fee income			
Non-control/Non-affiliate investments	18,630	16,318	16,865
Control investments	11	6	
Affiliate investments	43		1
<b>Total fees</b>	<b>18,684</b>	<b>16,324</b>	<b>16,866</b>
<b>Total investment income</b>	<b>190,880</b>	<b>175,051</b>	<b>157,132</b>
<b>Operating expenses:</b>			
Interest	37,857	32,016	30,834
Loan fees	8,728	5,042	6,055
General and administrative:			
Legal expenses	4,572	4,823	3,079
Other expenses	11,533	11,283	13,579
<b>Total general and administrative</b>	<b>16,105</b>	<b>16,106</b>	<b>16,658</b>
Employee compensation:			
Compensation and benefits	24,555	22,500	20,713



Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Stock-based compensation	7,191	7,043	9,370
<b>Total employee compensation</b>	<b>31,746</b>	<b>29,543</b>	<b>30,083</b>
<b>Total operating expenses</b>	<b>94,436</b>	<b>82,707</b>	<b>83,630</b>
Other income (loss)		8,000	(1)
<b>Net investment income</b>	<b>96,444</b>	<b>100,344</b>	<b>73,501</b>
<b>Net realized gain (loss) on investments</b>			
Non-control/Non-affiliate investments	(10,235)	4,576	5,147
Control investments	(16,476)		
Total net realized gain (loss) on investments	(26,711)	4,576	5,147
<b>Net change in unrealized appreciation (depreciation) on investments</b>			
Non-control/Non-affiliate investments	43,796	(29,970)	(36,839)
Control investments	14,152	(4,025)	
Affiliate investments	(48,683)	(2,222)	1,107
Total net unrealized appreciation (depreciation) on investments	9,265	(36,217)	(35,732)
<b>Total net realized and unrealized loss</b>	<b>(17,446)</b>	<b>(31,641)</b>	<b>(30,585)</b>
<b>Net increase in net assets resulting from operations</b>	<b>\$ 78,998</b>	<b>\$ 68,703</b>	<b>\$ 42,916</b>
Net investment income before investment gains and losses per common share:			
Basic	\$ 1.16	\$ 1.34	\$ 1.04
Change in net assets resulting from operations per common share:			
Basic	\$ 0.95	\$ 0.91	\$ 0.60
Diluted	\$ 0.95	\$ 0.91	\$ 0.59
Weighted average shares outstanding			
Basic	82,519	73,753	69,479
Diluted	82,640	73,775	69,663
Distributions declared per common share:			
Basic	\$ 1.24	\$ 1.24	\$ 1.24

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements

## HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.

## CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CHANGES IN NET ASSETS

(dollars and shares in thousands)

	Common Stock		Capital in excess of par value	Unrealized Appreciation (Depreciation) on Investments	Accumulated Undistributed Realized Gains (Losses) on Investments	Undistributed Net Investment Income	Provision for Income Taxes on Investment Gains	Net Assets
	Shares	Par Value						
<b>Balance at December 31, 2014</b>	64,715	\$ 65	\$ 657,233	\$ (17,076)	\$ 14,079	\$ 4,905	\$ (342)	\$ 658,864
Net increase (decrease) in net assets resulting from operations				(35,732)	5,147	73,501		42,916
Public offering, net of offering expenses	7,591	8	100,084					100,092
Acquisition of common stock under repurchase plan	(437)		(4,644)					(4,644)
Issuance of common stock due to stock option exercises	64		427					427
Retired shares from net issuance	(29)		(423)					(423)
Issuance of common stock under restricted stock plan	676	1	(1)					
Retired shares for restricted stock vesting	(662)	(1)	(4,566)					(4,567)
Distributions reinvested in common stock	200		2,446					2,446
Distributions					(15,327)	(72,111)		(87,438)
Stock-based compensation <sup>(1)</sup>			9,461					9,461
Tax reclassification of stockholders' equity in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles			(7,773)		8,767	(994)		

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

<b>Balance at December 31, 2015</b>	72,118	\$ 73	\$ 752,244	\$ (52,808)	\$ 12,666	\$ 5,301	\$ (342)	\$ 717,134
Net increase (decrease) in net assets resulting from operations		\$	\$	\$ (36,217)	\$ 4,576	\$ 100,344	\$	\$ 68,703
Public offering, net of offering expenses	7,428	7	92,820					92,827
Acquisition of common stock under repurchase plan	(450)	(1)	(4,789)					(4,790)
Issuance of common stock due to stock option exercises	55		654					654
Retired shares from net issuance	(17)		(235)					(235)
Issuance of common stock under restricted stock plan	556	1	(1)					
Retired shares for restricted stock vesting	(279)		(2,944)					(2,944)
Distributions reinvested in common stock	144		1,799					1,799
Distributions					(7,962)	(84,371)		(92,333)
Stock-based compensation <sup>(1)</sup>			7,129					7,129
Tax reclassification of stockholders' equity in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles			(7,020)		5,034	1,644	342	
<b>Balance at December 31, 2016</b>	79,555	\$ 80	\$ 839,657	\$ (89,025)	\$ 14,314	\$ 22,918	\$	\$ 787,944
Net increase (decrease) in net assets resulting from operations		\$	\$	\$ 9,265	\$ (26,711)	\$ 96,444	\$	\$ 78,998
Public offering, net of offering expenses	4,919	5	66,930					66,935
Issuance of common stock due to stock option exercises	49		500					500
Retired shares from net issuance	(21)		(209)					(209)
Issuance of common stock under restricted stock plan	10							
	(252)		(2,976)					(2,976)

Retired shares for restricted stock vesting Distributions reinvested in common stock	164	2,202			2,202		
Issuance of Convertible Notes		3,413			3,413		
Distributions			(14,893)	(88,194)	(103,087)		
Stock-based compensation <sup>(1)</sup>		7,247			7,247		
Tax reclassification of stockholders' equity in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles		(8,263)	6,916	1,347			
<b>Balance at December 31, 2017</b>	84,424	\$ 85	\$ 908,501	\$ (79,760)	\$ (20,374)	\$ 32,515	\$ 840,967

(1) Stock-based compensation includes \$57, \$87 and \$90 of restricted stock and option expense related to director compensation for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements

## HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.

## CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS

(in thousands)

	<b>For the Year Ended December 31,</b>		
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>	<b>2015</b>
<b>Cash flows from operating activities:</b>			
Net increase in net assets resulting from operations	\$ 78,998	\$ 68,703	\$ 42,916
Adjustments to reconcile net increase in net assets resulting from operations to net cash provided by (used in) operating activities:			
Purchase of investments	(764,795)	(680,971)	(712,701)
Principal and fee payments received on investments	641,016	444,758	509,593
Proceeds from the sale of investments	23,881	18,998	17,892
Net unrealized depreciation (appreciation) on investments	(9,265)	36,217	35,732
Net realized loss (gain) on investments	26,711	(4,576)	(5,147)
Accretion of paid-in-kind principal	(9,686)	(7,319)	(4,037)
Accretion of loan discounts	(6,711)	(7,163)	(8,049)
Accretion of loan discount on convertible notes	615	82	246
Loss on debt extinguishment (convertible notes)			1
Payment of loan discount on convertible notes			(5)
Accretion of loan exit fees	(19,098)	(22,614)	(14,947)
Change in deferred loan origination revenue	962	347	1,904
Unearned fees related to unfunded commitments	1,048	(758)	(2,064)
Amortization of debt fees and issuance costs	7,492	3,773	5,161
Depreciation	201	202	193
Stock-based compensation and amortization of restricted stock grants <sup>(1)</sup>	7,247	7,129	9,461
Change in operating assets and liabilities:			
Interest and fees receivable	(648)	(2,375)	213
Prepaid expenses and other assets	(1,097)	3,234	4,826
Accounts payable	(10)	56	(639)
Accrued liabilities	4,739	3,892	5,090
Net cash used in operating activities	(18,400)	(138,385)	(114,361)
<b>Cash flows from investing activities:</b>			
Purchases of capital equipment	(274)	(252)	(187)
Reduction of restricted cash	4,636	869	3,469
Net cash provided by investing activities	4,362	617	3,282
<b>Cash flows from financing activities:</b>			
Issuance of common stock, net	66,935	92,827	100,092
Repurchase of common stock, net		(4,790)	(4,645)
Retirement of employee shares	(2,685)	(2,525)	(4,562)

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Distributions paid	(100,885)	(90,534)	(84,992)
Issuance of Convertible Notes	230,000		
Issuance of 2022 Notes	150,000		
Issuance of 2024 Notes	5,636	149,873	
Repayments of 2017 Asset-Backed Notes			(16,049)
Repayments of 2019 Notes	(110,364)		(60,000)
Repayments of 2021 Asset-Backed Notes	(60,053)	(20,095)	
Repayments of 2024 Notes	(75,000)		
Borrowings of credit facilities	8,497	285,891	138,689
Repayments of credit facilities	(13,513)	(330,877)	(88,689)
Cash paid for debt issuance costs	(6,342)	(5,289)	
Cash paid for redemption of convertible notes		(17,604)	(65)
Fees paid for credit facilities and debentures	77	(1,261)	(620)
<b>Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities</b>	<b>92,303</b>	<b>55,616</b>	<b>(20,841)</b>
<b>Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents</b>	<b>78,265</b>	<b>(82,152)</b>	<b>(131,920)</b>
<b>Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period</b>	<b>13,044</b>	<b>95,196</b>	<b>227,116</b>
<b>Cash and cash equivalents at end of period</b>	<b>\$ 91,309</b>	<b>\$ 13,044</b>	<b>\$ 95,196</b>
<b>Supplemental non-cash investing and financing activities:</b>			
Interest paid	\$ 33,579	\$ 31,011	\$ 30,527
Income taxes paid	\$ 1,076	\$ 184	\$ 973
Distributions reinvested	\$ 2,202	\$ 1,799	\$ 2,446

(1) Stock-based compensation includes \$57, \$87 and \$90 of restricted stock and option expense related to director compensation for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements

## HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.

## CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS

December 31, 2017

(dollars in thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
<b>Debt Investments</b>							
<b>Biotechnology Tools</b>							
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
Exicure, Inc. <sup>(12)</sup>	Biotechnology Tools	Senior Secured	September 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.45%  or Floor rate of 9.95%, 3.85% Exit Fee	\$ 4,999	\$ 5,115	\$ 5,146
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						5,115	5,146
<b>Subtotal: Biotechnology Tools (0.61%)*</b>						5,115	5,146
<b>Communications &amp; Networking</b>							
<b>Under 1 Year Maturity</b>							
OpenPeak, Inc. <sup>(8)</sup>	Communications & Networking	Senior Secured	April 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 8.75%  or Floor rate of 12.00%	\$ 11,464	8,228	
<b>Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity</b>						8,228	
<b>Subtotal: Communications &amp; Networking (0.00%)*</b>						8,228	
<b>Consumer &amp; Business Products</b>							
<b>Under 1 Year Maturity</b>							
Antenna79 (p.k.a. Pong Research Corporation) <sup>(15)</sup>	Consumer & Business Products	Senior Secured	December 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00%	\$ 1,000	1,000	1,000

or Floor rate of 9.50%

<b>Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity</b>						1,000	1,000
--	--	--	--	--	--	-------	-------

**1-5 Years Maturity**

Antenna79 (p.k.a. Pong Research Corporation) <sup>(15)</sup>	Consumer & Business Products	Senior Secured	December 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 7.45%			
				or Floor rate of 10.95%, 2.95% Exit Fee	\$ 18,440	18,580	18,571

Second Time Around (Simplify Holdings, LLC) <sup>(7)(8)(15)</sup>	Consumer & Business Products	Senior Secured	February 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 7.25%			
				or Floor rate of 10.75%, 4.75% Exit Fee	\$ 1,746	1,781	

<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						20,361	18,571
-------------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--------	--------

<b>Subtotal: Consumer &amp; Business Products (2.33%)*</b>						21,361	19,571
--	--	--	--	--	--	--------	--------

**Drug Delivery****Under 1 Year Maturity**

Agile Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(11)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	December 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75%			
				or Floor rate of 9.00%, 3.70% Exit Fee	\$ 10,888	11,292	11,292

Pulmatrix Inc. <sup>(9)(11)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	July 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 6.25%			
				or Floor rate of 9.50%, 3.50% Exit Fee	\$ 3,259	3,455	3,455

ZP Opco, Inc (p.k.a. Zosano Pharma) <sup>(11)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	December 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 2.70%			
				or Floor rate of 7.95%, 2.87% Exit Fee	\$ 6,316	6,609	6,609

<b>Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity</b>						21,356	21,356
--	--	--	--	--	--	--------	--------

**1-5 Years Maturity**

AcelRx Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(10)(11)(15)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	March 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.05%			
				or Floor rate of 9.55%, 11.69% Exit Fee	\$ 18,653	18,925	18,875

Antares Pharma Inc. <sup>(10)(15)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	July 2022	Interest rate PRIME + 4.50%	\$ 25,000	25,006	24,958
				or Floor rate of 9.00%,			



See notes to consolidated financial statements.

F-9

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS****December 31, 2017****(dollars in thousands)**

Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost
Pharmaceuticals,	Drug Delivery	Senior Secured	February 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.65%		
				or Floor rate of 9.15%, 4.95% Exit Fee	\$ 20,000	\$ 20,000
<b>Years Maturity</b>						64,
<b>Drug Delivery (10.17%)*</b>						85,
<b>Drug Discovery &amp; Development</b>						
(15)	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	August 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00%		
				or Floor rate of 9.50%, 7.09% Exit Fee	\$ 9,986	11,
Pharmaceuticals,	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	April 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 4.70%		
				or Floor rate of 7.95%, 3.00% Exit Fee	\$ 3,027	3,
<b>Over 1 Year Maturity</b>						14,
<b>Maturity</b>						
(10)	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	January 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.05%		
				or Floor rate of 9.55%, 5.75% Exit Fee	\$ 10,341	10,
Pharmaceuticals,	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	July 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.70%		
				or Floor rate of 9.45%, 5.40% Exit Fee	\$ 10,000	10,
	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	July 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.70%		
				or Floor rate of 9.45%, 3.00% Exit Fee	\$ 10,000	9,
<b>Pharmaceuticals, Inc.</b>					\$ 20,000	20,
Pharmaceuticals,	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	March 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 6.80%	\$ 55,000	53,

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

h,	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	September 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.70% or Floor rate of 10.55%		
	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	December 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 3.30% or Floor rate of 9.20%, 6.75% Exit Fee	\$ 6,090	6,
c.(11)	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	January 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 2.25% or Floor rate of 8.05%, 6.25% Exit Fee	\$ 5,000	4,
)	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	October 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75% or Floor rate of 7.25%, 4.95% Exit Fee	\$ 13,851	14,
ls	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	October 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 7.25% or Floor rate of 9.25%, 4.86% Exit Fee	\$ 55,000	55,
nces	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	September 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50% or Floor rate of 10.75%, PIK Interest 1.35%, 2.25% Exit Fee	\$ 25,561	25,
ces,	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	May 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.00% or Floor rate of 10.00%, 2.15% Exit Fee	\$ 15,000	14,
ls,	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	September 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 2.75% or Floor rate of 8.25%, 6.55% Exit Fee	\$ 25,000	24,
nscept	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	September 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 2.75% or Floor rate of 8.50%, 4.50% Exit Fee	\$ 40,000	40,
ls,	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	September 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 2.75% or Floor rate of 8.50%, 4.50% Exit Fee	\$ 10,000	10,

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)[Index to Financial Statements](#)

## HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.

## CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS

December 31, 2017

(dollars in thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value	
	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	September 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 2.75% or Floor rate of 8.50%, 2.25% Exit Fee	\$ 10,000	\$ 9,964	\$ 9,964	
Paratek Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (p.k.a. Transcept Pharmaceuticals, Inc.) Rx, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	December 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.75% or Floor rate of 9.25%, 5.85% Exit Fee	\$ 60,000	60,148	59,952	
Alkermes, Inc. <sup>(5)(10)(12)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	January 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50% or Floor rate of 9.50%, 5.00% Exit Fee	\$ 15,000	14,898	14,898	
Amgen, Inc. <sup>(5)(10)(11)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	May 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 3.00% or Floor rate of 8.25%, 5.48% Exit Fee	\$ 20,000	20,579	20,579	
Amgen, Inc. <sup>(12)(17)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 10.50%, 4.50% Exit Fee	\$ 5,000	4,957	4,957	
	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 10.50%, 4.50% Exit Fee	\$ 5,000	4,996	4,996	
	Drug Discovery & Development	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 10.50%, 4.50% Exit Fee	\$ 5,000	4,953	4,953	
Verastem, Inc.					\$ 15,000	14,906	14,906	
<b>Total: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>							346,187	346,187
<b>Total: Drug Discovery &amp; Development (42.00%)*</b>							360,669	353,000
<b>Electronics &amp; Computer Software</b>								
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>								
		Senior Secured	September 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.00%	\$ 10,000	10,014	9,999	

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

DEVICES (15)	Electronics & Computer Hardware			or Floor rate of 8.25%, 4.25% Exit Fee			
<b>Total: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>					10,014	9	
<b>Total: Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware (1.18%)*</b>					10,014	9	
<b>Healthcare Services, Other</b>							
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
Medsphere Systems Corporation <sup>(14)(15)</sup>	Healthcare Services, Other	Senior Secured	February 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75%  or Floor rate of 9.00%,  PIK Interest 1.75%	\$ 17,607	17,437	17
	Healthcare Services, Other	Senior Secured	February 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75%  or Floor rate of 9.00%,  PIK Interest 1.75%	\$ 5,009	4,963	4
<b>Medsphere Systems Corporation</b>					\$ 22,616	22,400	22
Street 1 <sup>(12)</sup>	Healthcare Services, Other	Senior Secured	September 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 5.00%  or Floor rate of 9.75%, 5.95% Exit Fee	\$ 20,000	19,965	19
Group ings <sup>(13)</sup>	Healthcare Services, Other	Senior Secured	September 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 7.45%  or Floor rate of 10.95%	\$ 20,000	19,878	19
	Healthcare Services, Other	Senior Secured	September 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 7.45%  or Floor rate of 10.95%	\$ 10,000	9,922	9
<b>PH Group Holdings</b>					\$ 30,000	29,800	29
<b>Total: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
<b>Total: Healthcare Services, Other (8.56%)*</b>					72,165	72	

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements

## HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.

## CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS

December 31, 2017

(dollars in thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value
<b>Information Services</b>							
<b>Years Maturity</b>							
AX Medical, (14)(15)(17)	Information Services	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.25% or Floor rate of 8.25%, PIK Interest 1.70%	\$ 7,568	\$ 7,369	\$ 7,369
Base Solutions, (13)(14)	Information Services	Senior Secured	August 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 10.00%, PIK Interest 2.00%, 3.00% Exit Fee	\$ 9,051	8,730	8,730
<b>Total: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						16,099	16,099
<b>Total: Information Services (1.91%)*</b>						16,099	16,099
<b>Internet Consumer &amp; Business Services</b>							
<b>Years Maturity</b>							
Direct, Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	January 2022	Interest rate PRIME + 5.70% or Floor rate of 9.95%, 3.45% Exit Fee	\$ 10,000	9,885	9,885
Systems, (11)(14)	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 3.20% or Floor rate of 6.95%, PIK Interest 1.95%, 1.50% Exit Fee	\$ 2,103	2,104	1,885
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.20% or Floor rate of 8.95%, PIK Interest 1.95%, 1.50% Exit Fee	\$ 18,832	18,839	16,100

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

al Aria Systems, Inc.					\$ 20,935	20,943	17,9
enphire Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	January 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 8.00%  or Floor rate of 9.00%	\$ 3,883	3,883	3,8
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	January 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 3.75%  or Floor rate of 7.00%	\$ 1,000	1,000	1,0
al Greenphire Inc.					\$ 4,883	4,883	4,8
ent Media, (14)(15)	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	May 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.25%  or Floor rate of 8.75%,  PIK Interest 1.00%, 2.00% Exit Fee	\$ 5,050	5,011	5,0
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	May 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50%  or Floor rate of 9.00%,  PIK Interest 2.35%, 2.00% Exit Fee	\$ 2,020	1,987	1,9
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	May 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50%  or Floor rate of 9.00%,  PIK Interest 2.50%, 2.00% Exit Fee	\$ 2,022	1,988	1,9
al Intent Media, Inc.					\$ 9,092	8,986	9,0
eractions poration	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	March 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 8.60%  or Floor rate of 9.85%, 1.75% Exit Fee	\$ 25,000	25,013	25,0
icSource <sup>(15)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	October 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.25%  or Floor rate of 9.75%, 5.00% Exit Fee	\$ 6,452	6,701	6,7
gajob.com, (13)(14)	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	July 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 5.15%  or Floor rate of 9.15%,  PIK Interest 1.95%, 2.55% Exit Fee	\$ 41,023	40,633	41,0

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS****December 31, 2017****(dollars in thousands)**

Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost
(9)(14)	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	June 2021	Interest rate FIXED 6.00%, PIK Interest 3.00%	\$ 20,298	\$ 20,298
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	June 2021	PIK Interest 8.00%	\$ 11,015	
Corporation					\$ 31,313	20,298
Group	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	January 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 9.25% or Floor rate of 10.25%	\$ 8,000	8,000
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Senior Secured	January 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75% or Floor rate of 8.25%	\$ 2,000	2,000
Group					\$ 10,000	10,000
<b>Years Maturity</b>						147,500
<b>Internet Consumer &amp; Business Services (17.09%)*</b>						147,500
<b>Media/Content/Info</b>						
<b>Maturity</b>						
	Media/Content/Info	Senior Secured	May 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 2.50% or Floor rate of 6.75%, PIK Interest 3.00%	\$ 106,986	106,986
<b>Less Than 1 Year Maturity</b>						106,986
<b>Maturity</b>						
	Media/Content/Info	Senior Secured	June 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.10% or Floor rate of 8.35%,	\$ 15,016	14,986



Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

				PIK Interest 1.95%, 1.95% Exit Fee		
12)(14)	Media/Content/Info	Senior Secured	November 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 7.25%		
				or Floor rate of 10.75%, 10.41% Exit Fee	\$ 19,354	19,
	Media/Content/Info	Convertible Debt	September 2020	PIK Interest 25.00%	\$ 1,000	1,
					\$ 20,354	20,
<b>Years Maturity</b>						35,
<b>Media/Content/Info (16.92%)*</b>						142,
<b>Medical Devices &amp; Equipment</b>						
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	January 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 7.70%		
				or Floor rate of 10.95%, 8.25% Exit Fee	\$ 605	2,
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	October 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 4.00%		
				or Floor rate of 9.25%, 5.42% Exit Fee	\$ 2,527	2,
<b>Less Than 1 Year Maturity</b>						5,
<b>Priority</b>						
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.05%		
				or Floor rate of 10.05%, 6.75% Exit Fee	\$ 12,500	13,
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.05%		
				or Floor rate of 10.05%, 6.75% Exit Fee	\$ 2,500	2,

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS****December 31, 2017****(dollars in thousands)**

Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.05%		
				or Floor rate of 10.05%, 9.75% Exit Fee	\$ 2,500	\$ 2,6
X, Inc.	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	June 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 5.00%	\$ 17,500	18,2
al,	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	June 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 5.00%		
				or Floor rate of 9.25%, 4.95% Exit Fee	\$ 17,500	17,0
ologies,	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	August 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 7.25%		
				or Floor rate of 10.50%, 5.00% Exit Fee	\$ 5,469	5,7
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	April	Interest rate PRIME + 8.05%		
			2020	or Floor rate of 11.55%, 5.00% Exit Fee	\$ 10,117	10,4
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	March 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 2.75%		
				or Floor rate of 8.00%, 4.00% Exit Fee	\$ 9,043	9,4
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	July 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.35%		
				or Floor rate of 8.85%, 6.05% Exit Fee	\$ 8,000	7,9
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.95%		
				or Floor rate of 9.45%, 3.15% Exit Fee	\$ 5,000	4,9
<b>5 Years Maturity</b>						73,8
<b>Medical Devices &amp; Equipment (9.37%)*</b>						78,9
<b>Factors</b>						
<b>Maturity</b>						
	Semiconductors	Senior Secured	August 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 7.00%		
				or Floor rate of 11.00%, 12.50% Exit Fee	\$ 5,000	5,0
	Semiconductors	Senior Secured	February 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00%	\$ 4,274	4,2
Table of Contents						538

or Floor rate of 10.00%

ix Semiconductor Corporation					\$ 9,274	9,3
<b>5 Years Maturity</b>						9,3
<b>Semiconductors (1.11%)*</b>						9,3
<b>r</b>						
(13)	Software	Senior Secured	May 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 8.00%		
				or Floor rate of 11.50%, 12.01% Exit Fee	\$ 6,378	7,6
Limited	Software	Senior Secured	July 2018	Interest rate 12-month LIBOR + 2.50%	\$ 5,671	5,6
start						
(15)						
<b>der 1 Year Maturity</b>						13,3
<b>maturity</b>						
	Software	Senior Secured	April 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 4.80%		
				or Floor rate of 8.55%,		
				PIK Interest 3.25%	\$ 40,893	40,8
	Software	Senior Secured	September 2022	Interest rate daily LIBOR + 7.75%		
				or Floor rate of 8.75%	\$ 50,000	48,5
	Software	Senior Secured	October 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 5.45%		
4)(15)(17)				or Floor rate of 8.95%	\$ 6,000	5,9

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)[Index to Financial Statements](#)**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS****December 31, 2017****(dollars in thousands)**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Maturity Date</b>	<b>Interest Rate and Floor<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(4)</sup></b>
	Software	Senior Secured	July 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00% or Floor rate of 9.50%, PIK Interest 1.25%	\$ 4,023	\$ 3,999	\$ 3,992
Total Evernote Corporation					\$ 10,023	9,973	10,092
Fuze, Inc. <sup>(13)(14)(15)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	July 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 3.70% or Floor rate of 7.95%, PIK Interest 1.55%, 3.55% Exit Fee	\$ 50,332	50,464	50,420
Impact Radius Holdings, Inc. <sup>(14)(17)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.25% or Floor rate of 8.75%, PIK Interest 1.55%, 1.75% Exit Fee	\$ 7,544	7,552	7,498
Lithium Technologies, Inc. <sup>(17)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	October 2022	Interest rate 1-month LIBOR + 8.00% or Floor rate of 9.00%	\$ 12,000	11,740	11,740
Microsystems Holding Company, LLC	Software	Senior Secured	July 2022	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 8.25% or Floor rate of 9.25%	\$ 12,000	11,821	11,821
OneLogin, Inc. <sup>(14)(15)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	August 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.45% or Floor rate of 9.95%	\$ 15,883	15,811	16,071

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

				PIK Interest 3.25%			
PerfectServe, Inc.	Software	Senior Secured	April 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 9.00%			
				or Floor rate of 10.00%, 2.50% Exit Fee	\$ 16,000	16,023	16,023
	Software	Senior Secured	April 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 9.00%			
				or Floor rate of 10.00%, 2.50% Exit Fee	\$ 4,000	4,005	4,005
Total PerfectServe, Inc.					\$ 20,000	20,028	20,028
Pollen, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	April 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 4.25%			
				or Floor rate of 8.50%, 4.00% Exit Fee	\$ 7,000	6,964	6,964
Poplicus, Inc. <sup>(8)(14)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	May 2022	Interest rate FIXED 6.00%, PIK Interest 3.00%	\$ 1,250	1,250	
Quid, Inc. <sup>(14)(15)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	October 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 4.75%			
				or Floor rate of 8.25%, PIK Interest 2.25%, 3.00% Exit Fee	\$ 8,303	8,397	8,430
RapidMiner, Inc. <sup>(14)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	December 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50%			
				or Floor rate of 9.75%, PIK Interest 1.65%	\$ 7,001	6,971	6,971
Regent Education <sup>(14)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	January 2021	Interest rate FIXED 10.00%, PIK Interest 2.00%, 6.35% Exit Fee	\$ 3,285	3,291	3,291
Signpost, Inc. <sup>(14)</sup>	Software	Senior Secured	February 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 4.15%			
				or Floor rate of 8.15%, PIK Interest 1.75%, 3.75% Exit Fee	\$ 15,510	15,603	15,685
Vela Trading Technologies	Software	Senior Secured	July 2022	Interest rate daily LIBOR + 9.50%			
				or Floor rate of 10.50%	\$ 20,000	19,495	19,557
Wrike, Inc. <sup>(14)(17)</sup>	Software				\$ 10,165	9,971	10,007

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Senior Secured	February 2021	Interest rate PRIME + 6.00%
-------------------	------------------	--------------------------------

or Floor rate of 9.50%,

PIK Interest 2.00%, 3.00%  
Exit Fee

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

F-15

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS****December 31, 2017****(dollars in thousands)**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Maturity Date</b>	<b>Interest Rate and Floor<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(4)</sup></b>
ZocDoc	Software	Senior Secured	April 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 9.50%			
				or Floor rate of 10.50%, 1.00% Exit Fee	\$ 20,000	\$ 20,011	\$ 20,011
	Software	Senior Secured	November 2021	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 9.50%			
				or Floor rate of 10.50%, 1.00% Exit Fee	\$ 10,000	10,005	10,005
<b>Total ZocDoc</b>					<b>\$ 30,000</b>	<b>30,016</b>	<b>30,016</b>
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						<b>318,782</b>	<b>318,219</b>
<b>Subtotal: Software (39.24%)*</b>						<b>332,124</b>	<b>329,963</b>
<b>Specialty Pharmaceuticals</b>							
<b>Under 1 Year Maturity</b>							
Jaguar Animal Health, Inc. <sup>(11)</sup>	Specialty Pharmaceuticals	Senior Secured	August 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 5.65%			
				or Floor rate of 9.90%, 7.00% Exit Fee	\$ 1,089	1,496	1,496
<b>Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity</b>						<b>1,496</b>	<b>1,496</b>
<b>1-5 Years Maturity</b>							
Alimera Sciences, Inc. <sup>(11)(14)</sup>	Specialty Pharmaceuticals	Senior Secured	November 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 7.50%	\$ 35,398	35,517	35,517
				or Floor rate of 11.00%,			

PIK Interest 1.00%, 4.00%  
Exit Fee

**Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity** 35,517 35,517

**Subtotal: Specialty Pharmaceuticals (4.40%)\*** 37,013 37,013

### Surgical Devices

#### 1-5 Years Maturity

Transmedics, Inc. <sup>(13)</sup>	Surgical Devices	Senior Secured	February 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 5.30%			
				or Floor rate of 9.55%, 6.70% Exit Fee	\$ 8,500	8,756	8,757

**Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity** 8,756 8,757

**Subtotal: Surgical Devices (1.04%)\*** 8,756 8,757

### Sustainable and Renewable Technology

#### Under 1 Year Maturity

FuelCell Energy, Inc. <sup>(12)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	October 2018	Interest rate PRIME + 5.50%			
				or Floor rate of 9.50%, 8.50% Exit Fee	\$ 16,806	18,190	18,190

Kinestral Technologies Inc.	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	October 2018	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 7.75%			
				or Floor rate of 8.75%, 3.23% Exit Fee	\$ 3,867	3,882	3,882

**Subtotal: Under 1 Year Maturity** 22,072 22,072

#### 1-5 Years Maturity

ChargePoint Inc.	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	August 2020	Interest rate 3-month LIBOR + 8.75%			
				or Floor rate of 9.75%, 2.00% Exit Fee	\$ 19,394	19,416	19,416

See notes to consolidated financial statements.



Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements

## HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.

## CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS

December 31, 2017

(dollars in thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Maturity Date	Interest Rate and Floor <sup>(2)</sup>	Principal Amount	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC (p.k.a. Sungevity, Inc.) <sup>(6)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	August 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 8.70% or Floor rate of 12.95%, 4.50% Exit Fee	\$ 14,000	\$ 13,604	\$ 13,604
Proterra, Inc. <sup>(11)(14)(17)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	November 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 3.70% or Floor rate of 7.95%, PIK Interest 1.75%, 5.95% Exit Fee	\$ 25,036	25,997	26,097
	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	November 2020	Interest rate PRIME + 3.70% or Floor rate of 7.95%, PIK Interest 1.75%, 7.00% Exit Fee	\$ 5,007	5,173	5,190
Total Proterra, Inc.					\$ 30,043	31,170	31,287
Rive Technology, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	January 2019	Interest rate PRIME + 6.20% or Floor rate of 9.45%, 4.00% Exit Fee	\$ 4,258	4,498	4,515
Tendril Networks <sup>(12)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Senior Secured	June 2019	Interest rate FIXED 9.25%, 8.50% Exit Fee	\$ 13,156	13,863	13,845
<b>Subtotal: 1-5 Years Maturity</b>						82,551	82,667
<b>Subtotal: Sustainable and Renewable Technology (12.45%)*</b>						104,623	104,739

<b>Total: Debt Investments (168.38%)*</b>	<b>1,440,055</b>	<b>1,415,984</b>
---	------------------	------------------

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

F-17

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS****December 31, 2017****(dollars in thousands)**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(4)</sup></b>
<b>Equity Investments</b>						
<b>Biotechnology</b>						
<b>Tools</b>						
NuGEN Technologies, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Biotechnology Tools	Equity	Common Stock	55,780	\$ 500	\$
<b>Subtotal: Biotechnology Tools (0.00%)*</b>					500	
<b>Communications &amp; Networking</b>						
Achilles Technology Management Co II, Inc. <sup>(7)(15)</sup>	Communications & Networking	Equity	Common Stock	100	3,100	242
GlowPoint, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Communications & Networking	Equity	Common Stock	114,192	102	41
Peerless Network Holdings, Inc.	Communications & Networking	Equity	Preferred Series A	1,000,000	1,000	5,865
<b>Subtotal: Communications &amp; Networking (0.73%)*</b>					4,202	6,148
<b>Diagnostic</b>						
Singulex, Inc.	Diagnostic	Equity	Common Stock	937,998	750	720
<b>Subtotal: Diagnostic (0.09%)*</b>					750	720
<b>Drug Delivery</b>						
AcelRx Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(10)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Equity	Common Stock	54,240	108	109
BioQ Pharma Incorporated <sup>(15)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Equity	Preferred Series D	165,000	500	826
Edge Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Equity	Common Stock	49,965	309	468

Neos Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Equity	Common Stock	125,000	1,500	1,275
<b>Subtotal: Drug Delivery (0.32%)*</b>					2,417	2,678
<b>Drug Discovery &amp; Development</b>						
Aveo Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(10)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	1,901,791	1,715	5,315
Axovant Sciences Ltd. <sup>(4)(5)(10)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	129,827	1,270	707
Cerecor, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	119,087	1,000	381
Dare Biosciences, Inc. (p.k.a. Cerulean Pharma, Inc.) <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	13,550	1,000	29
Dicerna Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	142,858	1,000	1,290
Dynavax Technologies <sup>(4)(10)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	20,000	550	374
Epirus Biopharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	200,000	1,000	
Genocea Biosciences, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	223,463	2,000	259
Inotek Pharmaceuticals Corporation <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	3,778	1,500	10
Insmad, Incorporated <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	70,771	1,000	2,154
Melinta Therapeutics <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	43,840	2,000	693
Paratek Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (p.k.a. Transcept Pharmaceuticals, Inc.) <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Equity	Common Stock	76,362	2,743	1,367
<b>Subtotal: Drug Discovery &amp; Development (1.50%)*</b>					16,778	12,579

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS****December 31, 2017****(dollars in thousands)**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(4)</sup></b>
<b>Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware</b>						
Identiv, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Equity	Common Stock	6,700	\$ 34	\$ 22
<b>Subtotal: Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware (0.00%)*</b>					34	22
<b>Information Services</b>						
DocuSign, Inc.	Information Services	Equity	Common Stock	385,000	6,081	8,011
<b>Subtotal: Information Services (0.95%)*</b>					6,081	8,011
<b>Internet Consumer &amp; Business Services</b>						
Blurb, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	Preferred Series B	220,653	175	46
Brigade Group, Inc. (p.k.a. Philotic, Inc.)	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	Common Stock	9,023	93	
Lightspeed POS, Inc. <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	Preferred Series C	230,030	250	233
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	Preferred Series D	198,677	250	213
Total Lightspeed POS, Inc.				428,707	500	446
OfferUp, Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	Preferred Series A	286,080	1,663	2,236
		Equity	Preferred Series A-1	108,710	632	850

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Internet Consumer  
& Business  
Services

Total OfferUp, Inc.				394,790	2,295	3,086
Oportun (p.k.a. Progress Financial)	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	Preferred Series G	218,351	250	451
	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	Preferred Series H	87,802	250	255
Total Oportun (p.k.a. Progress Financial)				306,153	500	706
RazorGator Interactive Group, Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	Preferred Series AA	34,783	15	49
Tectura Corporation <sup>(7)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Equity	Preferred Series BB	1,000,000		
<b>Subtotal: Internet Consumer &amp; Business Services (0.52%)*</b>					3,578	4,333

**Media/Content/Info**

Pinterest, Inc.	Media/Content/Info	Equity	Preferred Series Seed	620,000	4,085	5,055
<b>Subtotal: Media/Content/Info (0.60%)*</b>					4,085	5,055

**Medical Devices & Equipment**

AtriCure, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Common Stock	7,536	266	138
Flowonix Medical Incorporated	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Preferred Series AA	221,893	1,500	
Gelesis, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Common Stock	198,202		879
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Preferred Series A-1	191,210	425	939
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Preferred Series A-2	191,626	500	894
Total Gelesis, Inc.				581,038	925	2,712
Medrobotics Corporation <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Preferred Series E	136,798	250	302
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Preferred Series F	73,971	155	225

See notes to consolidated financial statements.



Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS****December 31, 2017****(dollars in thousands)**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(4)</sup></b>
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Preferred Series G	163,934	\$ 500	\$ 532
Total Medrobotics Corporation				374,703	905	1,059
Optiscan Biomedical, Corp. <sup>(6)(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Preferred Series B	6,185,567	3,000	402
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Preferred Series C	1,927,309	655	114
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Preferred Series D	55,103,923	5,257	4,232
	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Preferred Series E	15,638,888	1,307	1,457
Total Optiscan Biomedical, Corp.				78,855,687	10,219	6,205
Outset Medical, Inc. (p.k.a. Home Dialysis Plus, Inc.)	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Preferred Series B	232,061	527	596
Quanterix Corporation <sup>(4)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Equity	Common Stock	84,778	1,000	1,820
<b>Subtotal: Medical Devices &amp; Equipment (1.49%)*</b>					15,342	12,530
<b>Software</b>						
CapLinked, Inc.	Software	Equity	Preferred Series A-3	53,614	51	90
Druva, Inc.	Software	Equity	Preferred Series 2	458,841	1,000	1,044
	Software	Equity	Preferred Series 3	93,620	300	312
Total Druva, Inc.				552,461	1,300	1,356
ForeScout Technologies, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Software	Equity	Common Stock	199,844	529	6,373
HighRoads, Inc.	Software	Equity	Common Stock	190	307	
NewVoiceMedia Limited <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Software	Equity	Preferred Series E	669,173	963	1,544
	Software	Equity	Preferred Series E	727,696	5,431	4,923



Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

<b>Palantir Technologies</b>						
	Software	Equity	Preferred Series G	326,797	2,211	2,211
<b>Total Palantir Technologies</b>				<b>1,054,493</b>	<b>7,642</b>	<b>7,134</b>
Sprinklr, Inc.	Software	Equity	Common Stock	700,000	3,749	4,600
WildTangent, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Equity	Preferred Series 3	100,000	402	179
<b>Subtotal: Software (2.53%)*</b>					<b>14,943</b>	<b>21,276</b>
<b>Surgical Devices</b>						
Gynesonics, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Surgical Devices	Equity	Preferred Series B	219,298	250	44
	Surgical Devices	Equity	Preferred Series C	656,538	282	60
	Surgical Devices	Equity	Preferred Series D	1,991,157	712	795
	Surgical Devices	Equity	Preferred Series E	2,786,367	429	521
<b>Total Gynesonics, Inc.</b>				<b>5,653,360</b>	<b>1,673</b>	<b>1,420</b>
Transmedics, Inc.	Surgical Devices	Equity	Preferred Series B	88,961	1,100	376
	Surgical Devices	Equity	Preferred Series C	119,999	300	309
	Surgical Devices	Equity	Preferred Series D	260,000	650	957
	Surgical Devices	Equity	Preferred Series F	100,200	500	531
<b>Total Transmedics, Inc.</b>				<b>569,160</b>	<b>2,550</b>	<b>2,173</b>
<b>Subtotal: Surgical Devices (0.43%)*</b>					<b>4,223</b>	<b>3,593</b>
<b>Sustainable and Renewable Technology</b>						
Flywheel Building Intelligence, Inc. (p.k.a. SCIEnergy, Inc.)	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Equity	Common Stock	19,250	761	
Modumetal, Inc.	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Equity	Preferred Series C	3,107,520	500	477
Proterra, Inc.	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Equity	Preferred Series 5	99,280	500	539

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements

## HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.

## CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS

December 31, 2017

(dollars in thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Series	Shares	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
Solar Spectrum Holdings LLC (p.k.a. Sungevity, Inc.) <sup>(6)</sup>	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Equity	Common Stock	288	\$ 61,502	\$ 11,400
<b>Subtotal: Sustainable and Renewable Technology (1.48%)*</b>					63,263	12,416
<b>Total: Equity Investments (10.63%)*</b>					<b>136,196</b>	<b>89,361</b>
<b>Warrant Investments</b>						
<b>Biotechnology Tools</b>						
Labcyte, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Biotechnology Tools	Warrant	Preferred Series C	1,127,624	323	458
<b>Subtotal: Biotechnology Tools (0.05%)*</b>					323	458
<b>Communications &amp; Networking</b>						
PeerApp, Inc.	Communications & Networking	Warrant	Preferred Series B	298,779	61	
Peerless Network Holdings, Inc.	Communications & Networking	Warrant	Preferred Series A	135,000	95	501
Spring Mobile Solutions, Inc.	Communications & Networking	Warrant	Common Stock	2,834,375	418	
<b>Subtotal: Communications &amp; Networking (0.06%)*</b>					574	501
<b>Consumer &amp; Business Products</b>						
Antenna79 (p.k.a. Pong Research Corporation) <sup>(15)</sup>	Consumer & Business Products	Warrant	Common Stock	1,662,441	228	
	Consumer &	Warrant	Preferred Series B	190,234	230	221

Intelligent Beauty, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Business Products					
The Neat Company <sup>(15)</sup>	Consumer & Business Products	Warrant	Preferred Series C-1	540,540	365	
<b>Subtotal: Consumer &amp; Business Products (0.03%)*</b>					823	221

**Drug Delivery**

AcelRx Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(10)(15)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Warrant	Common Stock	176,730	786	61
Agile Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Warrant	Common Stock	180,274	730	65
BioQ Pharma Incorporated	Drug Delivery	Warrant	Common Stock	459,183	1	968
Celsion Corporation <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Warrant	Common Stock	13,927	428	
Dance Biopharm, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Warrant	Common Stock	110,882	74	
Edge Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Warrant	Common Stock	78,595	390	230
Kaleo, Inc. (p.k.a. Intelliject, Inc.)	Drug Delivery	Warrant	Preferred Series B	82,500	594	1,540
Neos Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Warrant	Common Stock	70,833	285	148
Pulmatrix Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Warrant	Common Stock	25,150	116	4
ZP Opco, Inc (p.k.a. Zosano Pharma) <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Delivery	Warrant	Common Stock	72,379	266	
<b>Subtotal: Drug Delivery (0.36%)*</b>					3,670	3,016

**Drug Discovery & Development**

ADMA Biologics, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	89,750	295	12
Anthera Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	5,022	984	
Audentes Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(4)(10)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	9,914	62	147
Auris Medical Holding, AG <sup>(4)(5)(10)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	156,726	249	19
Brickell Biotech, Inc.	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Preferred Series C	26,086	119	93
Cerecor, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	22,328	70	15
Chroma Therapeutics, Ltd. <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Preferred Series D	325,261	490	

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

F-21

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS****December 31, 2017****(dollars in thousands)**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(4)</sup></b>
Cleveland BioLabs, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	7,813	\$ 105	\$ 3
Concert Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	132,069	545	1,344
CTI BioPharma Corp. (p.k.a. Cell Therapeutics, Inc.) <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	29,239	165	2
CytRx Corporation <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	105,694	160	58
Dare Biosciences, Inc. (p.k.a. Cerulean Pharma, Inc.) <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	17,190	369	
Dicerna Pharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	200	28	
Epirus Biopharmaceuticals, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	64,194	276	
Fortress Biotech, Inc. (p.k.a. Coronado Biosciences, Inc.) <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	73,009	142	29
Genocea Biosciences, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	73,725	266	4
Immune Pharmaceuticals <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	10,742	164	
Melinta Therapeutics <sup>(4)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	31,655	626	12
Motif BioSciences Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery &	Warrant	Common Stock	73,452	282	414

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

	Development					
Myovant Sciences, Ltd. <sup>(4)(5)(10)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	49,800	283	128
Neothetics, Inc. (p.k.a. Lithera, Inc) <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	46,838	266	53
Neuralstem, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	5,783	77	
Ology Bioservices, Inc. (p.k.a. Nanotherapeutics, Inc.) <sup>(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	171,389	838	
Paratek Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (p.k.a. Transcept Pharmaceuticals, Inc.) <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	75,214	178	212
PhaseRx, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	63,000	125	
Savara Inc. (p.k.a. Mast Therapeutics, Inc.) <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	32,467	203	8
Sorrento Therapeutics, Inc. <sup>(4)(10)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	306,748	889	453
Stealth Bio Therapeutics Corp. <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Preferred Series A	487,500	116	107
uniQure B.V. <sup>(4)(5)(10)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	37,174	218	240
XOMA Corporation <sup>(4)(10)(15)</sup>	Drug Discovery & Development	Warrant	Common Stock	9,063	279	50
<b>Subtotal: Drug Discovery &amp; Development (0.40%)*</b>					8,869	3,403
<b>Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware</b>						
908 DEVICES INC. <sup>(15)</sup>	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Warrant	Preferred Series D	79,856	100	73
Clustrix, Inc.	Electronics & Computer Hardware	Warrant	Common Stock	50,000	12	
<b>Subtotal: Electronics &amp; Computer Hardware (0.01%)*</b>					112	73

See notes to consolidated financial statements.



Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS****December 31, 2017****(dollars in thousands)**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(4)</sup></b>
<b>Healthcare Services, Other</b>						
Chromadex Corporation <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Healthcare Services, Other	Warrant	Common Stock	139,673	\$ 157	\$ 329
<b>Subtotal: Healthcare Services, Other (0.04%)*</b>					157	329
<b>Information Services</b>						
INMOBI Inc. <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Information Services	Warrant	Common Stock	65,587	82	
InXpo, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Information Services	Warrant	Preferred Series C	648,400	98	21
	Information Services	Warrant	Preferred Series C-1	1,165,183	74	37
Total InXpo, Inc.				1,813,583	172	58
MDX Medical, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Information Services	Warrant	Common Stock	2,250,000	246	129
Netbase Solutions, Inc.	Information Services	Warrant	Preferred Series 1	60,000	356	363
RichRelevance, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Information Services	Warrant	Preferred Series E	112,612	98	
<b>Subtotal: Information Services (0.07%)*</b>					954	550
<b>Internet Consumer &amp; Business Services</b>						
Aria Systems, Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series G	231,535	73	
Blurb, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series C	234,280	636	9
ClearObject, Inc. (p.k.a. CloudOne, Inc.)	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series E	968,992	18	154
The Faction Group	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series A	8,703	234	234
Intent Media, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Common Stock	140,077	168	207
Table of Contents						560



Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Interactions Corporation	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series G-3	68,187	204	204
Just Fabulous, Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series B	206,184	1,102	2,627
Lightspeed POS, Inc. <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series C	245,610	20	93
LogicSource <sup>(15)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series C	79,625	30	36
Oportun (p.k.a. Progress Financial)	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series G	174,562	78	196
ShareThis, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series C	493,502	547	
Snagajob.com, Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series A	1,800,000	782	1,257
Tapjoy, Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series D	748,670	316	7
TraceLink, Inc.	Internet Consumer & Business Services	Warrant	Preferred Series A-2	283,353	1,833	1,833
<b>Subtotal: Internet Consumer &amp; Business Services (0.82%)*</b>					6,041	6,857
<b>Media/Content/Info</b>						
FanDuel, Inc.	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	Common Stock	15,570		
	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	Preferred Series A	4,648	730	1,875
Total FanDuel, Inc.				20,218	730	1,875
Machine Zone, Inc. <sup>(16)</sup>	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	Common Stock	1,552,710	1,958	3,743
Rhapsody International, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	Common Stock	715,755	385	4
WP Technology, Inc. (Wattpad, Inc.) <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	Common Stock	255,818	4	17
Zoom Media Group, Inc.	Media/Content/Info	Warrant	Preferred Series A	1,204	348	33
<b>Subtotal: Media/Content/Info (0.67%)*</b>					3,425	5,672

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.****CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS****December 31, 2017****(dollars in thousands)**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(4)</sup></b>
<b>Medical Devices &amp; Equipment</b>						
Amedica Corporation <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Common Stock	8,603	\$ 459	\$ 1
Aspire Bariatrics, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series B-1	112,858	455	65
Avedro, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series AA	300,000	401	275
Flowonix Medical Incorporated	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series AA	155,325	362	
Gelesis, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series A-1	74,784	78	216
InspireMD, Inc. <sup>(4)(5)(10)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Common Stock	39,364	242	
IntegenX, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series C	547,752	15	
Intuity Medical, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series 4	1,819,078	294	294
Medrobotics Corporation <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series E	455,539	370	411
Micell Technologies, Inc.	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series D-2	84,955	262	150
NetBio, Inc.	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series A	7,841	408	56
NinePoint Medical, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series A-1	587,840	170	82
Optiscan Biomedical, Corp. <sup>(6)(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series D	10,535,275	1,252	86
Outset Medical, Inc. (p.k.a. Home Dialysis Plus, Inc.)	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series A	500,000	402	430
Quanterix Corporation <sup>(4)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Common Stock	66,039	205	536

Edgar Filing: Hercules Capital, Inc. - Form N-2

Sebacia, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series D	778,301	133	127
SonaCare Medical, LLC (p.k.a. US HIFU, LLC)	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series A	6,464	188	
Strata Skin Sciences, Inc. (p.k.a. MELA Sciences, Inc.) <sup>(4)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Common Stock	13,864	401	
Tela Bio, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Preferred Series B	387,930	62	153
ViewRay, Inc. <sup>(4)(15)</sup>	Medical Devices & Equipment	Warrant	Common Stock	128,231	333	414

**Subtotal: Medical Devices & Equipment (0.39%)\*** 6,492 3,296

**Semiconductors**

Achronix Semiconductor Corporation <sup>(15)</sup>	Semiconductors	Warrant	Preferred Series C	360,000	160	308
	Semiconductors	Warrant	Preferred Series D-2	750,000	99	519
Total Achronix Semiconductor Corporation				1,110,000	259	827
Aquantia Corp. <sup>(4)</sup>	Semiconductors	Warrant	Common Stock	19,683	4	11
Avnera Corporation	Semiconductors	Warrant	Preferred Series E	141,567	46	195

**Subtotal: Semiconductors (0.12%)\*** 309 1,033

**Software**

Actifio, Inc.	Software	Warrant	Common Stock	73,584	249	84
	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series F	31,673	343	79
Total Actifio, Inc.				105,257	592	163
Braxton Technologies, LLC	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series A	168,750	188	

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table of ContentsIndex to Financial Statements

## HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.

## CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS

December 31, 2017

(dollars in thousands)

Portfolio Company	Sub-Industry	Type of Investment <sup>(1)</sup>	Series	Shares	Cost <sup>(3)</sup>	Value <sup>(4)</sup>
CareCloud Corporation <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series B	413,433	\$ 258	\$ 113
Clickfox, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series B	1,038,563	330	129
	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series C	592,019	730	179
	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series C-A	2,218,214	230	4,458
Total Clickfox, Inc.				3,848,796	1,290	4,766
DNAexus, Inc.	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series C	909,091	97	97
Evernote Corporation <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Common Stock	62,500	106	175
Fuze, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series F	256,158	89	53
Mattersight Corporation <sup>(4)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Common Stock	357,143	538	168
Message Systems, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series C	503,718	334	639
Mobile Posse, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series C	396,430	130	353
Neos, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Common Stock	221,150	22	
NewVoiceMedia Limited <sup>(5)(10)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series E	225,586	33	190
OneLogin, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Common Stock	228,972	150	227
PerfectServe, Inc.	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series C	129,073	720	720
Poplicus, Inc.	Software	Warrant	Common Stock	132,168		
Quid, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series D	71,576	1	7
RapidMiner, Inc.	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series C-1	4,982	23	23
RedSeal Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series C-Prime	640,603	66	44
Signpost, Inc.	Software	Warrant	Preferred Series C	324,005	314	106
Wrike, Inc.	Software	Warrant	Common Stock	698,760	462	1,040
<b>Subtotal: Software (1.06%)*</b>					5,413	8,884
<b>Specialty Pharmaceuticals</b>						
Alimera Sciences, Inc. <sup>(4)</sup>	Specialty	Warrant	Common Stock	1,717,709	861	488

## Pharmaceuticals

<b>Subtotal: Specialty Pharmaceuticals (0.06%)*</b>					861	488
---	--	--	--	--	-----	-----

**Surgical Devices**

Gynesonics, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Surgical Devices	Warrant	Preferred Series C	180,480	75	15
	Surgical Devices	Warrant	Preferred Series D	1,575,965	320	291

Total Gynesonics, Inc.				1,756,445	395	306
------------------------	--	--	--	-----------	-----	-----

Transmedics, Inc.	Surgical Devices	Warrant	Preferred Series B	40,436	225	16
	Surgical Devices	Warrant	Preferred Series D	175,000	100	429
	Surgical Devices	Warrant	Preferred Series F	50,544	38	60

Total Transmedics, Inc.				265,980	363	505
-------------------------	--	--	--	---------	-----	-----

<b>Subtotal: Surgical Devices (0.10%)*</b>					758	811
--	--	--	--	--	-----	-----

**Sustainable and Renewable Technology**

Agrivida, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Sustainable and	Warrant	Preferred Series D	471,327	120	88
	Renewable Technology					

Alphabet Energy, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Sustainable and	Warrant	Preferred Series 1B	13,667	82	
	Renewable Technology					

American Superconductor Corporation <sup>(4)</sup>	Sustainable and	Warrant	Common Stock	58,823	39	7
	Renewable Technology					

Brightsource Energy, Inc.	Sustainable and	Warrant	Preferred Series 1	116,666	104	
	Renewable Technology					

Calera, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Sustainable and	Warrant	Preferred Series C	44,529	513	
	Renewable Technology					

EcoMotors, Inc. <sup>(15)</sup>	Sustainable and	Warrant	Preferred Series B	437,500	308	
	Renewable Technology					

Fluidic, Inc.	Sustainable and	Warrant	Preferred Series D	61,804	102	
	Renewable Technology					

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

Table of Contents

Index to Financial Statements

**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED SCHEDULE OF INVESTMENTS**

**December 31, 2017**

**(dollars in thousands)**

<b>Portfolio Company</b>	<b>Sub-Industry</b>	<b>Type of Investment<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Series</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>Cost<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Value<sup>(4)</sup></b>
Flywheel Building Intelligence, Inc. (p.k.a. SCIEnergy, Inc.)	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant	Common Stock	530,811	\$ 181	\$
	Sustainable and Renewable Technology	Warrant				